NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 08044349 6

Digitized by Microsoft®

Wilson

3-MNO

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized for Microsoft Corporation
by the Internet Archive in 2008.
From New York Public Library.
May be used for non-commercial, personal, research,
or educational purposes, or any fair use.
May not be indexed in a commercial service.

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE ARTISTIC CRAFTS SERIES
OF TECHNICAL HANDBOOKS
EDITED BY W. R. LETHABY

SILVERWORK AND JEWELRY

Digitized by Microsoft ®

THE ARTISTIC CRAFTS SERIES OF TECHNICAL HANDBOOKS.

Edited by W. R. Lethaby.

THE series will appeal to handicraftsmen in the industrial and mechanic arts. It consists of authoritative statements by experts in every field for the exercise of ingenuity, taste, imagination—the whole sphere of the so-called "dependent arts."

BOOKBINDING AND THE CARE OF BOOKS. A Handbook for Amateurs, Bookbinders, and Librarians. By Douglas Cockerell. With 120 Illustrations and Diagrams by Noel Rooke, and 8 collotype reproductions of binding.

SILVERWORK AND JEWELRY. A Text-Book for Students and Workers in Metal. By H. Wilson. With 160 Diagrams and 16 full-page Illustrations. New Edition.

WOOD CARVING: DESIGN AND WORKMANSHIP. By George Jack. With Drawings by the Author and other Illustrations.

STAINED-GLASS WORK. A Text-Book for Students and Workers in Glass. By C. W. Whall. With Diagrams by two of his Apprentices, and other Illustrations.

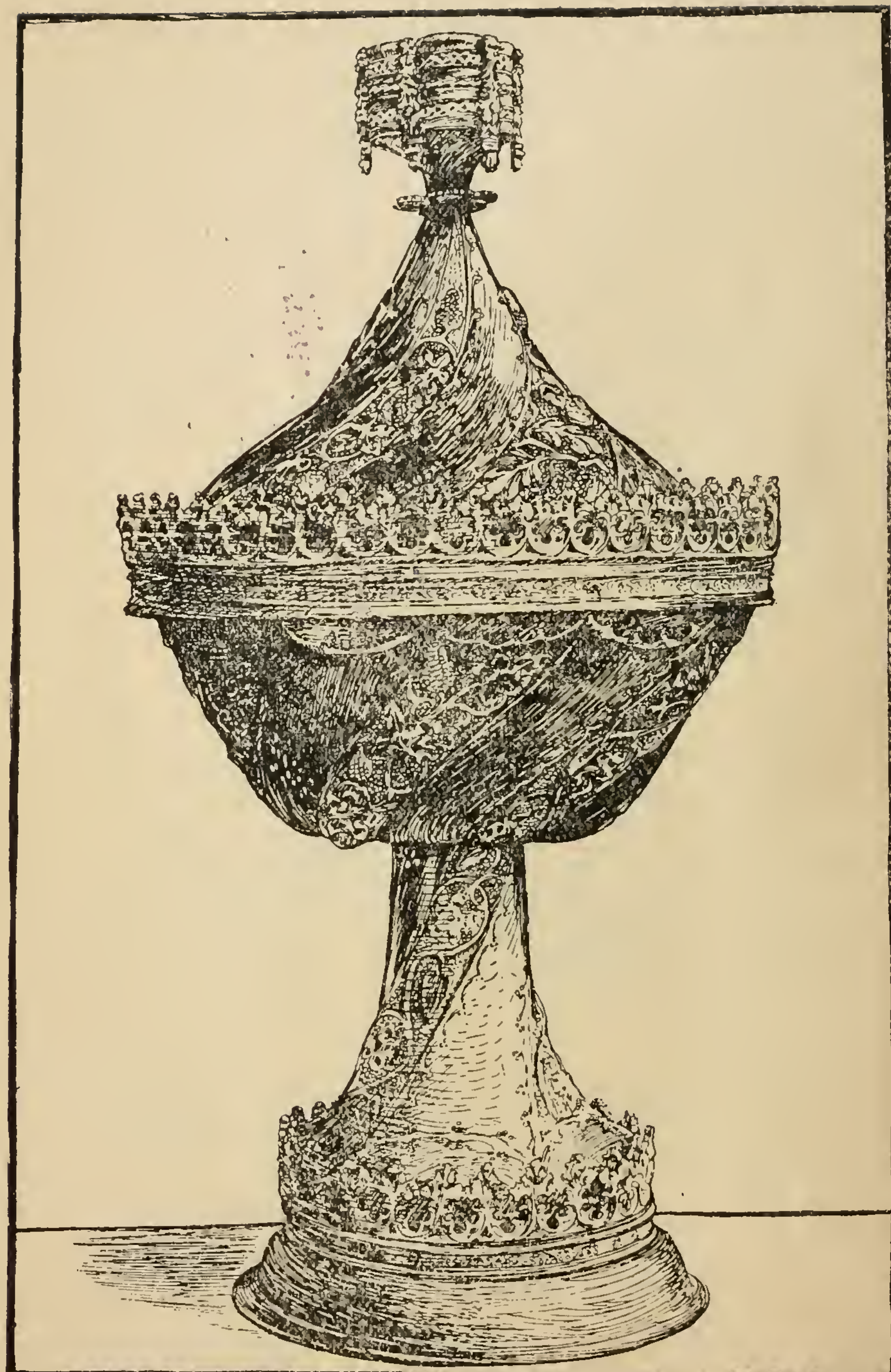
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®



The Foundress' Cup : Christ's College, Cambridge.

Digitized by Microsoft®

SILVERWORK AND JEWELRY

A TEXT-BOOK FOR STUDENTS AND WORKERS IN METAL BY *H. WILSON*. WITH DIAGRAMS BY THE AUTHOR AND OTHER ILLUSTRATIONS :: :: *SECOND EDITION*, WITH NEW SECTIONS DONE IN COLLABORATION WITH PROFESSOR UNNO BISEI OF THE IMPERIAL FINE ART COLLEGE, TOKIO :: :: :: :: :: :: ::

NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1912

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
99920A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1923 L

COPYRIGHT, 1903, [redacted]
BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

All rights reserved

Published August, 1912

Digitized by Microsoft®

"*An Art can only be learned in the workshop of those who are winning their bread by it.*"

—Samuel Butler ("Erewhon").

"*One may do whate'er one likes*
In Art: the only thing is to make sure
That one does like it—which takes pains to know."

—Robert Browning ("Pippa Passes").

"*It is evident that the value of methods and apparatus so simple as these is dependent on the skill and talent of the worker who uses them. The hand of man, more perfect than any mechanism, is everywhere seen in early goldsmith's work. When, however, mechanical methods develop, their exactitude, their even precision, their unintelligence, replace little by little that fascination which belongs to everything shaped by the human hand. One need not, therefore, be surprised that there is so much difficulty in the goldsmith's art, no less than in other branches of industry, in procuring things to-day which have the charm of ancient work. Mechanism has destroyed the habit of intelligent personal effort on the part of the worker, and his energies are now directed to the imitation of the cold and arid regularity of the machine.*"—"On Medieval Gold and Silver Work" ("Viollet le Duc," vol. ii., p. 172.)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

A New Revised and Enlarged Edition, with special chapters, fully illustrated, based on demonstrations by Professor Unno Bisei and Professor T. Kobayashi of the Imperial Fine Art College at Tokio, giving the traditional methods of Casting, Damascening, Incrustation, Inlaying, Engraving, and Metal Coloring still practiced in Japan, with further chapters on Niello, on the making of Boxes and Card Cases, and a chapter on Egyptian and Oriental methods of work.

Digitized by Microsoft®

EDITOR'S PREFACE

In issuing this volume of a series of Handbooks on the Artistic Crafts, it will be well to state what are our general aims.

In the first place, we wish to provide trustworthy text-books of workshop practice, from the points of view of experts who have critically examined the methods current in the shops, and putting aside vain survivals, are prepared to say what is good workmanship, and to set up a standard of quality in the crafts which are more especially associated with design. Secondly, in doing this, we hope to treat design itself as an essential part of good workmanship. During the last century most of the arts, save painting and sculpture of an academic kind, were little considered, and there was a tendency to look on "design" as a mere matter of *appearance*. Such "ornamentation" as there was was usually obtained by following in a mechanical way a drawing provided by an artist who often knew little of the technical processes involved in production. With the critical attention given to the crafts by Ruskin and Morris, it came to be seen that it was impossible to detach design from craft in this way, and that, in the widest sense, true design is an inseparable element of good quality, involving as it does the selection of good and suitable material, contrivance for special purpose, expert workmanship, proper finish, and so on, far more than mere ornament, and indeed, that

Digitized by Microsoft®

ornamentation itself was rather an exuberance of fine workmanship than a matter of merely abstract lines. Workmanship when separated by too wide a gulf from fresh thought—that is, from design—inevitably decays, and, on the other hand, ornamentation, divorced from workmanship, is necessarily unreal, and quickly falls into affectation. Proper ornamentation may be defined as a language addressed to the eye; it is pleasant thought expressed in the speech of the tool.

In the third place, we would have this series put artistic craftsmanship before people as furnishing reasonable occupations for those who would gain a livelihood. Although within the bounds of academic art, the competition, of its kind, is so acute that only a very few per cent. can fairly hope to succeed as painters and sculptors; yet, as artistic craftsmen, there is every probability that nearly every one who would pass through a sufficient period of apprenticeship to workmanship and design would reach a measure of success.

In the blending of handwork and thought in such arts as we propose to deal with, happy careers may be found as far removed from the dreary routine of hack labor as from the terrible uncertainty of academic art. It is desirable in every way that men of good education should be brought back into the productive crafts: there are more than enough of us "in the city," and it is probable that more consideration will be given in this century than in the last to Design and Workmanship.

. . . . .

Work in the precious metals, the subject

Digitized by Microsoft®

which is dealt with in the present volume, seems especially to have suffered from the slavish methods introduced, perhaps, to compete with machinery, and from the general benumbing of the aptitude for design which affected so many of the artistic crafts during the course of the last century. On the other hand, there have been signs of a danger that these crafts may be victimized by glaring affectations in design and by unashamed crudeness of manipulation. Of the two vulgarities—that of commercial dulness, and that of the blandishments which assume the name of "new art"—the latter is likely to be by far the worse. On this question of design it is essential to guard oneself from a merely capricious originality, a striving for exaggerated elegance, and an endeavor to suggest ideas of luxury, which last is probably the most enervating and repulsive characteristic of certain forms of modern taste.

Symptoms of these faults are often found in a preference for violent curvature of form, an introduction of unrelated splashes of enamel, and the over-insistence upon tool marks and chemically treated surfaces. On the contrary, we should rather aim at reasonableness, at the natural development of traditional forms, and at pleasant, unobtrusive finish. The true method of design is always growth, not rootless egoism.

Of old the arts developed under the hand by the contact of tools and material. Now, for instance, it is far too customary to "design," as it is called, the shape of some vessel, be it for silver, or glass, or potter's clay, and then to coerce the material into the preconceived

Digitized by Microsoft®

form. But any one who has watched the process of throwing a pot on the wheel, of blowing glass, or of beating up metal out of the sheet, will have noticed how dozens of vitally beautiful forms are produced on the way to the final dulness predestined by the drawing. The best compliment to workshop practice is to study the old work stored in our museums, without intention to copy specific types, but to gather ideas generally applicable. From this point of view all ancient art is a vast encyclopedia of methods and experience.

The London student should frequent the Gold Room and Mediæval Department of the British Museum, the general collection at South Kensington, and the marvels of the Indian Museum. He should also study the devices on ancient coins, medals, and seals. It will be found that such systematic study will not only result in the accumulation of hints for trade purposes, but will be a true form of self-culture; for all history stands as a background to these objects bequeathed to us by past civilizations; and the perfect knowledge of one thing includes the partial knowledge of many things.

It is not for me to praise these books, but I may be allowed to say that in both those now issued we have been given the best knowledge of expert craftsmen, who, having explored the past of the arts with which they deal, have been willing to give out the combined results of their experiments and study clearly and without reserve.

W. R. LETHABY.

November, 1902

Digitized by Microsoft ®

AUTHOR'S PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION

Author's Preface

THIS book does not deal with the history of the jeweler's art. It is intended as a practical guide to some of the more simple processes of the craft. The worst fault of such a text-book, intended in the first place for students, would be vagueness. I have attempted to avoid this by describing the operations of each process consecutively from beginning to end.

This of necessity causes a certain amount of repetition, but anything is better than doubt. For the sake of clearness the various chapters have been written round the diagrams inserted in the text. These in most cases have been drawn from work actually carried out. It is not, however, my intention to impose conceptions of design upon the student, but only to describe methods I have found to give the best results in my own workshop. These methods, with such changes as the common sense of the worker will suggest, may be applied to objects of whatever form carried out in the same materials.

No student worthy of the name would attempt to copy the designs for himself. Not only is deliberate copyism dishonest, it checks the development of the student's native powers

Digitized by Microsoft ®

and stunts his individuality. And while nothing is more pitiable than a too conscious cultivation of our poor little personality, whatever is felt to lessen our power of work in any direction must be studiously avoided and whatever helps us eagerly sought. If the student will study methods, materials, and natural forms, perfect his skill in handiwork, feed his imagination on old work, attend faithfully to his instincts, his personality can safely be left to take care of itself. It will infallibly find expression.

One most valuable stimulus to the imagination is to be found in the descriptions of marvelous metal work by old writers, poets, historians, and travelers. The old inventories of church plate, though they do little more than catalogue the objects, yet will often give most suggestive hints for design. What could be finer than this from the inventory of the jewels and relics belonging to the cathedral church of Sarum, made by Master Thomas Robertson, treasurer of the same church, in the year 1536: —"Item, a cross with Abraham offering up Isaac, and a lamb behind him with an angel (wanting one wing) and on the left side the images of Abel and Cain, weighing 63 ounces and a quarter."

One sees the thing through the old scribe's eyes, and straightway the mind begins to work on a scheme of its own.

Another valuable aid is that given by old descriptions of methods and processes. The treatise of Theophilus, published by Murray, contains many hints. The translator, however, not being a craftsman, missed many points in

Digitized by Microsoft ®

his rendering, and the technical descriptions are not as clear as could be wished. I have endeavored to rectify this defect in the new renderings given at the end of this book; but Hendrie's Theophilus will always be full of interest to those curious in the arts of the Middle Ages.

It is, of course, impossible in a limited space to treat of a limitless art; moreover, many processes, such as wet and dry coloring of gold, die-stamping, gold-lapping, frosting, and electroplating and typing have too little connection with art to be considered at all. I hope, however, that the processes described in this book may help the student to acquire a technique for himself. If it does anything, however slight, in that direction its object will have been achieved.

H. W.

November, 1902

Digitized by Microsoft®

AUTHOR'S PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

Author's Preface

THE demand for a new edition gives a welcome opportunity of correcting the many errors of omission and commission in the first edition

It has also made possible the addition of chapters on Raising, Box-making, Engraving, and Niello.

The chapter on Raising has been added to supplement that in the first edition which was based upon the directions given by Theophilus in the *Book of Divers Arts*. The new chapter describes the more modern methods of raising, and although of necessity summary and incomplete, may perhaps suffice as an indication of the principles involved.

More important still, through the most beautiful generosity of Professor Unno Bisei of the Tokio Fine Art College, who first initiated me into the mysteries of Japanese inlay, Damascene work, and Patinas, I am able to devote several sections to these important subjects. The chapters dealing with them are based on his instructions, supplemented by observations arising out of personal experience in the methods described.

Knowing as one does with what care craft

Digitized by Microsoft ®

processes are kept secret in this country, and with what jealousy all inquiry is checked, the utter selflessness and simplicity with which Professor Unno Bisei, one of the most remarkable craftsmen in the world, explained and demonstrated his methods, giving without stint the results of his inimitable skill and wide experïence, was at once rebuke and inspiration.

I feel that it is impossible in any set phrase to thank him sufficiently for what he has done for myself and for my fellow workers in the craft.

My thanks are also due to Professor T. Kobayashi of Tokyo for the demonstration and recipes of Japanese methods of metal coloring given at my request before the students of the Royal College of Art. The methods and recipes whenever tried give beautiful results, although, since the personal equation counts for so much, the results may not always be those expected.

I have to thank Mr. C. Jagger for his notes and drawings of engraving tools, Mr. G. Jones for his illustration of some of the Japanese methods, and Messrs. Murphy and Wiseman for assistance in the chapter on Raising and Niello-work, and Mr. G. Cowell for his notes on the making of card cases, and to Mr. Sakujiro Semoto for his translation of Professor Unno Bisei's lecture.

I am indebted also to Mr. Kiralfy of the White City for permission to photograph the native craftsmen, and specially indebted to Mr. Gardiner, the superintendent of the Indian section, and Mr. Tulsei Ram Khuttri, Mr.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Ardeshir, and to all the kindly helpful craftsmen who posed, explained, and demonstrated the secrets of their craft with the sweet willingness of accomplished artists to whom nothing is secret, by whom nothing is withheld, and in whose souls the creative fire burns with unfading luster.

H. W.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CONTENTS

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER XIII

CHAPTER XIV

CHAPTER XV

CHAPTER XVI

CHAPTER XVII

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXX

CHAPTER XXXI

CHAPTER XXXII

CHAPTER XXXIII

CHAPTER XXXIV

CHAPTER XXXV

CHAPTER XXXVI

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXVII

CHAPTER XXXVIII

CHAPTER XXXIX

CHAPTER XL

CHAPTER XLI

CHAPTER XLII

CHAPTER XLIII

CHAPTER XLIV

CHAPTER XLV

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XLVI

CHAPTER XLVII

CHAPTER XLVIII

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

The exquisite jewelry of Egypt, Etruria, and Greece, work so fine as almost to appear miraculous, was the outcome of centuries of development. What remains to us is the sum of an infinite series of small improvements in work and method, added by one generation of craftsmen after another. Each worker brought his fraction of beauty to the store laid up and bequeathed to him by those who had gone before. The men who made these things which fill us all with wonder had, however, not only inherited skill to guide their hands and eyes. Each went through a long apprenticeship, during which he was made free of the results of an unbroken tradition of craftsmanship.

Introduction

His work lay almost in the open air; there was beauty in all his surroundings,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

and inspiration waited on him continually. As always the happiness of the worker was reflected in the work. Each seems to have been content if he could surpass by ever so little the skill of his forbears.

Yet the farther the discoveries of archeology take us back into the past, the more clearly we see by what slow, tentative, almost stumbling steps that perfection of skill has been attained. Between the prehistoric fibula hammered out from a nugget of ore and the granulated cloak-clasp of Etruria and Greece the distance is enormous, yet we are able to follow the line of development and almost to mark its stages. Apart from the fact that this gradual perfecting of craftsmanship has been the way to excellence in the past, it is the only way by which the student can attain to confidence and knowledge. Lacking these no one can give adequate expression to his ideas. Not only does the study of methods and the qualities of material enable the worker to give expression to an idea, it is absolutely the most fruitful source of ideas, and those which are suggested by process are invariably healthy and rational. The hand and the brain work together, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

the outcome of their partnership is a sanity of conception, which is greatly to seek in most even of the best work of to-day. The reason is perhaps that the zeal of the artist has not been tempered by knowledge. The reason of this again is that for more than a century the painter and the sculptor have stood before the public as the sole representatives of the Arts, and in consequence all the crafts and arts have been approached pictorially, even by those who practise them, as if each were only another form of picture-making.

This is not wholly untrue, only the methods of the painter do not always apply in the crafts. Take as the simplest example a Rhodian earring. What is it? —a rough pearl, a skeleton cube of gold wire, a tiny pyramid of beads, and a hook. What could be more simple? yet the cunning collocation of these elementary forms has produced a thing of beauty that can not now be surpassed. No amount of fumbling with a pencil could ever lead to a like result. The material was there in front of the craftsman, and on the material the creative idea engendered the work of art. Art is craftsmanship plus inspiration; and

Digitized by Microsoft®

Intro-
duction

inspiration is the rush of unconscious memory along channels made by a habit of craftsmanship. But the craftsmanship of the early workman was frank and fearless, the worker of to-day is hidden behind the stones he uses. His material is a screen and not a medium of expression. Stones and jewels to the early artist were means of adding emphasis to his work, or were used as the germ of a design; by the modern they are used as substitutes for design. To the former the jewel was an added beauty to the setting; to the latter the jewel is a means of hiding the setting and the workmanship. The old workman took the rough crystal of sapphire, or ruby, or emerald, and polished it, keeping the stone as large as possible, displaying to the utmost its native beauty. The modern workman splits and cuts his gems into regular, many-faceted, geometrical forms of infinite ingenuity and intolerable hideousness.

The modern method of cutting equalizes the color and intensifies the glitter of the gem, but the glitter takes away that mysterious magical quality, that inner luster of liquid light, which for the artist is its chiefest beauty, and replaces that

Digitized by Microsoft®

beauty by a mechanical sheen offensive to every cultivated eye. Moreover, the machine-made perfection of the cut stone has, as it were, reacted on the mounting, and is, perhaps, one cause among many of the mechanical hardness and lack of artistry so visible in modern work. The student who is seeking to avoid these defects must begin at the beginning, learn thoroughly the rudiments of his craft, and build up his system of design by slow degrees out of the results of his daily experience. He must learn to rely at first on excellence of handiwork as the foundation of his claim to be considered an artist. The one guiding principle of all true craftsmanship is this: the forms used in design should express naturally and simply the properties of the particular material employed. Introduction

CHAPTER II

Materials—Educational value of Process—Composition of Pickle—Pitch for Repoussé Work

The student will probably find that it is better at first to buy his silver plate already rolled to the thickness required, Materials

Digitized by Microsoft®

and have the wire drawn by the dealer; but later on he will find that he can draw small quantities of wire with a draw-plate fixed in a vise, and with a little care and practise he can thin out small ingots of metal on a stake or small anvil to any required thickness. He will in this way get a knowledge of materials quite impossible of attainment under any other conditions. The old craftsmen took full advantage of the native qualities of their materials, and these can only be learned by daily practise in working them. In the process of work ideas are matured which would otherwise have lain dormant and useless. The design gradually acquires those indefinable qualities of naturalness, simplicity, and sincerity which are found to a supreme degree in almost all old work.

The copper used should be of the best quality procurable. French or Swedish copper, such as is used for enameling, is the best. For cloison wire, alloy copper, which is very nearly pure, should be used. Electrotype copper, which is very pure, can be used to alloy silver and gold.

For tools the finest tool steel in round,

Digitized by Microsoft®

square, or flat bars should be used. A few pounds of block tin will be useful for making molds, and for use as a block on which to stamp up with punches small beads, disks, and leaves. It is less yielding than lead for this purpose and gives a cleaner result. It can also be used as a backing for work in thin sheet silver or gold. Much Etruscan work was backed in this way. The impressed ornaments on medieval chalices were often filled and attached to the body of the work by tin used both as solder and filling.

Materials

A block of zinc, weighing about 3 pounds, will also be useful for making molds in which sheet metal can be roughly beaten up to shape ready for chasing.

Brass wire of different sizes is useful for making temporary pins for joints, and, if of good quality, can be used in making silver solder.

Binding-wire of several gages, ranging from 18 to the finest, will also be wanted for tying work together while being soldered.

Borax should be bought in crystals.

A small quantity of sulfuric acid,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Materials hydrochloric acid, and nitric acid will be wanted for the various pickling solutions. They should be obtained from a wholesale chemist.

Nitric acid pickle = 1 part nitric acid and 6 parts water.

Sulfuric pickle = 1 part acid and 6 parts water.

Hydrochloric pickle = 1 part acid and 8 parts water.

A pound or two of best boxwood sawdust will be wanted and kept in an ordinary biscuit box. It is used for drying the work after washing. The drying can be hastened by putting the box on an iron plate supported over a spirit-lamp or gas flame. The sawdust must not be allowed to burn or the work will be stained and the stain is rather difficult to remove.

Pitch for repoussé work is best made as follows:—

Pitch . . .	4 parts.
Rosin . . .	4 ,,
Plaster of Paris .	2 ,,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Melt the pitch and rosin together in a pipkin, and when both have been well mixed and stirred, put in a small knob of tallow or an inch or two of tallow candle and again stir the mixture. Now add the plaster by handfuls and stir it in well. Then pour it out into a box well whitened with dry whitening, and leave it to cool. For winter work the pitch may be found too hard. It can be softened by remelting and adding another piece of tallow candle to the mixture. Materials

Some boxwood sticks, $\frac{1}{4}$ inch square, for polishing will be very useful.

A horn mallet is almost necessary for raising work, while a few different sized stakes to fix in the vise for hammer work are quite indispensable ; very good ones can be made out of poker heads or the handles of fire-tongs.

CHAPTER III

Tools

The tools most likely to be required are: Tools

For Repoussé work—

Chasing hammers (fig. 6), two sizes, one heavy and one light.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Tools

Various punches or chasing tools (fig. 7). An assortment of these, from forty to fifty, will probably suffice for most simple work.

Except for very special purposes, such as damascening and inlay work, or for touching up cast work, avoid the use of matting tools, or tools intended to produce a patterned or granulated surface. It is far better to rely on modeling and design for producing variety of surface.

A set of doming punches for doming the metal, and a small doming block.

A set of files—round, flat, and three-square—and a set of needle files.

A pair of slide pliers.

A set of ordinary scorpers.

A set of engraving scorpers.

A few draw-plates. These can often be purchased second-hand.

Snarling irons. These you can make for yourself out of lengths of bar steel.

A small cold chisel.

A bench vise. Those which revolve on a pivot are the most useful for general purposes.

A joint tool for making hinges.

Two or three pliers—round-nosed, flat, and ordinary.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Tools

Two pairs of cutting shears, one straight and one curved.

A jeweler's frame saw and fine piercing saws.

A square bench stake, which can be of steel. The bottom of a flat-iron will do almost equally well for this.

A few slips of boxwood for making punches and for light mallets will be found very useful.

A drill stock, which should be one of the ordinary Swiss centrifugal drills. The drills for this can either be bought or made as the student desires.

A sand-bag, a pitch block with a leather collar to keep the work in its place, and a blowpipe and some form of spirit-lamp with a good large flame, will complete the list of students' requirements.

The student should make as many tools as possible for himself. This is particularly the case with drills, repoussé tools, and dies and punches of all kinds. In fact, there is very little indeed that the student can not make for himself. Apart from the valuable experience to be gained in this way, a tool that is made for a particular purpose is almost always

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Tools

better than one that is bought; while the pleasure of having made it for oneself more than compensates for the trouble.

CHAPTER IV

Work Benches—Best form of Bench—The Pin—The Skin—Tool Rack—Board Sweep

Work Benches

The best bench for the worker is "the French or jeweler's bench," which consists (fig. 2) of a hard beech board with a semicircular hole cut out of the front to receive the body of the worker when seated. In the center of this bow, a small wedge-shaped piece of wood called "the pin" is inserted to form a rest for the work when filing or engraving. The bench should stand very firmly and be fixed to the floor, so that there is no spring in the board when struck with the hammer. Underneath the board, around the bow of the semicircle, a leather sheepskin is nailed to form a receptacle for the filings of gold and silver and to hold the tools while working. Many jewelers prefer tin trays to catch the filings, but the latter have this

Digitized by Microsoft®

disadvantage, that work dropped from the bench is more likely to be injured

Work Benches

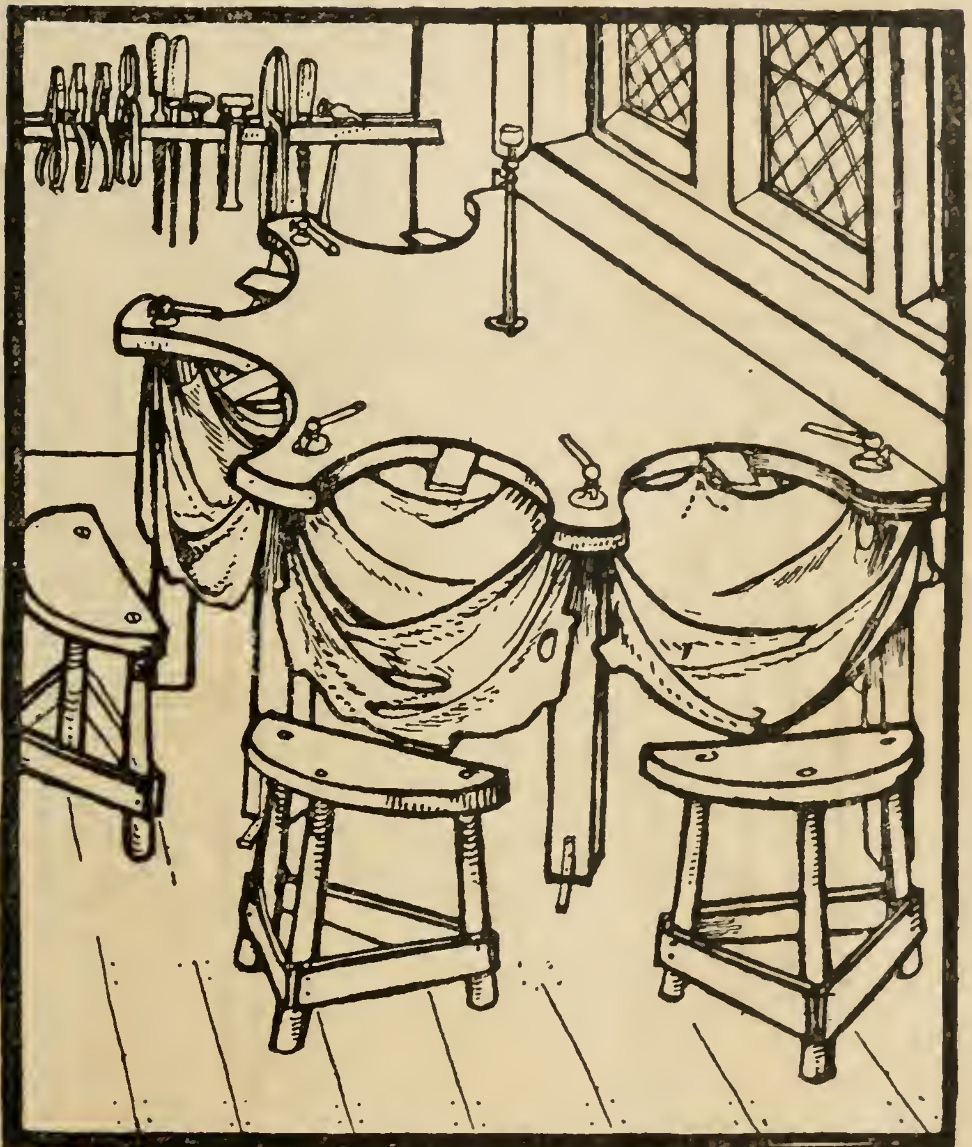


FIG. 1.

on the tray than if it fell into the skin. On the right-hand side of the bow the

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Work Benches

flame for the blowpipe should be arranged (see fig. 1, which shows a bench arranged for five workers). If gas be used the ordinary bench blowpipe is fixed

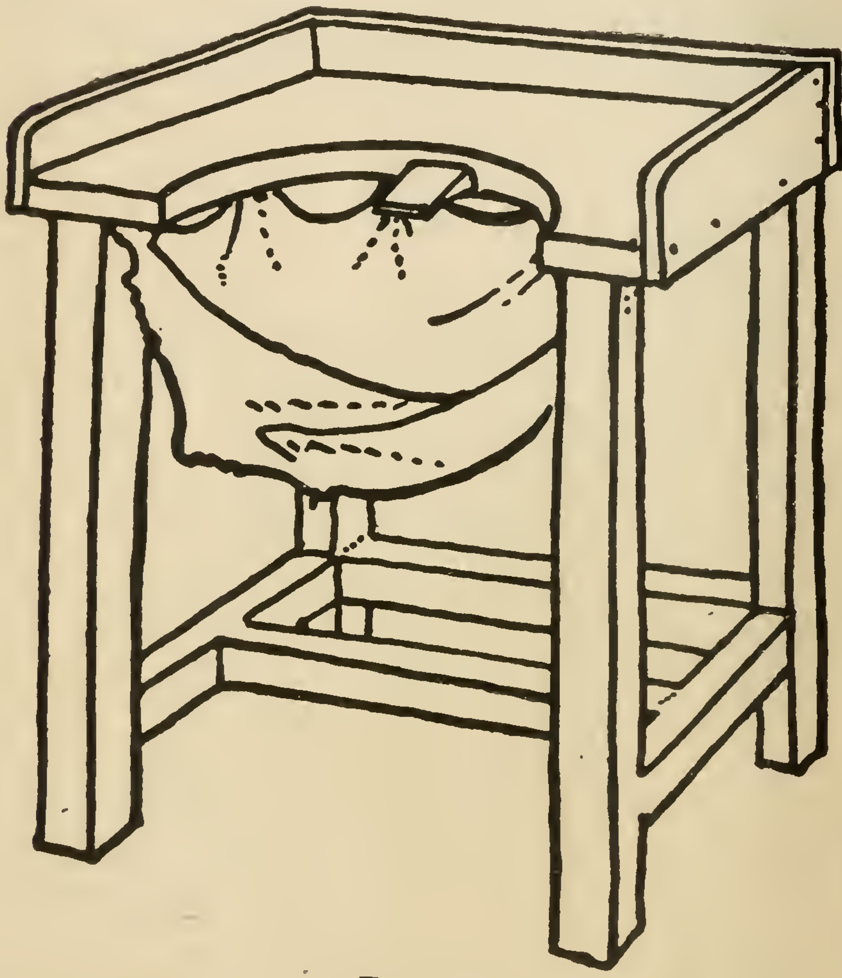


Fig. 2.

sufficiently near to the edge to enable the flame to be directed toward the center of the semicircular space. If a lamp be

Digitized by Microsoft®

used it would naturally be placed in the same relative position. Work Benches

There should be a rack at the side of the bench for tools, arranged so that the tools can be reached with the least possible loss of time and temper. Fixed on the floor underneath the bench you may have a movable grating of wood to catch any stray filings, and to prevent those which fall from being trodden into the floor and lost. The bench and the floor underneath must be swept every day and the sweepings preserved. When a sufficient quantity has been gathered, the sweep should be burned in an iron tray to remove any trace of organic matter, the resulting ash well tried over with a magnet to remove any bits of iron wire, and the sweep sent to the refiners, who, after making an assay, will allow for the precious metal it may contain.

CHAPTER V

Wire-Drawing—The Draw-Bench—Draw-Plate—Tube-Drawing—How to make a Draw-Plate

Wire is made by drawing short rods of metal either by hand or by means of a Wire-Drawing

Digitized by Microsoft®

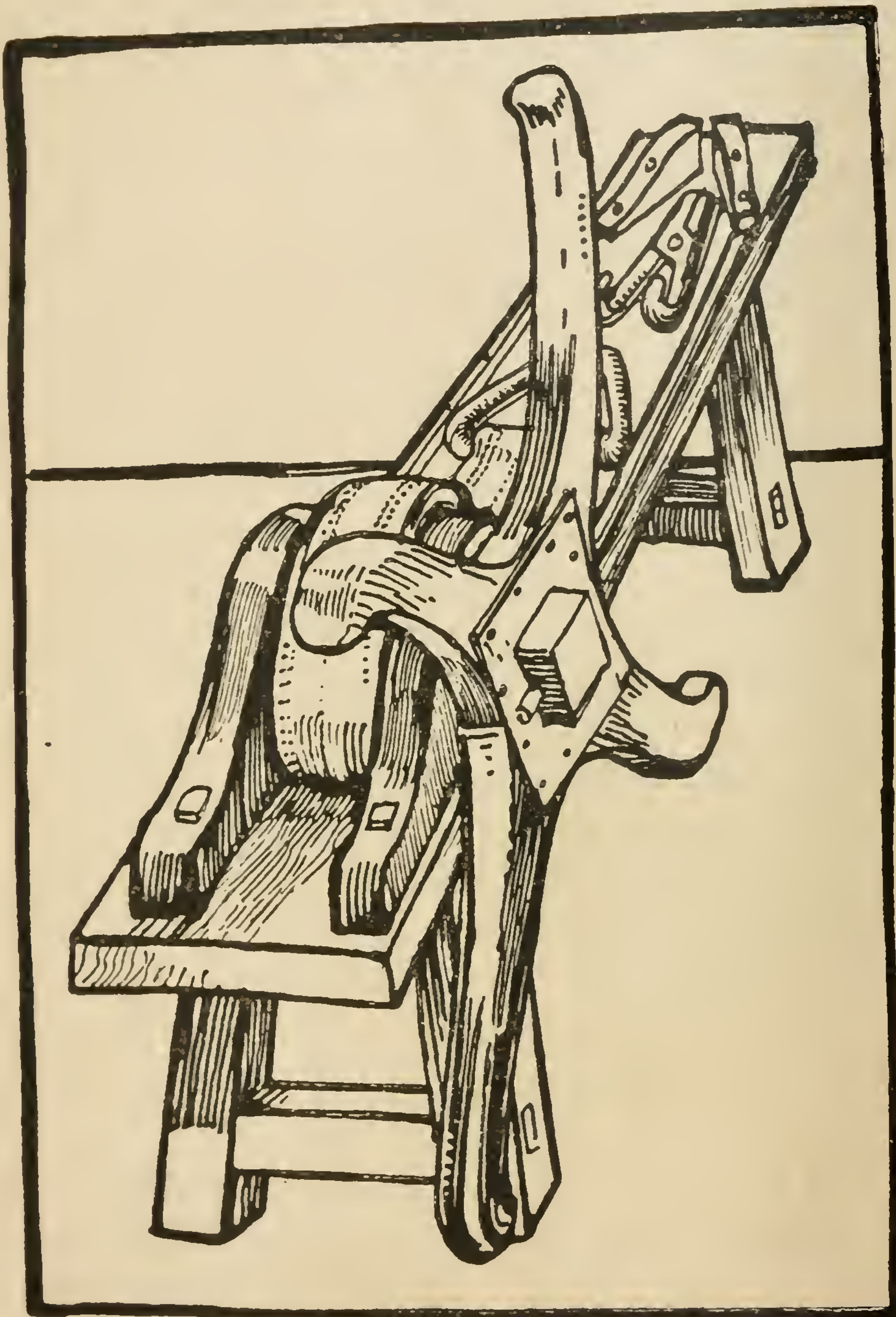


Fig. 3.

Digitized by Microsoft®

draw-bench (fig. 3) through the successively diminishing holes in a draw-plate (fig. 4). If the rods are small in section and the quantity of wire required is also small, the draw-plate can be fixed in a bench-vise and the rods drawn through by hand. To do this, first hammer the end of the rod taper so that it will come through the hole nearest in size to the diameter of the rod. This taper tip must be strong enough—when it has come through—to stand the pull of a hand-vise. Rub the rod with beeswax and draw it through the plate; the rod will be found thinner and longer. Do this with the next hole, and the next, until you have drawn it down to the required size, taking care to anneal it frequently as each drawing naturally hardens and compresses the substance of the rod. If the wire has to be very much reduced in size, or if there is a large quantity to do, it will be better to use a draw-bench, but the principle of the operation is the same in both cases.

Wire-Drawing

Fig. 4.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Tube-Drawing

Small tubes can also be drawn in this way out of strips of sheet metal. Cut a strip of metal of the length and thickness you require, and the breadth roughly thrice the intended diameter of the tube; cut the end taper and with a hammer form it into a sort of gutter lengthwise; anneal it and oil it or rub it over with a little beeswax inside and out and put the taper tip through the wide end of the hole which most nearly fits; insert the tip of a pointed burnisher under the hollow of the trough of the metal and into the back of the hole (fig. 5), then draw the metal through the hole. The burnisher helps to keep the metal true as it folds round it while being drawn through the hole. The rough tube which results from this operation is annealed and drawn through the next smaller hole, and so on until the desired size is attained.

The student will find this very useful in the preparation of tubing required for hinges of brooches, lockets, boxes, and caskets. If the tube is not large in diameter all the work can be done in the vise and without a draw-bench.

Hollow tubes of any section can be drawn by using draw-plates with holes of the required section, or the student can

Digitized by Microsoft®

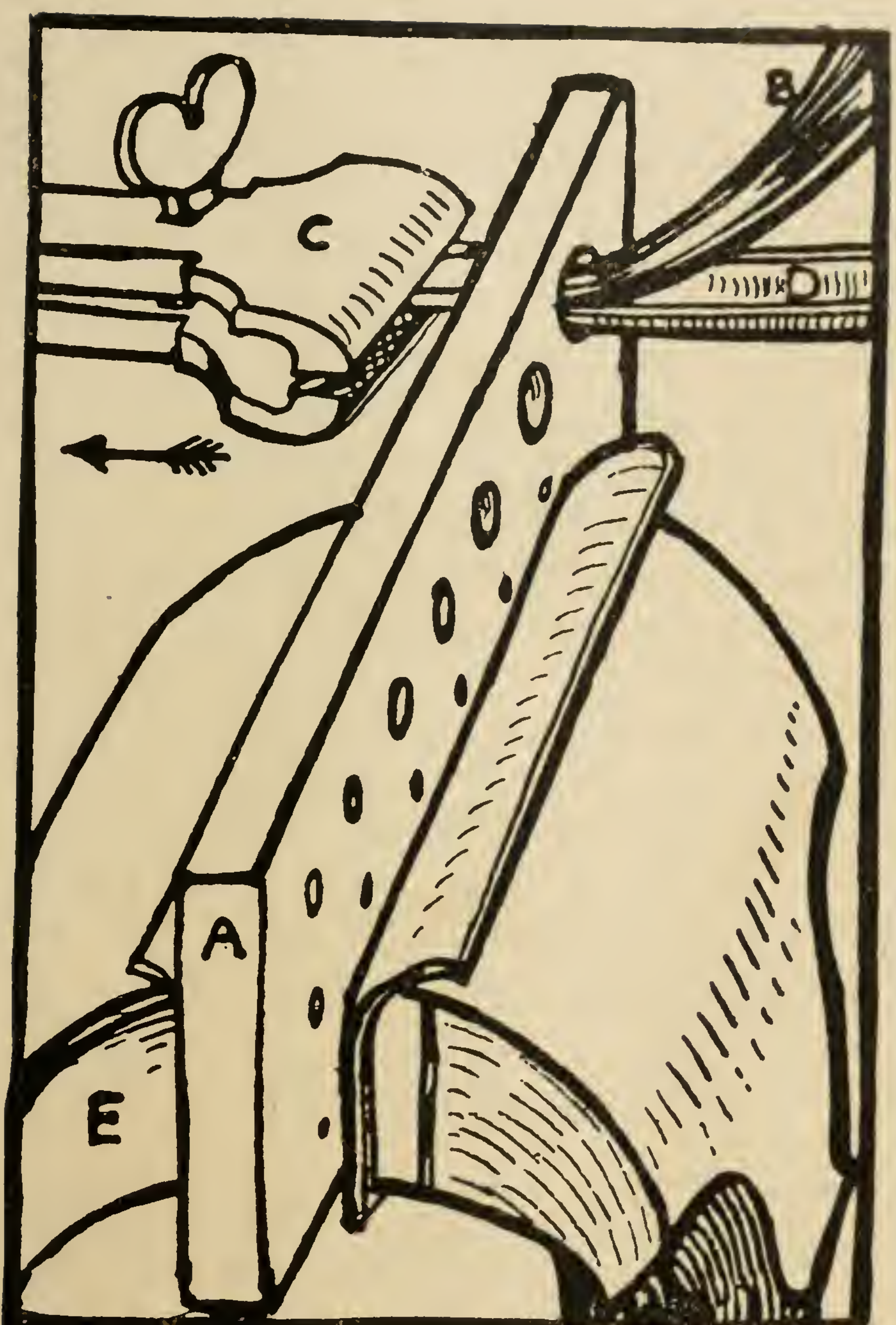


Fig. 5.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Tube-Drawing

make his own draw-plate out of an old flat file, first softening it, then punching graduated holes with a taper punch of the required section filed up out of bar steel and properly hardened. The taper must be very slight or the edge of the hole will be too sharp, and will strip the metal instead of compressing it.

There are very few things necessary in the workshop which a student can not make for himself. The curse of modern workshops is the dependence of the workman on machine-made things. Rather than melt an ingot and roll a small piece of metal for himself to the exact size he needs, he cuts a strip from a sheet in stock which is nearest to the size. The effect on the work is deplorable. The chief beauty—the quality given by human handiwork—is absent, and nothing can make up for the loss.

CHAPTER VI

Repoussé Work—Chasing—Method of Procedure—How to hold the Tools—the Behavior of Metal—Work in the Round—The Chasing of Castings

Repoussé work is modeling in relief produced by working with hammer (fig. 6) and punches (fig. 7) on the back of a sheet

Digitized by Microsoft ®

of metal fixed on some yielding material. Chasing is work on the face of the sheet. The term is also used for finishing up the surface of castings. The required relief

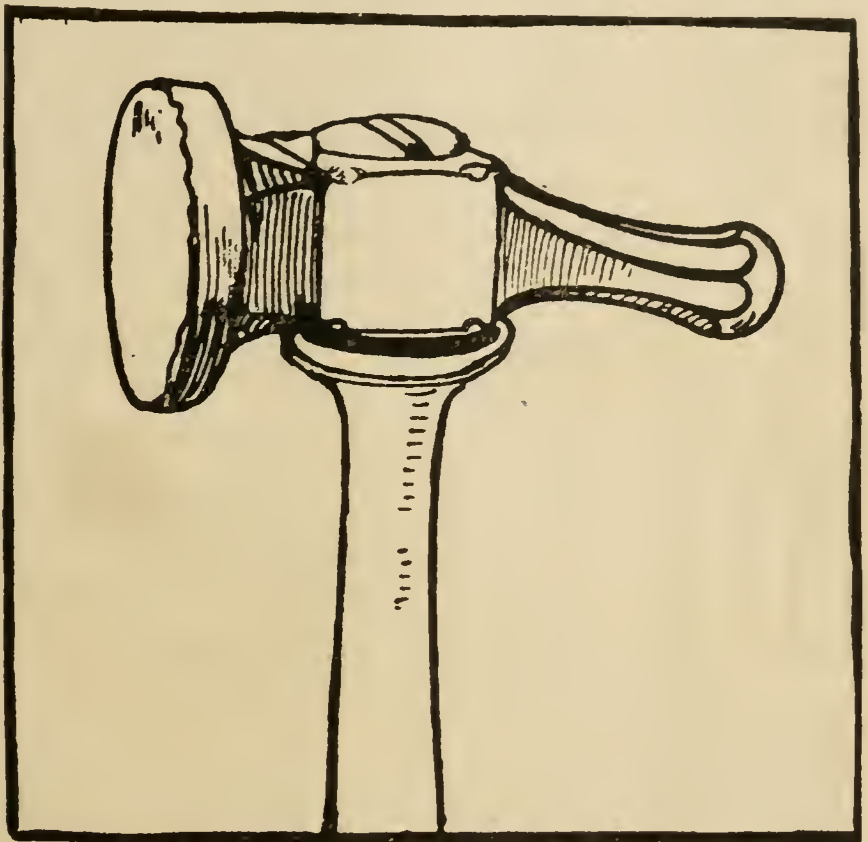


Fig. 6.

may be obtained either by beating down the ground of the ornament, or by punching out the back and afterward finishing on the face.

If the relief required is very slight, it may be obtained by laying the sheet

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Repoussé Work

of metal on a block of lead, a piece of soft pine, or on a piece of thick cork matting. For higher relief the metal must be laid on a composition of pitch made as already described. The tallow makes the composition more yielding, and more will be required in the winter than in the summer. The metal is warmed and laid upon the pitch block (fig. 8). A tracing of the pattern is secured to the metal by bits of wax at the corners. With a fine-pointed punch the outline is delicately pricked through to the surface of the metal. Or, if the work is too delicate to admit of this, the design may be transferred with carbon paper. This done, take rounded punches and beat down the ground of the ornament according to your intention. Get the relief gradually, let the blows be even in force, guide the punches so that the resulting furrow

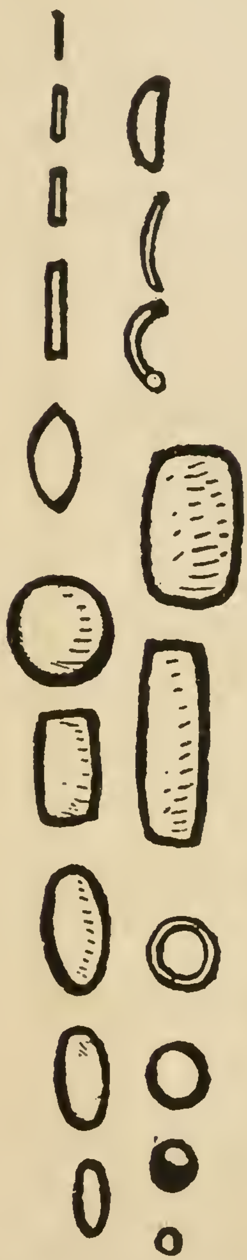


Fig. 7.

Digitized by Microsoft®

makes a continuous surface and follows the form you may desire to express. At frequent intervals warm the metal on the surface, remove it from the pitch, and anneal it by making it red hot. This makes the metal yield more freely

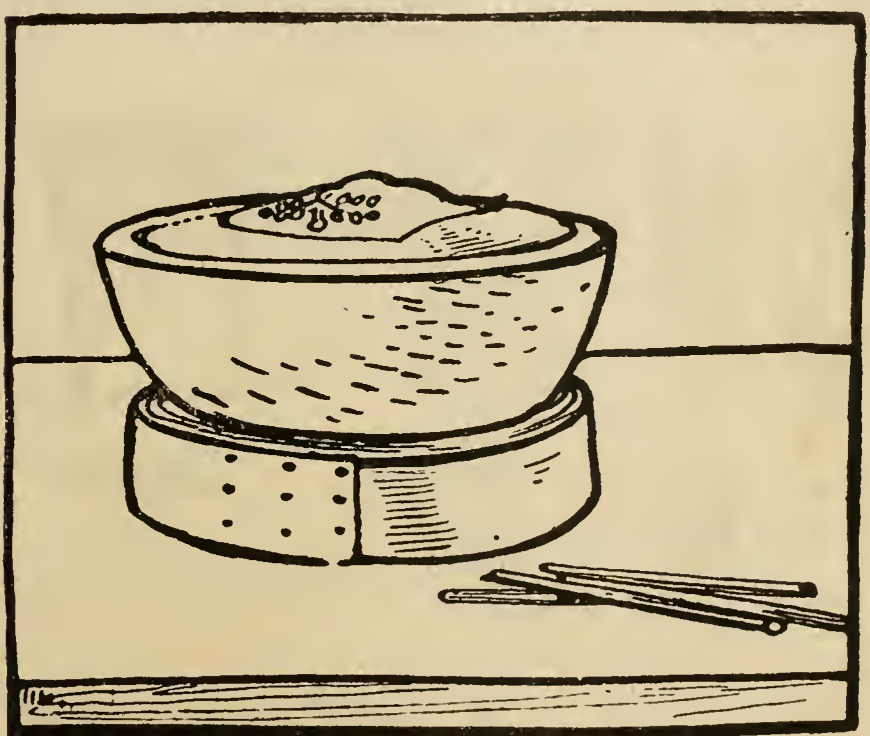


Fig. 8.

to the blows of the punch. If this precaution is neglected the work will crack. By removing the metal from the pitch an opportunity is given of correcting any error from the front or back as the case may be. Punches with sharp edges

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Repoussé Work

must be avoided until the last stages, or the metal will tear. A few shaped as in fig. 9 will be found very useful for modeling the surface. The student should practise until the trace of the punch on the metal is smooth and even from beginning to end, and the lines from the tracer clear and unbroken. Unless this

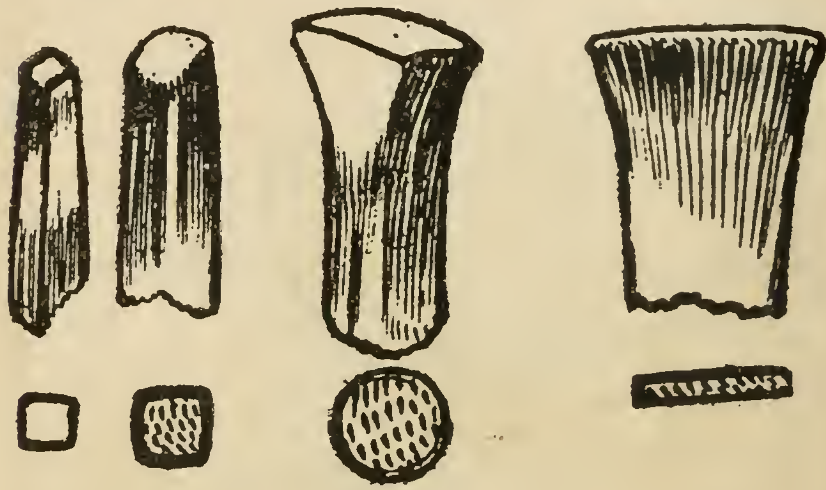


FIG. 9.

is done much time will be spent in correcting defects which might have been avoided. Endeavor from the first to acquire the right method of handling the hammer and holding the punch. Any chaser will show this in a moment. In case none is at hand the appended diagram (fig. 10) will make it clear. The punch is held between the thumb and the first

Digitized by Microsoft ®

and second fingers, the top of the third finger rests on the metal as a pivot and guide. A little practise will make this action, at first difficult, afterward almost unconscious.

Fig. 10.

In high relief work the relief is produced by alternately working on the back and front; driving the ground down from the front and the form out from the back. With care, patience, and many annealings, work may be done almost in the round. For this work punches, shaped somewhat like the tip of the

Digitized by Microsoft®

thumb, are most useful for getting the relief from the back, and rounded faced punches for the work on the front. These must be made by the student himself. In all repoussé work the main thing is to realize that metal is plastic, and with care can be led into forms or spread over surfaces like so much hard wax. This is especially true of copper, fine silver, fine and sovereign gold. Brass, even the best, is much less tractable. The student should be ever alert to seize the suggestions of decorative treatment of the metal which constantly arise while his work is in progress. The behavior of the metal is more instructive than any teacher. Avoid the use of matted or grained surfaces except in cast work.

Work in the Round.—Small objects—birds, animals, little figures—may be done in repoussé by making the bodies in two halves. Solder the two together, in the way described farther on, leaving a small hole in the back or where it will least be seen. Fill the inside with pitch. This must be done by putting in small pieces and warming the object over the lamp. It may be found, however, that the pitch boils over and therefore that the object

Digitized by Microsoft®

will not be filled up properly. You must then take soft pitch and with a metal spatula or the flat end of a chasing tool press the pitch into the hollow, warming the metal from time to time. Repoussé Work

Castings are chased as follows. The rough productions and the pour which is left where the metal ran into the mold are first sawn off, the marks of the seams are removed by small chisels, the object is then warmed and fixed to the pitch-block, and the surface modeled over with matting punches. Vents and other defects in the casting are remedied by soldering pieces of solid metal to make good the deficiency. Holes are drilled out cleanly, and pegs of metal screwed in, filed down, and chased to the required surface.

CHAPTER VII

Hammer Work—How to make a Cup—Bossing up—The Stakes—Planishing—How to make a Beaker—Snarling-Irons — Ornamentation — Base for a Cup—Soldering the Base in Position—Polishing—Another Method for Beakers—The Use of a Sand-bag—Interlocking Joints for Hammer Work—Drinking Cup with a Stem

Take a sheet of metal, size 14 if the cup is to be small to 16 if the cup Hammer Work

Digitized by Microsoft ®

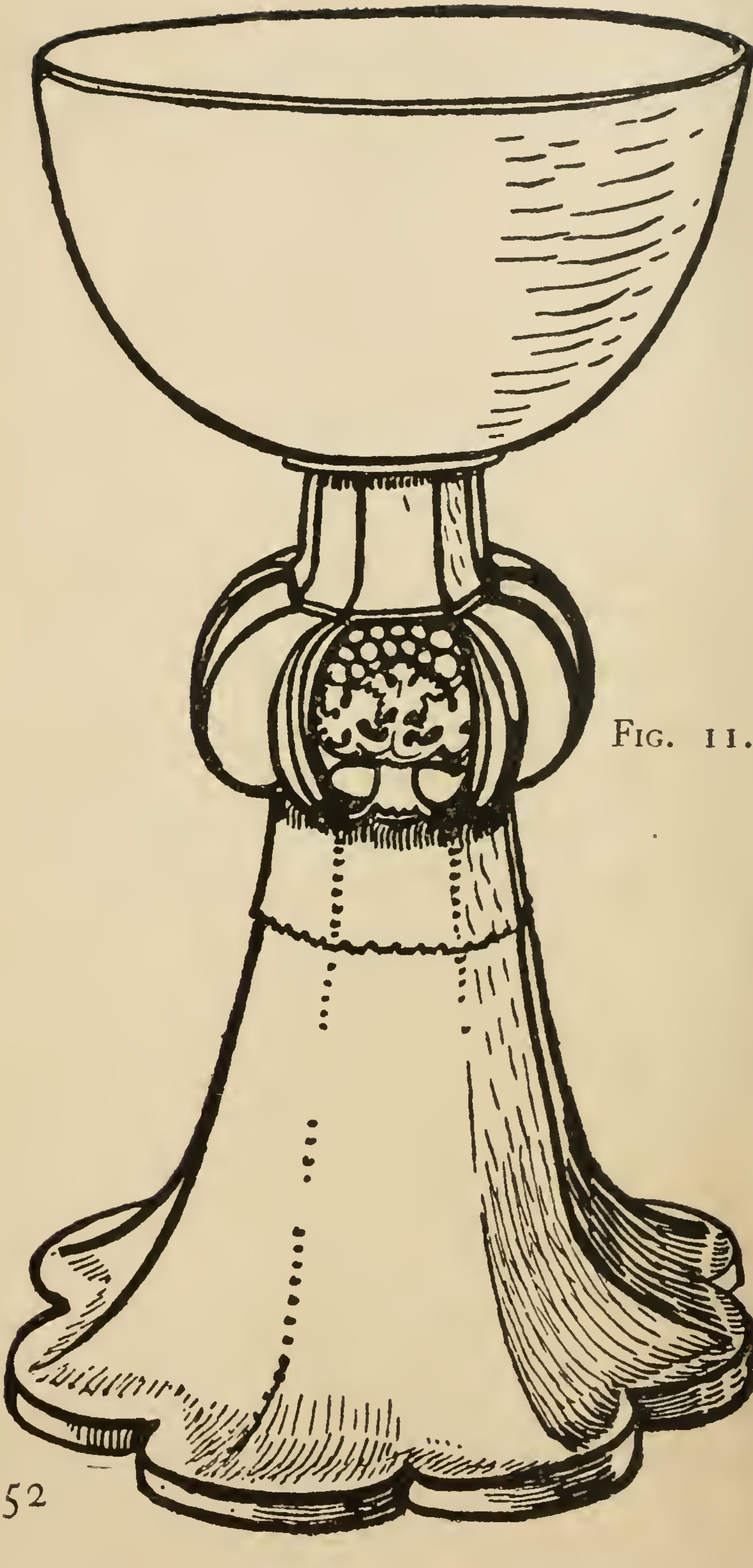


FIG. 11.

Digitized by Microsoft®

is fairly large. Cut out a circle the diameter of which is a little larger than the contour of the cup. Take the compasses and lightly scratch on one side of the sheet a series of concentric circles, the smallest about an inch in diameter, increasing the radius of the succeeding circles by $\frac{1}{4}$ inches. These circles are to guide the hammer strokes. Now take a round-headed boxwood mallet

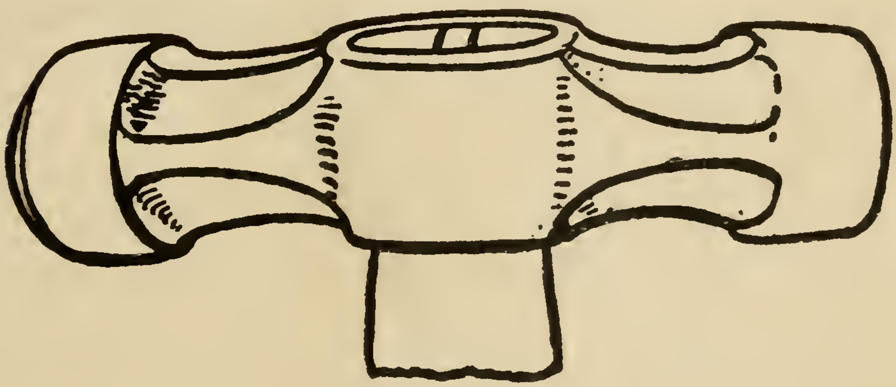


Fig. 12.

and beat the metal into a rough cup shape by beating it into a cup-shaped hollow in a wooden beating-block. This rough cup or shallow bowl must now be hammered into shape with a hammer shaped as in fig. 12 on a stake shaped as in fig. 13. Then begin on the inside and with the round-faced hammer, and keeping the elbow close to the side, beat

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Hammer Work

round in circles, using the hammer from the wrist and not from the elbow. Repeat this, taking care to keep the blows in concentric circles and to work regularly until the metal begins to take shape and to feel springy. Then anneal it, and, still using the same stake, beat on the outside from the innermost circle outward, taking care to leave the thickness

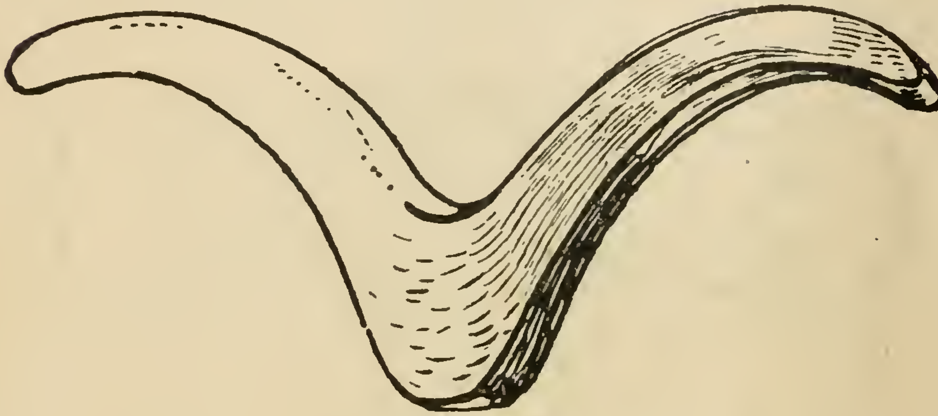


Fig. 13.

of the brim untouched. It may happen that the cup has become uneven in shape; this can be remedied after heating by beating it out again from the inside, with the box mallet, into the cup-shaped depression on the beating-block. Care must be taken not to stretch the metal unduly while doing this.

The work is then continued and is

Digitized by Microsoft®

almost wholly done from the outside, still keeping the blows in circles, turning the cup round with the left hand. A skilful hammerman at this stage, by regulating the inclination of the hammer face, can drive the metal in any direction, thickening the rim or the bottom or the sides of the cup as may be necessary. After the shaping of the cup is completed, it must be planished by using a hammer with a polished face, on a stake also polished for this purpose. When carefully done this leaves the surface true and bright and covered all over with brilliant facets. This method produces a cup beaten out of one piece. The form can naturally be varied at will, but it will often be found that the shapes taken by the cup during the progress of the work are much more interesting than those we set out to do. These suggestions of form should always be noted and worked out, either when the work in hand is done or frankly adopted as they arise.

Hammer Work

The beaker form (fig. 15) is produced by the use of different stakes (fig. 14) or the beck-iron. Cut out your metal to the required size, making the diameter of the circle equal to the whole

Digitized by Microsoft ®

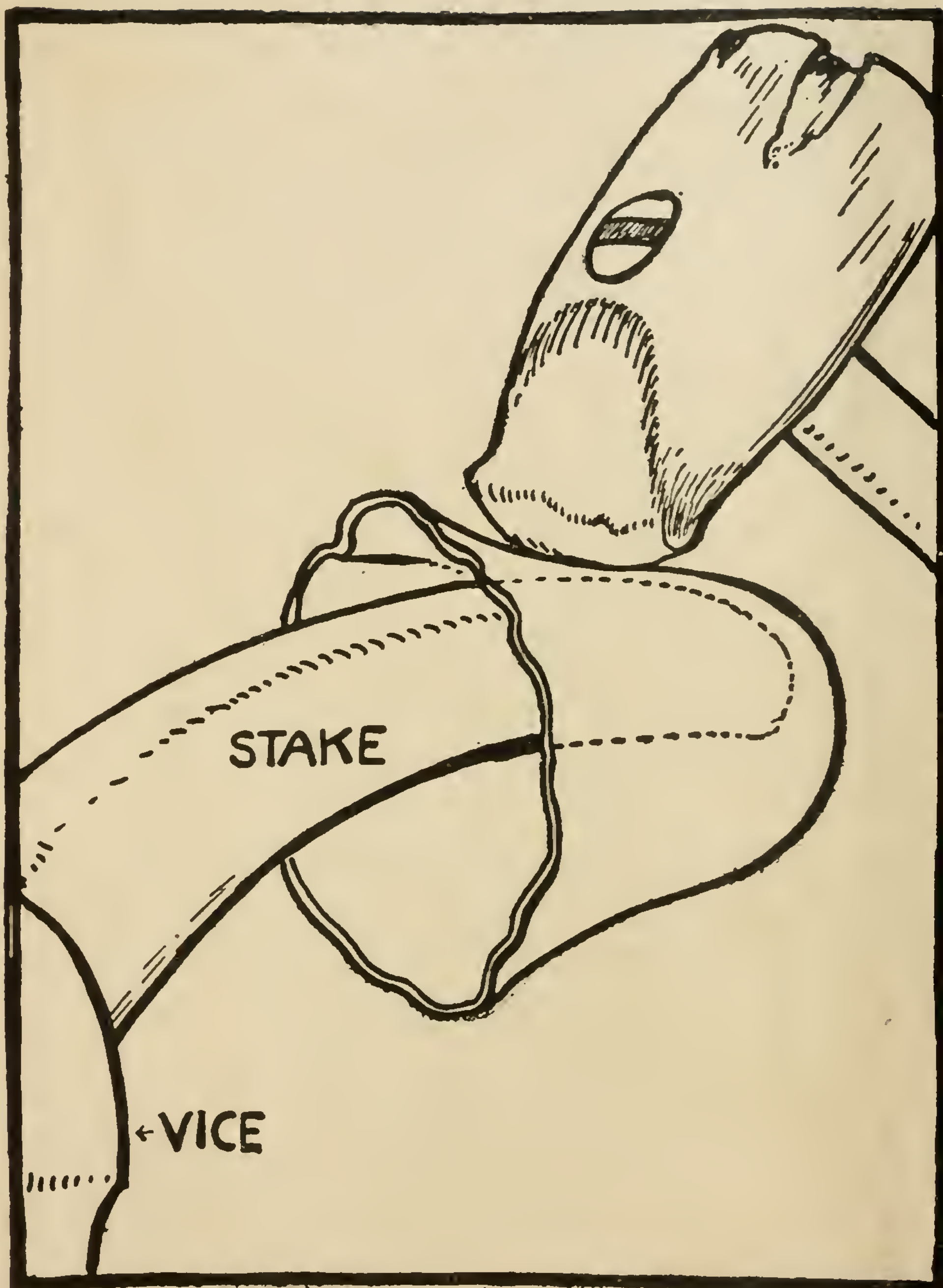


Fig. 14.

Digitized by Microsoft®

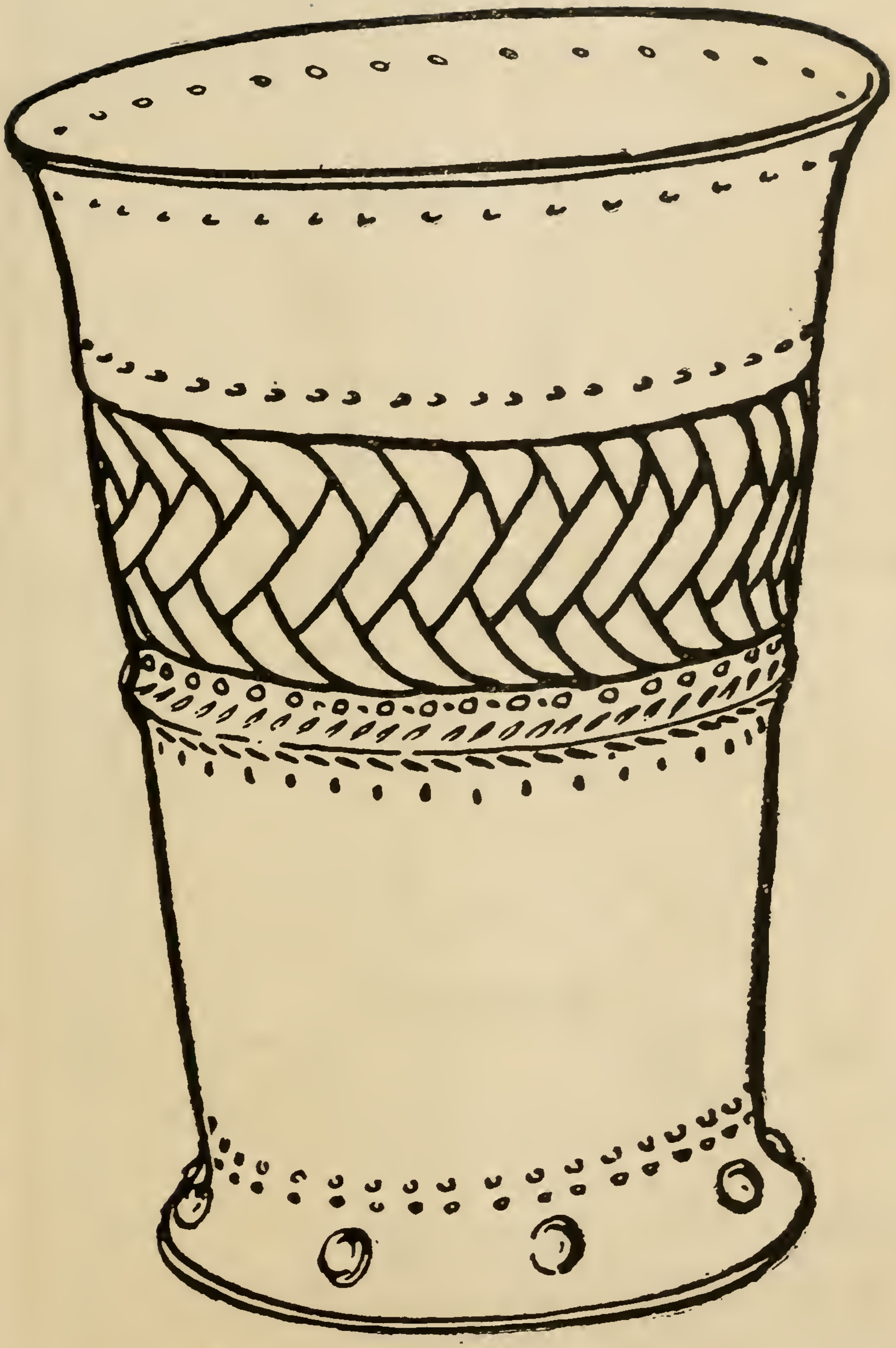


FIG. 15.

Digitized by Microsoft®

length of the profile line you propose (fig. 15A). Make a central circle the size of the base of the beaker and place the tip of the curved stake against this line;

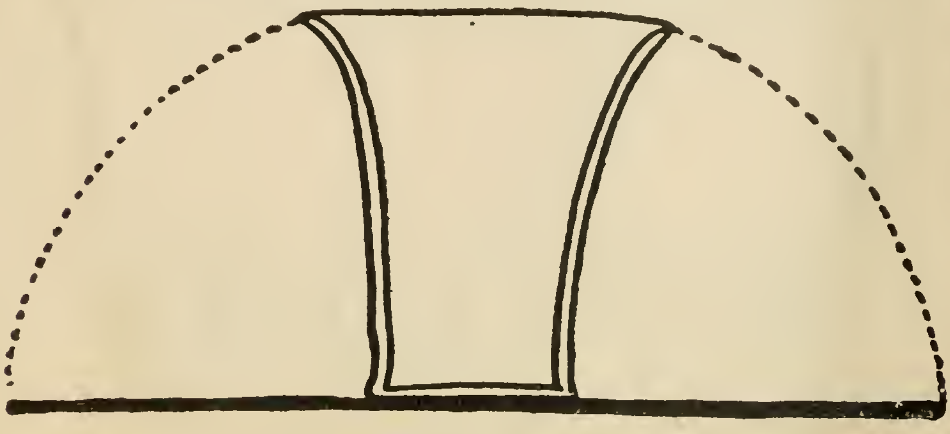


FIG. 15A.

on this drive the metal away from you by regular strokes of the rounded edged hammer. Keep the circles of blows concentric and the blows even in force. The metal will probably assume some-

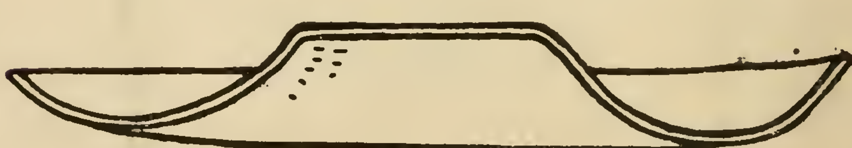


FIG. 16.

thing of this section after a short time. The recurved edges must be driven outward on the stake with the mallet

Digitized by Microsoft®

(fig. 14) and the work of the hammer resumed until the general shape has been attained. It can now be planished as before described. The body of the beaker or cup may be decorated with raised surfaces (fig. 15), produced from the inside by using snarling-irons (fig. 17). These are cranked punches Z-shaped with ends of different form; one

Hammer Work

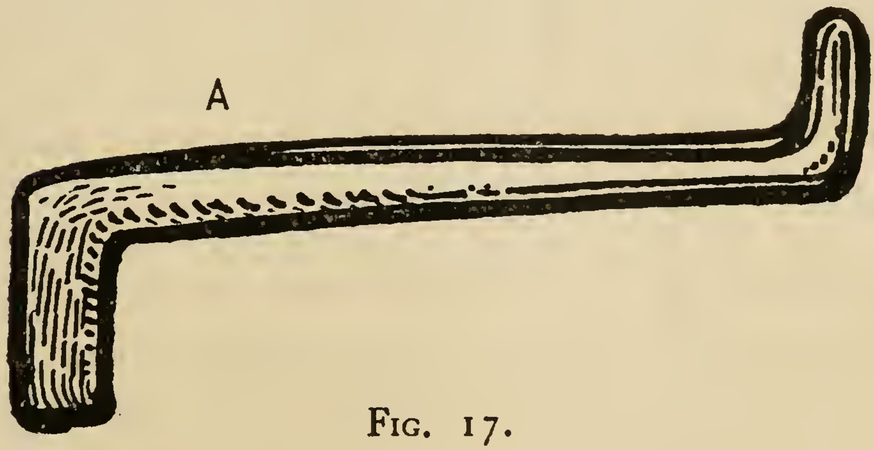


Fig. 17.

arm of the Z is fixed in the vise, the other adjusted beneath the part of the cup which is to be raised.

The Use of the Snarling-Iron.—The cup is held in position with the left hand, and the long arm of the snarling-iron struck smartly with the hammer at A. This causes the point of the snarler to strike against the inner side of the cup with nearly the same force as the original

Digitized by Microsoft ®

blow. This method is employed wherever it is impossible, owing to the depth of the cup or bowl, to use the hammer or a tracing tool, and with care almost any amount of relief can be obtained. But as the metal is not supported by pitch, which not only deadens the force of the blow but holds the metal up against the blow, much less force must be employed, and the operation of raising must be more gradual. When you have brought the cup, by the use of the hammer, to the shape you require, and have planished it and made its shape true, it can be filled with pitch and fixed on a pitch-block or on a sand-bag and completed from the face with chasing tools.

Ornamentation.—Whatever ornament you require must be such as expresses or emphasizes the forms of the cup. Spiral lines or flutes or ribs, or combinations of these, may be made to produce the most delightful variations of surface. Lozenges, zigzags, chevrons, any one of these absolutely elementary forms, repeated rhythmically on the surface, will produce the pleasantest effect. You must not set them out too exactly—trust rather to eye and hand; the variation

Digitized by Microsoft®

from geometric accuracy reveals the human worker, and it is the trace of the human touch which makes the meanest material precious. A cup with a narrow wreath of strictly formalized leaves and flowers bordered above and below by a good broad band of plain surface, and then enriched below, where the hand grasps it, with a chequer or continuous patterning of chevrons done by traced lines from the outside, will look dignified, rich, and workmanlike. Or you may raise a row of largish bosses with the snarling-iron and trace concentric lines round them and powder the surface with small bosses, mere punch marks done from the inside, and encircled from the outside; or you may, with a crescent-shaped punch cut for the purpose, make rings of petals round one of these punch marks as a center—always using as suggestion the effects produced naturally by the tools you employ.

If it be desired to add a base to the beaker, you will take a circle of metal as much greater in radius than the bottom of the cup as you wish the projection of the molding to be. You will then dome it up in the hollowed wood-block

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Hammer Work

to get the rough shape, afterward finishing it with hammers on the stake you used for the cup. Or you may put the dome on pitch and shape it with repoussé punches, taking care to avoid too much elaboration. The simplest rounds, chamfers, and hollows, with good broad surfaces to catch the light and reflections when polished, are always best. The student must not forget that these suggestions of design are only those which have arisen in my own experience. They are not to be taken as the only possible means of decoration. If the worker has any imagination—few are really without it, for imagination is only active love of beauty whether in Nature or in Art—then he will find the way for himself, his spirit and its manifestation in his work will be shaped to the thing he loves. A man's work is the mirror of his mind.

The joint between the base and the cup may now be made. The flat center of the base must be cut away with the saw, leaving a broad fillet all round. Let each be well pickled in diluted sulfuric acid, scrape the joins well on the base and on the cup, paint both with borax

Digitized by Microsoft®

and water, tie the two together with clips of strong binding-wire so that they cannot slip about, and charge the joint with paillons of solder dipped in borax, and solder with the large blowpipe and foot-bellows, taking care to support the cup so that it does not get bent out of shape when hot. (See Chapter XI on Soldering.)

It will now be necessary to replanish the cup on the stake, as the heat will have taken all the stiffness out of the metal. Any refinement of outline can now be given, any roughness about the joint filed clean, and the base made true on the face-plate or upon a piece of plate-glass. The same must be done for the rim. The cup should be pickled again until quite white and frosted looking. It must next be stoned with a piece of Water of Ayr stone to take away the outer film of oxid. Unless this is done you cannot get any proper polish or show the real color of the metal.

There is yet another method of making a beaker. It is much easier but less workmanlike. Turn up a conical tube of metal and solder the joint carefully, then hammer it out on the beck-iron

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hammer Work

to any curve you please, always keeping the hammer blows in concentric horizontal rings round the cup; make the base as before, next solder to the base a ring of plain, half-round, or twisted wire the exact size of the bottom of the body of the cup. This steadies the body on the base and makes it easier to tie the two together for the final soldering. The cup can be planished, filed true, and polished as before. Instead of planishing you may prefer to add bands of zigzags or waves or moldings or a wreath of leaves. If so, fill the cup with melted pitch, taking care to smear the inside with oil or with whitening and water beforehand, and let it cool. Warm the pitch on the block, press the cup mouth downward on the melted surface and put a weight on the top until cool, or, what is simpler, you can lay it on a sand-bag, and do without the pitch-block.[1] The first method is however the most secure. Then sketch on

[1] Work can be held on a sand-bag by a strap of stout leather, one end of which is fixed to the level, the other end with a loop on it passes over the object, and through a second hole in the level. The foot is placed in the loop, and the work held firm by pressure.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

the ornament and outline it with a tracer, lightly if you do not want the lines to show inside and firmly if you do. Hammer Work

If, for example, you wish to raise a rounded band around the cup near the brim. Trace a line above and below all round the cup, the distance apart being the width of the molding. You

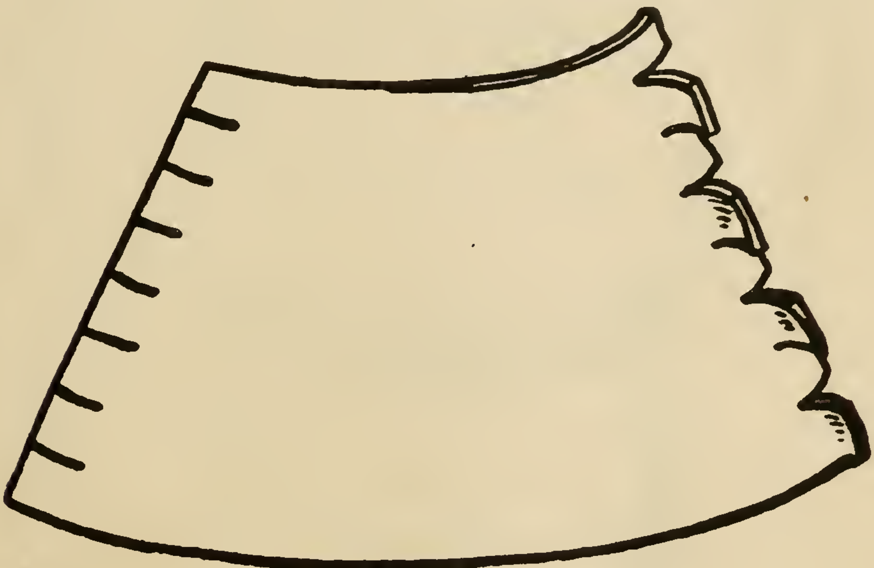


Fig. 18.

will then remove the cup from the pitch-block, warm it slightly in the blowpipe flame, and take out the pitch. Then rewarm the pitch on the block, lay the cup on its side, and press it well into the pitch. The space between the two traced lines can then be beaten out with rounded punches to the projection

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Hammer Work

required. Other projections which may be required lower down within the cup must be done with the snarling-iron,

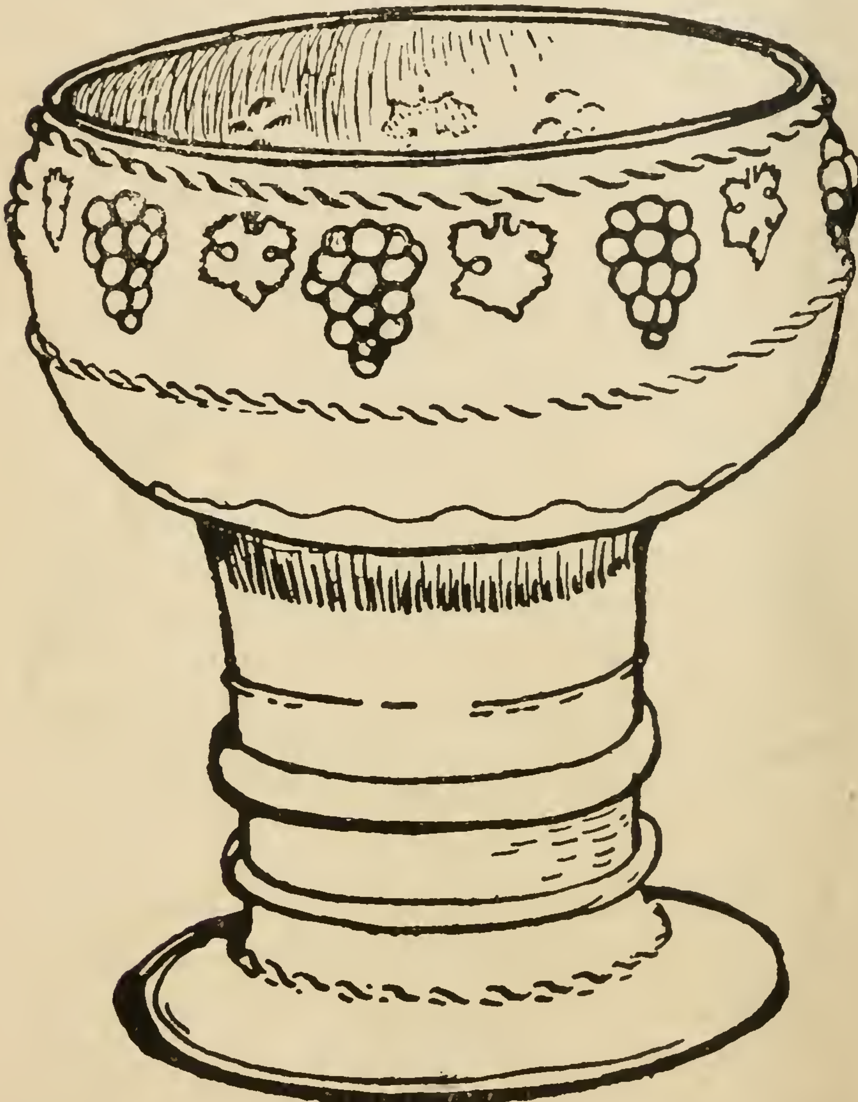


Fig. 19.

but these should only be very slight, as the cup would be difficult to clean

Digitized by Microsoft ®

when in use. Then clean, polish, and finish as before. Hammer Work

Another kind of joint which may be used in metal jugs or vases, or in any case where the joint does not matter, is the interlocking joint (see fig. 18). Cut out the metal to the shape required, making it $\frac{1}{2}$ inch longer than is necessary for a butt joint, giving thus a lap of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, and divide each of the edges to be joined into an equal number of spaces not more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch nor less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch; cut these with the shears a little more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch inward and scrape both sides clean. Bend the alternate lappets of metal up and down on each half, fit the two together and solder firmly, flushing the joints thoroughly. The resulting tube or cone can now be hammered into shape and planished almost as if it were in one piece.

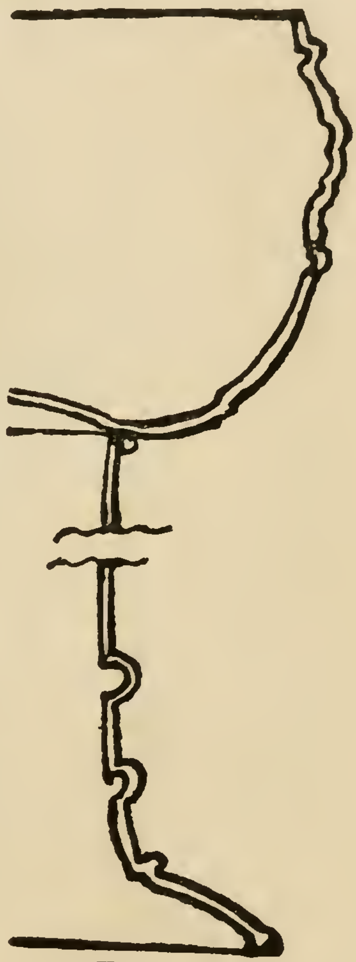


FIG. 20.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Hammer Work

Fig. 19 shows a cup on a pillar-like base. The cup would be made separately as above described, and the base would be made as if it were a beaker. The raised moldings on the stem (fig. 20) would be done with the snarling-iron and chased up from the front. The grapes and moldings on the cup would all be done from the inside. The cup and base would then be soldered together as before. In the bottom of the cup you might place a small panel of the vine (fig. 21). Seen through wine a little ornament in a silver cup looks as if done in fine enamel.

FIG. 21.

CHAPTER VIII

Candlesticks—The Socket—The Shaft—The Score—The Knop—The Base—Fitting Together—Polishing—A Simpler Form of Candlestick

Candlesticks

FIRST take a disk of silver or copper, 10 gage, 3 inches in diameter, beat it into

Digitized by Microsoft®

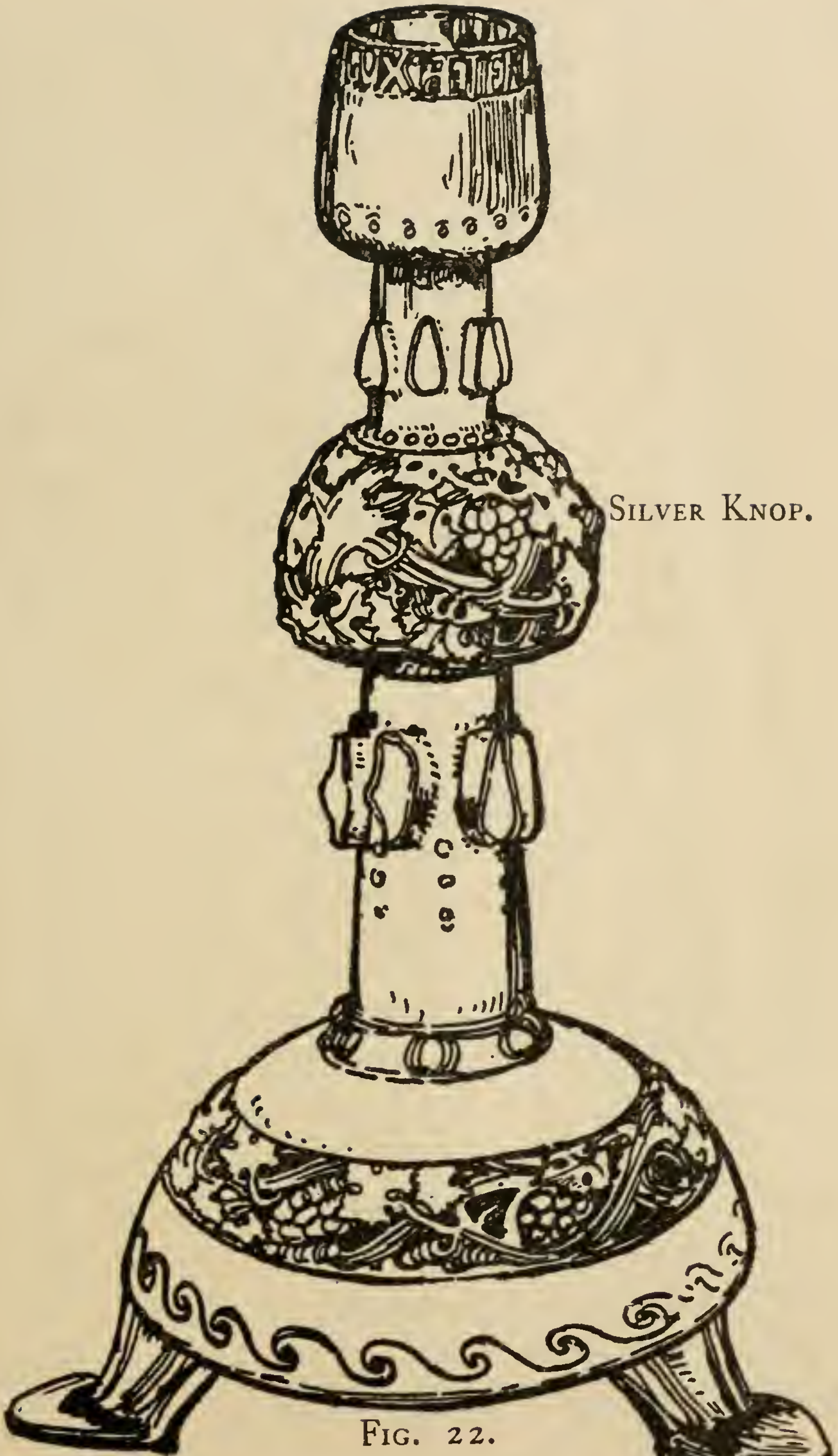


Fig. 22.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

a cup as before described. This is to hold the socket of the candle. Next make the shaft, which may be six-sided and tapering. Take a piece of metal of the same size, and draw upon it one face of the tapering shaft, and then, using each side of this face as one side of the two neighboring faces, mark them out also (fig. 23) with a cutter made out of a file by bending the tang at right angles (fig. 24), the end being sharpened to a chisel point, the edge running lengthwise. Cut down the two inner angles until you have cut half through the metal, bend the sides to their proper angle, and flush the angle with silver solder. Repeat this for the other half of the shaft, and tie and solder the halves together. File up the two visible joins clean and smooth. Now make the boss (fig. 27) out of 10 gage

Fig. 23.

Digitized by Microsoft®

by making a cup, and then drawing the mouth gradually over on the curved stake with the hammer shown in fig. 25.

Fig. 24.

Planish it carefully, and anneal it afterward. Boss out with a snarling-iron a few shallow circular bosses around the knop. Now fill the knop with pitch, and draw on the circular bosses whatever ornament you please. You might, for example, conventionalize the symbols of the constellations nearest the North Star. Now make the guard-dish with a circular raising in the center, to form a base for the shaft; beat it up like a flat saucer, planish it, and beat round the edges other circular panels, on which you will place whatever you wish, *i.e.* symbols of the seven planets as being congruous with the first suggestion. Now make two circles of twisted square wire,

Digitized by Microsoft®

Candlesticks one circle being right, the other left-hand twist, one circle just fitting outside, the other just fitting inside the rim of the guard-dish, and solder them to this edge (fig. 26).

On the circular raising you will solder a six-sided bearing-plate, and just within the edges of this bearing-plate you will solder a line of strong square twist. The space enclosed must exactly fit the base

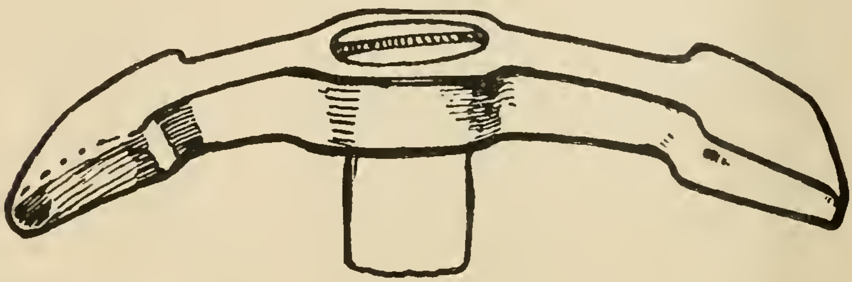


Fig. 25.

of the shaft, which will be strengthened by a band of thick metal, surmounted by a ring of twist, and just above the bottom edge a second row of reverse twist arranged to fit exactly over the twist soldered on the plate on the guard-dish. To make the base, take a piece of No. 12, and beat it up into a cup with a flat bottom and tapering slightly hollow sides. The rim of this cup will of course be the bottom, and the edge should have a broad flat beading

Digitized by Microsoft®

raised round it to strengthen it. You may now arrange a few sprays of flowers round this base, and after bossing them out from the back, fill the base with pitch and chase them up from the front. The socket for the candle is a simple cylinder of No. 8, long enough to project at least ½ inch above the edge of the smaller cup, and having two rings of twisted wire soldered round the upper edge. Candlesticks

You have now to fit the whole together. First cut a hole in the knop (see fig. 27)

FIG. 26.

large enough to let the hexagonal shaft through to the proper height (see fig. 25); file the edges true, and then dome up a shallow cup of 14 metal to cover the bottom of the knop. Cut a similar hexagonal hole in this, and when it fits the shaft and the knop properly, take them apart, and solder the shallow cup to the knop. Next clean the knop in pickle and slip it into place on the shaft, and turn up a band of metal about ½ inch broad to fit the shaft

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 27.

Digitized by Microsoft®

underneath the knop. Solder two rows of square twist with a plain flatted wire between to the upper edge of this band. A similar but smaller band having been fitted to the upper part of the knop, the latter can now be slipped into position and riveted firmly there. You can now fasten this in its place on the shaft with small screws or rivets. Beat out a shallow cup out of 14 copper ½ inch deep, and about 1 inch outside diameter. Tap a screw on the end of a piece of ¼-inch German silver wire about 1 inch longer than the shaft, and on the other end solder the shallow cup you have just beaten out. You will now need to cut plates of thick metal, size 14 or 16, and after drilling a hole the size of the center rod, to fit them inside the top and bottom of the shaft. These plates are to prevent movement when the whole candlestick is screwed together. You will now need a screw nut and a washer-plate. Fit all the parts carefully together, and screw the nut tight. If there be any movement it means that the bearing surfaces do not fit each other, and the inequalities must be filed away. When everything fits, the whole can be polished with oil and pumice and finished with rotten stone or crocus,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

 but do not remove the hammer marks. When it is all clean put it together finally, and darken the whole surface with a weak solution of sulfid of ammonium in hot water. Then wash it dry, and again polish slightly with a leather and a little rouge, and the work is complete.

Another form may be made thus:—

Beat up two deep funnel-shaped cups out of 14 copper, one larger than the other for the base, the smaller one for the top. When the shapes are true, make a shallow saucer-shaped cup a little larger than the top circle, and turn the edges over a stake with an edge to it, or over the edge of a hammer held in the vise. Then fit it on the top and carefully hammer the edge of the saucer down until it grips the edge of the cup. This makes the top of the candlestick. You will now need a boss to cover the meeting of the upper joint and lower portions of the candlestick. This is made either by beating up a deep cup as before described, then, after filling it with pitch, chase a wreath of olive or laurel or vine leaves, drawn carefully from nature, and arranged spirally round the boss, beginning at the bottom.

Digitized by Microsoft®

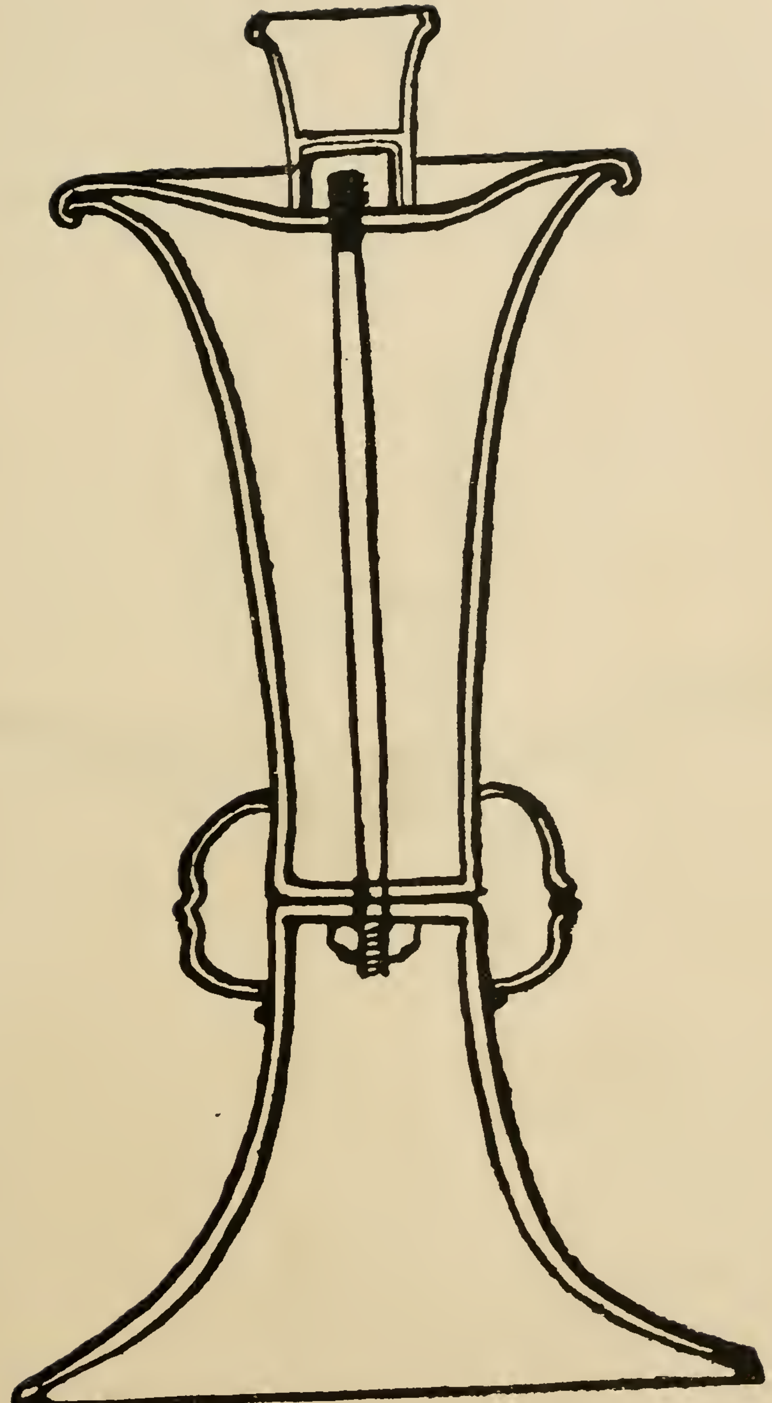


Fig. 28.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

When you have got the relief, you can beat down the ground, and, after removing the pitch, pierce the openings through with a sharp tracer, and then fit it into its place, as described before, and fasten the two together with a central rod and a screw-nut. The candle-socket is

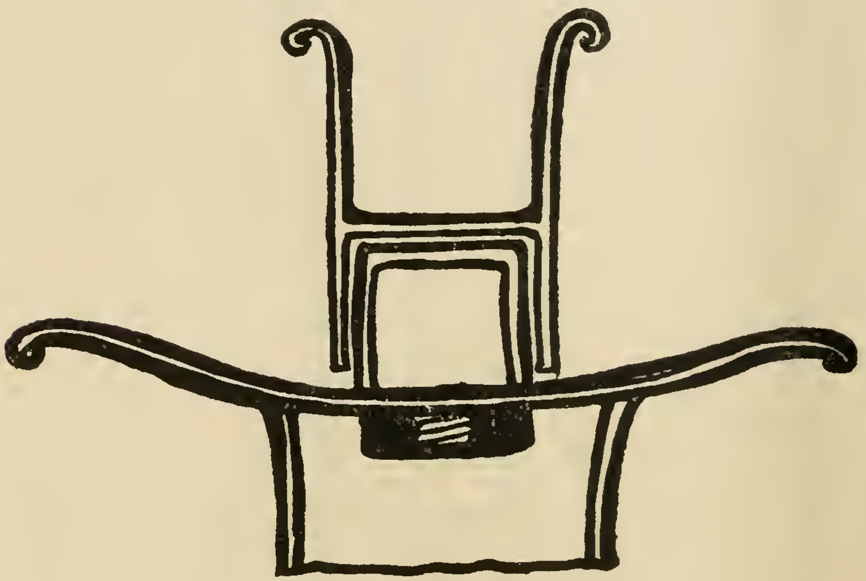


Fig. 29.

beaten up out of a cylinder, its top edge expanded and turned over (see fig. 29), and beaten down carefully into a rim; a false bottom is next soldered in, and the socket fitted lightly over the cylindrical head of the central shaft as before. Another boss may be made by beating up two cups; one, a little larger than the other, has its edges

Digitized by Microsoft®

spread out and turned over the lip of the smaller bowl, as described for the top of the candlestick. This makes a very simple and sturdy-looking candlestick. Candlesticks

CHAPTER IX

Spoons—The Shape of the Bowl—The Stem—The Handle or Thumbpiece—Joining the Bowl and Handle—Second Method of Making a Spoon—Third Method—Boxwood Punches—The Lead Matrix—Ingots for Handles

Spoons

FIRST take a piece of silver, say 10 gage, mark on it the shape of the bowl (fig. 30)—avoid the ugly modern shapes—and beat it out with a boxwood mallet into a suitable hollow in the beating-block. When you have got it nearly into shape, true it up on the rounded stake with a planishing hammer. Then take a piece of $\frac{3}{16}$th square wire or a strip of thick plate a little longer than the handle you propose and thicker, or you may cast a thick taper ingot like a big nail. Then gradually spread the top out wedge-shaped with a hammer on the anvil, annealing the metal from time to time. You may find

Digitized by Microsoft ®

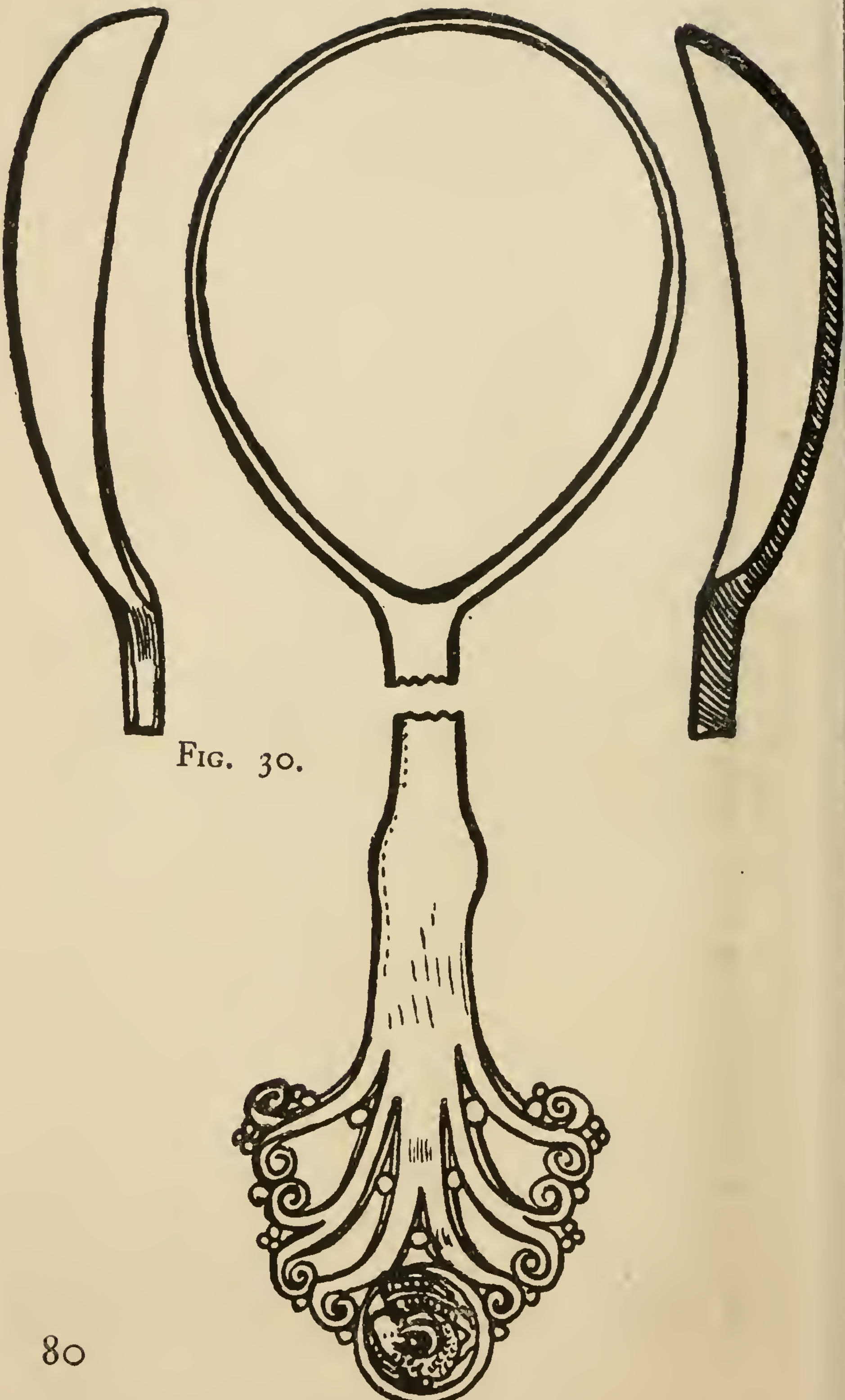


Fig. 30.

Digitized by Microsoft®

that as the metal extends it will crack at the edge, if so file away the crack with a triangular file; this prevents the crack from spreading. When you have spread it out a little more, take a chisel and divide the wedge into parts as shown in the diagram (fig. 31). Anneal it well, and bend the cut portions outward (fig. 32), and hammer them carefully into long taper twigs. When you have done this neatly, anneal the metal again and coil

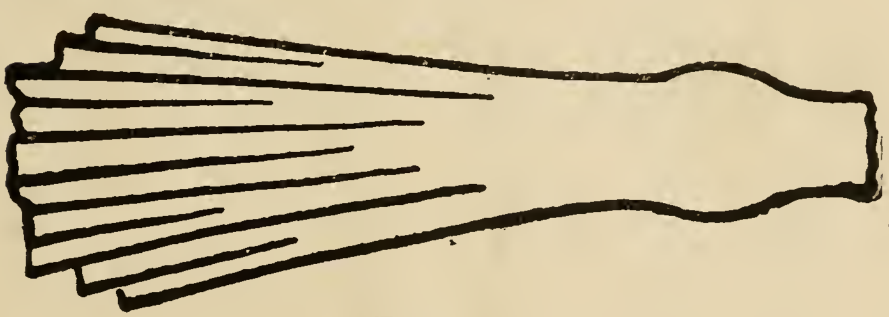


FIG. 31.

the twigs up as on fig. 30, or in any symmetrical way you may please. You will now solder the coils to each other, and further strengthen the joins by adding grains or groups of grains at the various points of junction. You will now have to fix the bowl and handle together. Hammer the end of the handle taper, leaving, however, a squarish projection at

Digitized by Microsoft®

Spoons the very end of the handle. This is to give a broader base for the attachment of the bowl. Unless the end of the

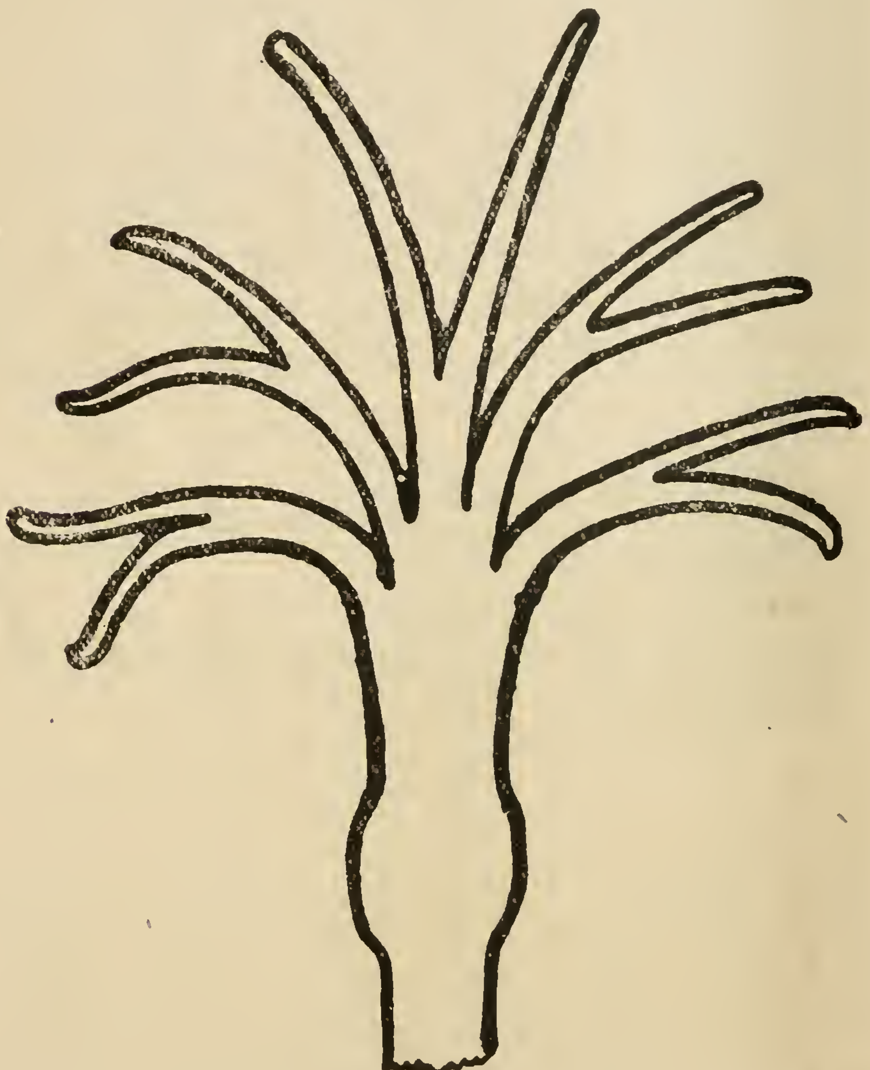


FIG. 32.

handle spreads out over the bowl where it joins, the strain put upon the spoon in polishing will soon tear the bowl and

Digitized by Microsoft®

handle apart. When you have tapered the handle nicely, flatten out the square projection fan-wise and file it to fit the bowl. Take a narrow strip of iron about $\frac{1}{16}$th thick and $\frac{3}{16}$th wide and tie it firmly to the handle with wire, so that the iron projects beyond the spoon end of the handle by more than the length of the bowl. You can now tie the bowl and handle together with binding-wire and solder the two together. This done planish the bowl upon a rounded stake, both to harden the metal and to correct any alteration in shape that may have come about in the soldering. Do the same with the handle. The work can now be stoned and polished with pumice and oil, finishing up with rouge.

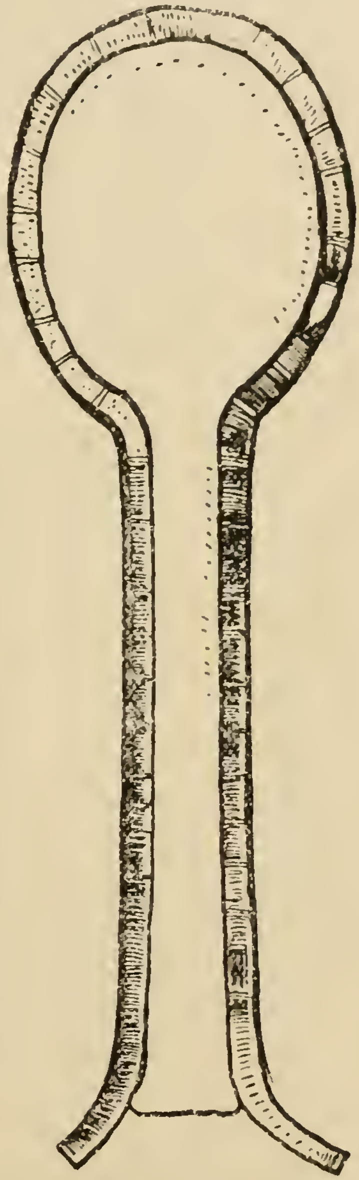


FIG. 33.

Another way is to cast an ingot of the

Digitized by Microsoft®

Spoons rough shape of the bowl and shank together (see fig. 33). The whole spoon is then shaped up with the hammer and the file, after the ingot has been passed through the rolling-mill once or twice to consolidate the metal. The objection to this is that it is more wasteful of the metal, but if you preserve the lemel with sufficient care, the waste can be almost entirely recovered.

Another way of preparing the bowls is to take a good-sized piece of boxwood (fig. 34) and carve it into the shape of the convex side of the bowl. An impression of this is taken in modeling wax, and a plaster cast made from the wax. Trim the plaster-cast into a square block, bend up a piece of thin sheet metal so that it makes an edging almost an inch high above the top surface of the cast (fig. 35). Tie this edging tightly round the cast with binding-wire, and fill up round the edge of the cast with a little thin plaster. Dry the whole near the fire or in an oven until every trace of moisture has disappeared. Over this cast or mold, when it is perfectly dry, pour melted lead, and you will have a mold of the concave side of the spoon. Place this mold upon the anvil,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

and a piece of 10-gage silver on the mold. With repeated blows on the boxwood punch drive the metal into the

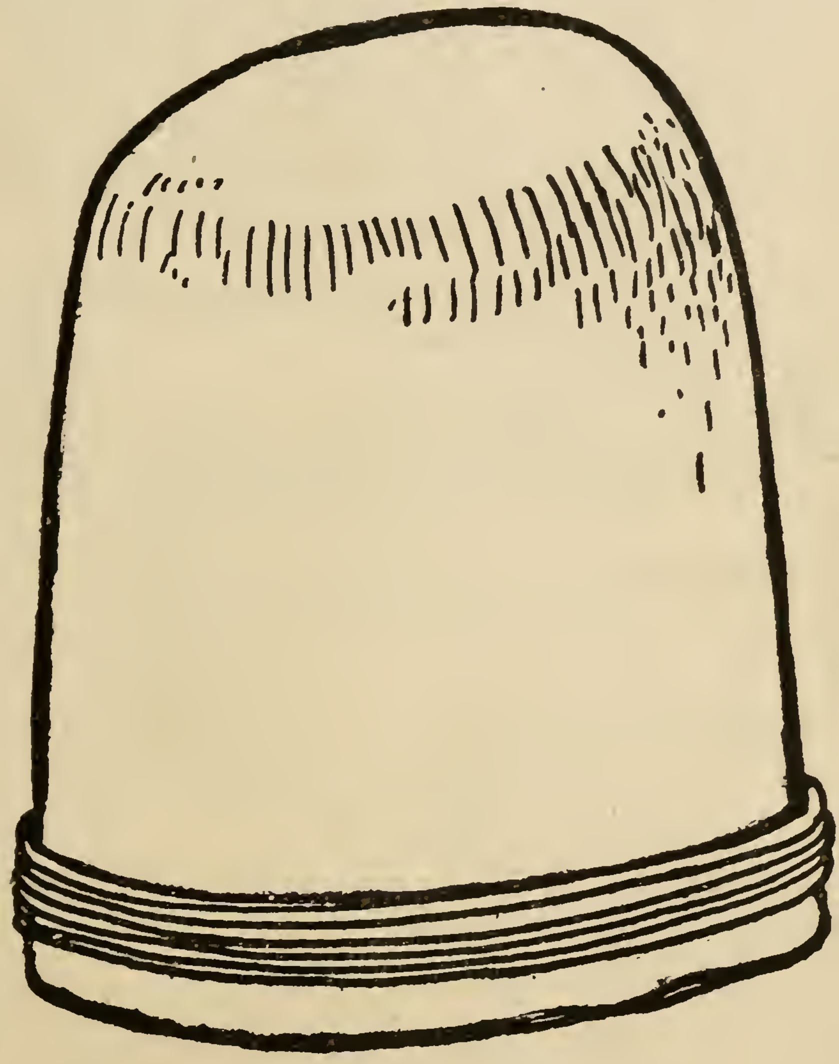


Fig. 34.

mold, annealing as often as may be necessary. You will now have a rough shape of the bowl; the superfluous metal must be cut away, and the crinkled edges

Digitized by Microsoft ®

hammered out smooth upon a rounded stake with a small tapping-hammer.

A good deal of hammer work in the preparation of the handle can be avoided by making the ingot more nearly the shape and size of the finished work. It can be flattened, and the end thinned out

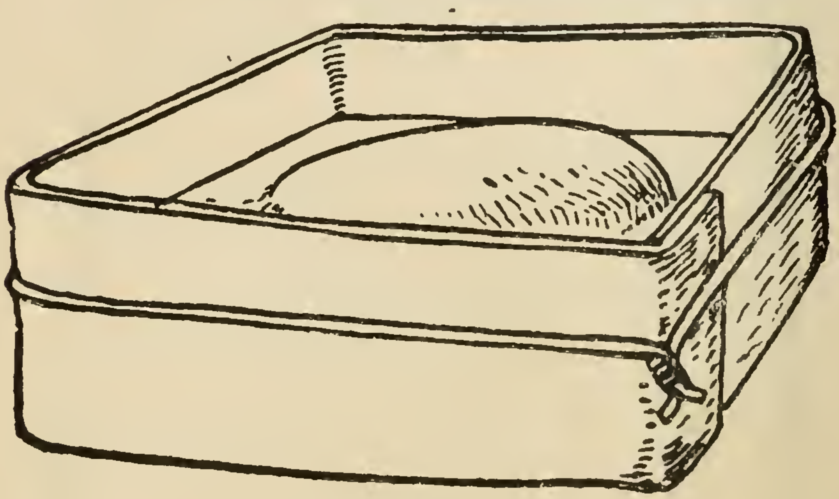


Fig. 35.

in the rolling-mill. The finishing can be done with the hammer on the stake as before. Do not be afraid of leaving the hammer marks where they are seen to have been necessary to produce the shape; they will always look beautiful. But the modern vice of putting in hammer marks to make a bad form look well, is more than reprehensible—it is foolish.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER X

Silver Solder—Use of Scrap Silver—The Crucible—
The Ingot Mold—Enameling Solder—Solders for
Large Work—How to Make Ingot Molds

Silver Solder

IT is best always to make your own solder. It will help to use up small scrap silver,

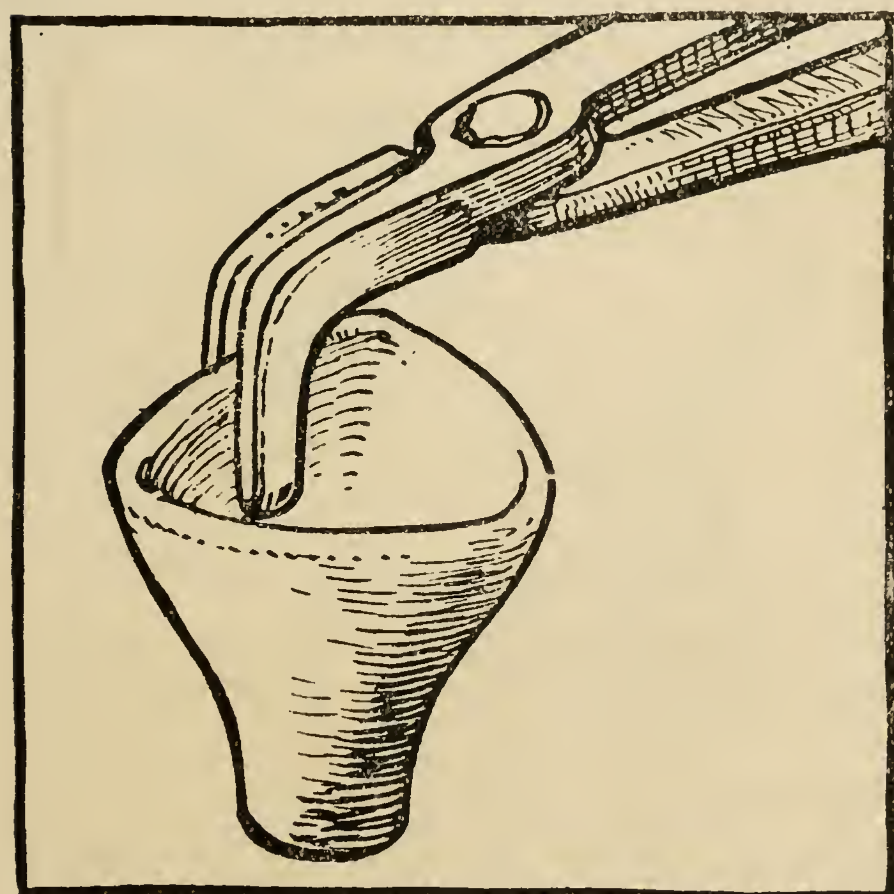


FIG. 36.

and is moreover cheaper to make than to buy.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Silver Solder

For ordinary work take two parts of silver cuttings and one part of fine brass cut small, and put them in a small fire-clay crucible (fig. 36) with a little borax. Place the crucible carefully in the coke on the furnace, and put more coke round

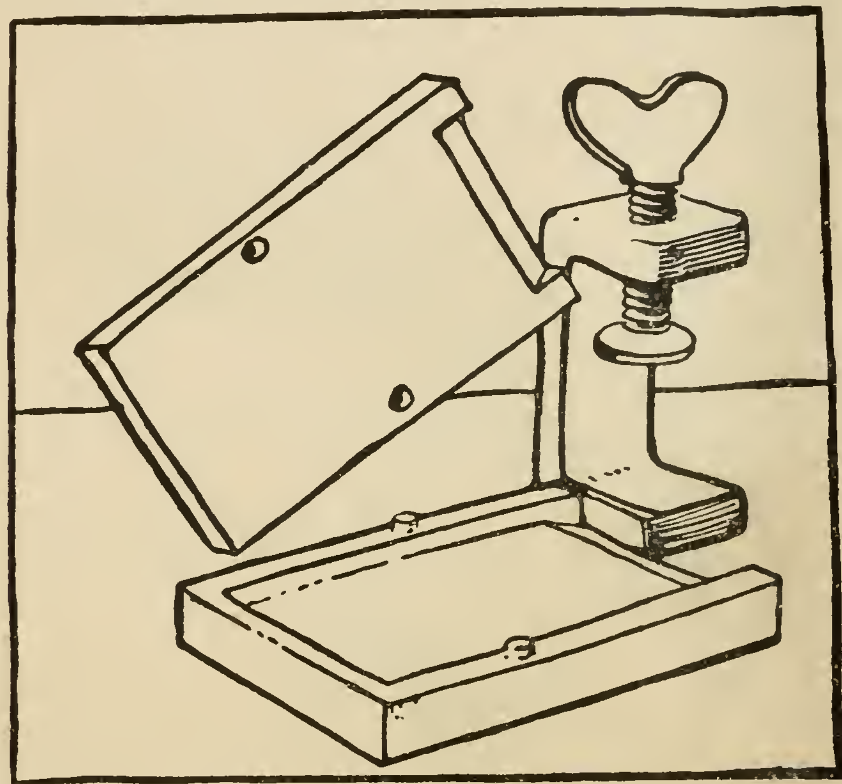


Fig. 37.

it, leaving an opening in front and on the top. Then with the gas blowpipe and foot-bellows direct the flame on the crucible, gradually increasing the force of the blast until the metal is fused. Care must be taken not to give more heat than

Digitized by Microsoft ®

is absolutely necessary, or the zinc in the brass will be oxidized, and the subsequent fusibility of the solder impaired. Silver Solder

Have ready an ingot mold (fig. 37) well greased; pour the fluid metal into the mold, and leave to cool. When cool you can roll it through the metal rollers down to size 6 metal gage, or thinner if you want it for very small work.

If fine brass can not be obtained, fine spelter or good pins will do equally well.

A very hard solder for use in enameling is made as follows:

	oz.	dwt.	grs.
Fine silver . .	1	0	0
Alloy copper .	0	5	0
	1	5	0

For a large piece of work requiring many solderings the successive solderings may be safely done by using a more fusible solder for each operation.

The range of solder may be as follows:

No.	1.	7 parts	fine	silver to	1	of	fine	brass.
”	2.	5	”	”	” 1	”	”	
”	3.	3	”	”	” 1	”	”	
”	4.	2	”	”	” 1	”	”	

Digitized by Microsoft®

Silver Solder

It is, however, rarely necessary to use so much precaution; care in the arrangement of the joints and in the regulation of the flame will make it possible to do with only one solder.

How to Make Ingot Molds.—If you have not got an ingot mold one can easily be made. Take a piece of $\frac{1}{8}$th square iron wire, bend it up into the shape of a long U (fig. 38), file the edges true, and on one side of the U file cross nicks with a 3-square file. These nicks allow the air to escape when the metal is being poured in. Then take two pieces of thick sheet iron a little larger than the U, and place one on each side of the U, and tie the whole together with binding-wire. Ingots of

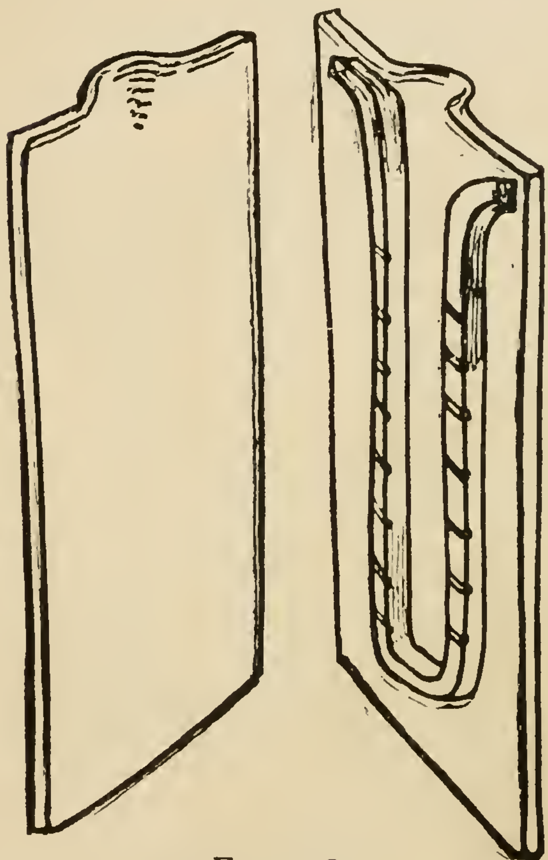


Fig. 38.

Digitized by Microsoft®

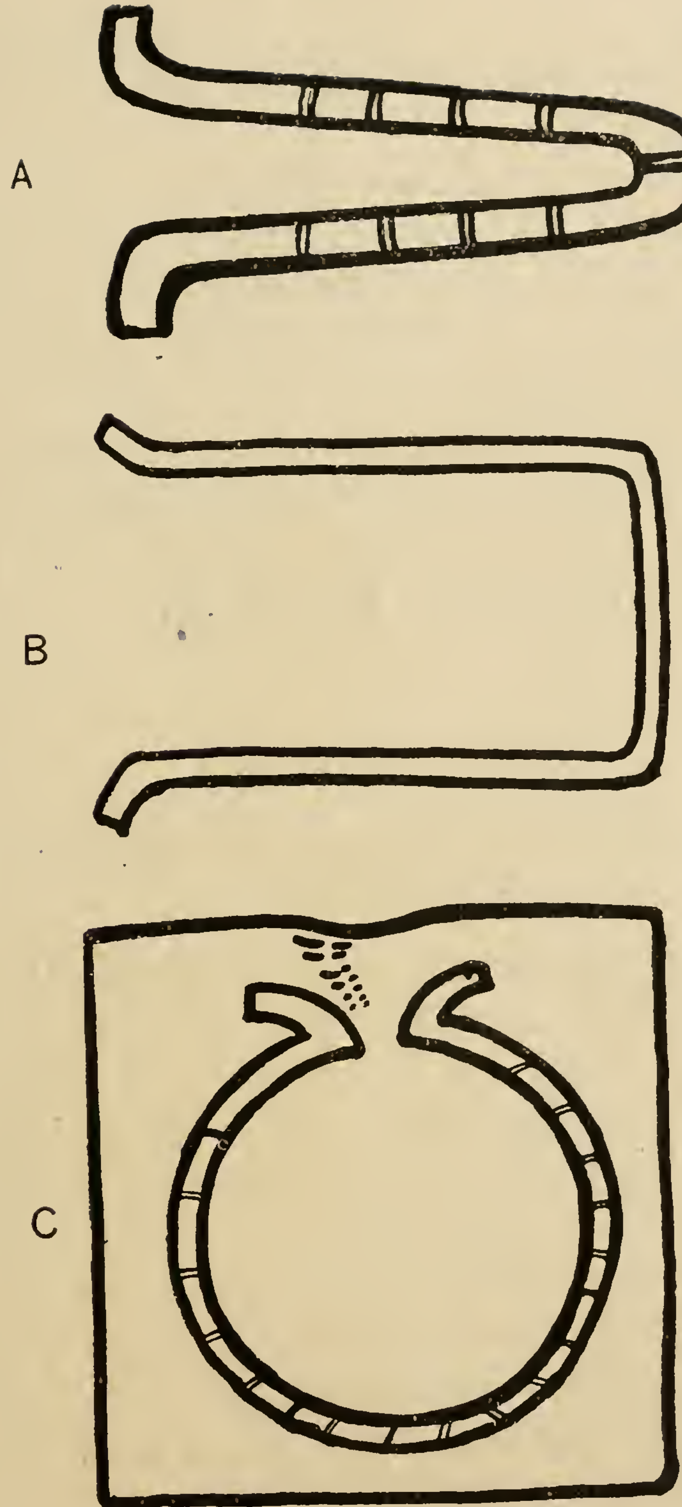


FIG. 39.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Silver Solder

any size can be made by varying the thickness and contour of the iron enclosing wire.

By using narrow ingots you can cast slips of metal which can be afterward drawn down into wire through a draw-plate fixed in a vise. (See chapter on Wire-Drawing).

You will need broad ingots if you wish to roll plate, narrow ingots for wire. Several forms of ingot are given in the diagram (fig. 39, A, B, and C).

CHAPTER XI

Soldering—Use of Borax—The Blowpipe—Soldering Lamps

Soldering

The art of soldering with the fusible alloys given above is one which is much written about and but very rarely described, although the process itself is exceedingly simple. It demands only care and scrupulous cleanliness of all the materials. The parts of the metal to be joined must be absolutely clean—that is, scraped bright; the solder itself must be clean also. First, take a lump of borax crystal; grind up a little with water on a small piece of slate. Take

Digitized by Microsoft®

a slip of solder, cut a number of slits lengthwise down one end, and then, by a few cross-cuts, snip off a number of tiny bits or panels of solder. These panels are then dipped in the borax, so that they are completely covered by a thin coating of borax. Next, the pieces of metal having been scraped clean along the join, are both painted over with a solution of borax by means of a camel's-hair brush. The pieces are now to be tied together in their proper positions by binding-wire. Care must be taken here not to bring the edges of the metal too closely together, or else the solder when fused will run along the angle instead of entering the joint. When this happens the work looks as if it were perfectly soldered, but on filing or putting any strain on it the joint immediately falls to pieces.

Soldering

It is therefore important for silver soldering that the work should be fitted closely, but not too closely. Enough space should be left for the metal to run along the joint by capillary attraction. When the two pieces of metal are fitted, and bound together as described with iron binding-wire, the joint is then moistened with a brush charged with borax solution;

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Soldering the little chips of solder are then placed at intervals fairly closely along the joint. The work is then gently warmed in the flame of a blowpipe to drive off the water in the borax. When this is dry a stronger

FIG. 40A.

flame is directed over the whole work, heating it gradually and evenly, taking care that no part of the metal except that near the joins gets red hot. When the join has got thoroughly well heated, a

Digitized by Microsoft ®

brisker flame may now be directed upon the bits of solder. When using the blowpipe be very careful always to direct the flame toward the worker and downward, so that he may readily see the heat he is

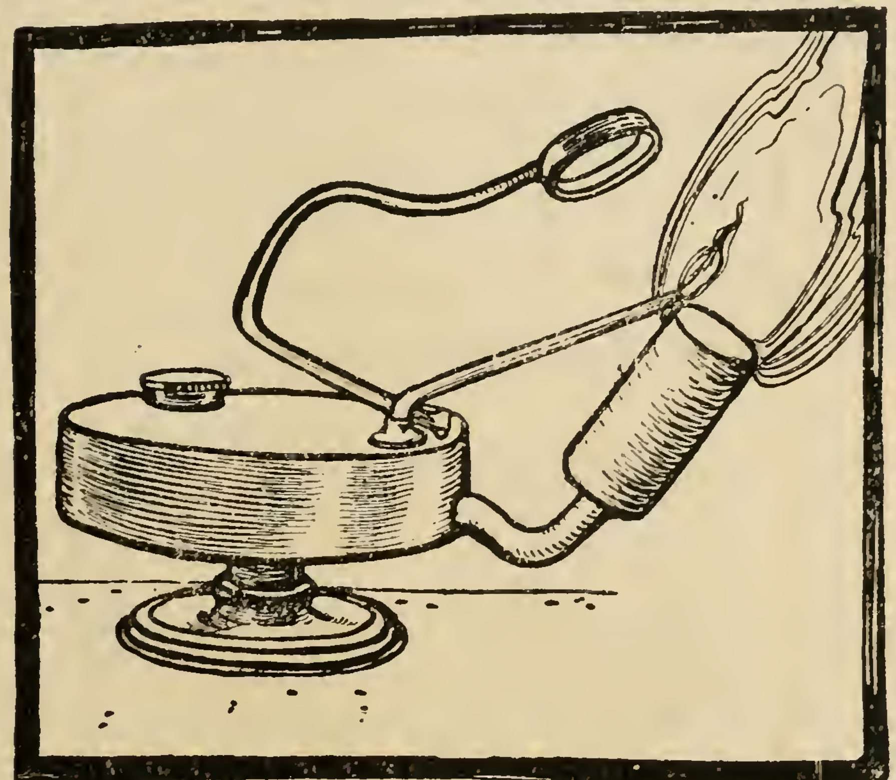


FIG. 40B.

giving and the heat the work requires. If the work has been brought up to the proper heat, the solder will immediately flush and run along the joint, filling it in every part. Wherever a portion of the metal has been allowed to grow cooler

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Soldering than the surrounding parts, the joint there will be imperfect, and the work must be cooled, the metal cleaned by being dipped into pickle—which is a mixture of one part hydrochloric acid and ten parts water; a stronger solution much used is half and half of each—and then the operation begun again until all the joints are full.

Soldering can be done either with the gas flame and mouth blowpipe, with the

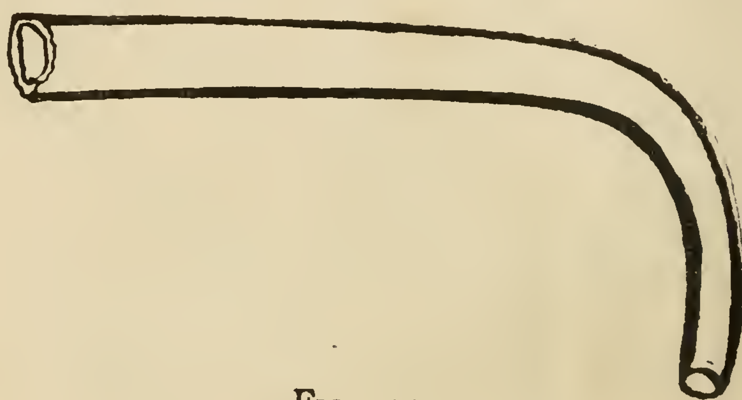


FIG. 40C.

foot-bellows and hand blowpipe, with an oil lamp or a spirit lamp, or, as almost all old work was done, on a charcoal fire, with fans and small bellows.

The spirit lamp (fig. 40A) and the oil lamp (fig. 40B), with the mouth blowpipe (fig. 40C), generally are only suitable for small work, as the amount of heat required for work of any size is very great. But a

Digitized by Microsoft®

very great deal of work can be done with the spirit or oil lamp. Both are very easy to manage, only in the case of the oil lamp more care is needed to keep a good flame and to avoid smoking the work. It is most important to acquire freedom in the use of the blowpipe, and to this end the student should practise with two sizes of blowpipe—one for large and one for small work. Soldering

CHAPTER XII

Settings—The Kinds of Stones to use—Close Settings—Setting the Stone—Open Settings—Paved Settings

In choosing stones to set, avoid those that are cut into facets. Select those that are rounded or cabochon cut; if you can do so, use stones that are cut by Eastern lapidaries. The Oriental has an eye for color and form, and has no foolish fears of so-called flaws. The stones rejected by the jeweler are almost always well worth the attention of the artist. See that those you buy have a fairly level bed for the setting, and that the stone is well beveled, so that the setting will hold Settings

Digitized by Microsoft®

Settings when it is rubbed over. Settings may be open or closed. The closed setting is a box, the upper edge of which is rubbed over the stone. The open setting may be a mere rim without a bottom, or a circlet of claws. Or the two may be combined, and a close setting set in a large open-work setting of branches and leaves, as in early French or German work.

In incrusted work the stones are let into recesses carved out below the surface of the metal. The edges of the opening are then drawn up to the stone by careful work with punch and burnishers. This method is common in Indian and Persian work.

To Make a Close Setting.—Cut a band of silver, size 5 or 6 metal gage, somewhat wider than the intended height of the setting, to allow for filing level and rubbing over, bend the strip round so that it fits closely over the stone (fig. 41). When you have fitted the band closely to the contour of the stone, cut off the superfluous metal, file the juxtaposed

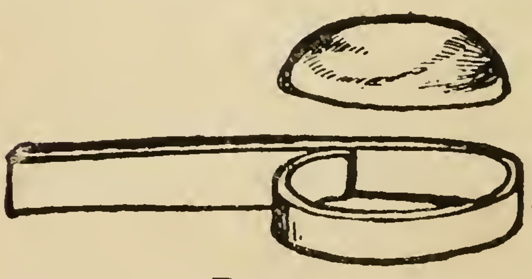


Fig. 41.

Digitized by Microsoft®

ends true, tie the setting round with fine binding-wire so that the ends meet (fig. 41A); take the borax brush and paint the joint, cut a paillon of solder,[1] dip it in the borax, and lay it on the joint. Then put the setting thus charged on the wire mop or on a piece of charcoal, warm it in the flame, and when the borax has ceased boiling direct

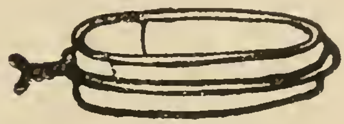


Fig. 41A.

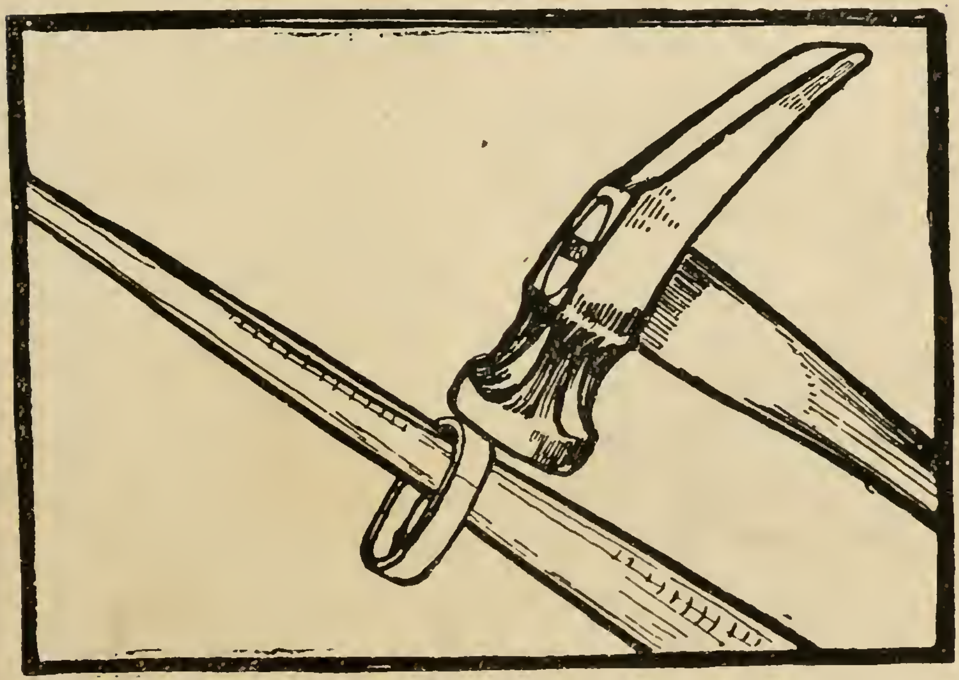


Fig. 42.

the tip of the blue flame on the joint and the setting. The solder should run almost immediately. If it has flushed

[1] The solder for the band of the setting should be harder running than the rest.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

the joint, the setting may be cooled and made true by tapping it round with a light hammer on a taper steel mandrel (fig. 42)—an old steel cotton-spindle makes an excellent mandrel—and the bottom edge filed flat. Then take a piece of silver, 6 or 8, according to the use to which you intend to put the setting, and a little larger all round than it, scrape the surface clean, tie the setting on with binding-wire (fig. 43), and anoint the surfaces to be joined as before, and set a few paillons round the joint and proceed as before. When the joint is complete, file off the superfluous metal, and you will have a box which just takes the stone. This, if the work is properly done, gives the simplest form of setting. If desired, a bearing for the stone can be made by fitting a concentric but narrower band inside this. The stone is now supported all round, and the work of rubbing over is made much easier. The edges of the setting are then filed true, the superfluous metal at the base cut away, and the whole made clean and workmanlike. Settings

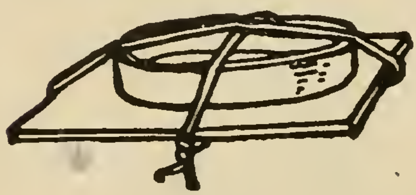


Fig. 43.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

can be grouped together and united by filigree-work to form brooches, clasps, necklaces; but this will be described in a later chapter.

Open settings, collets, or crown settings, are made by taking a strip of thick metal (10 gage), bending it a little smaller than the stone, and soldering as before. Then take a sharp graving-tool, wet the point, and cut away the metal inside the top

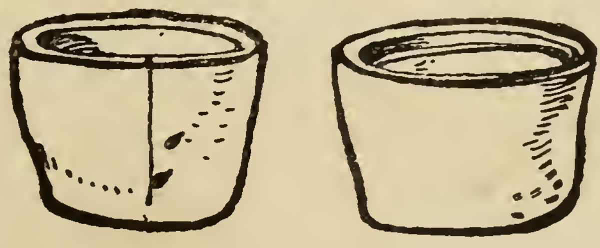


FIG. 44.

edge so as to leave the ledge about a sixteenth down in which the stone must fit (fig. 44). Then take a small file and form the setting into leaves or claws, or whatever you wish, taking care first to block out the main forms, always remembering to leave enough metal at the top to hold the stone. The outer surface of the claws, or leaves may be carved with the round gravers to whatever shape is desired (fig. 45). Or the drill may be used to produce

Digitized by Microsoft®

Settings perforated patterns below the line of the base of the stone; in fact, there is no end to the variety of forms which may be pro-

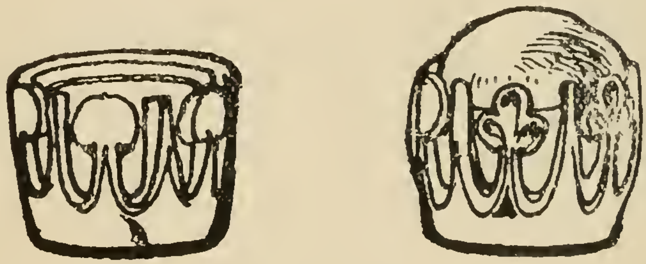


Fig. 45.

duced in this way. The main thing is to secure the stone firmly in its place; unless this is done in the first shaping of the setting, it can not be done properly afterward.

Paved Settings.—These are settings scorpered out of the solid metal. The method is one which has been much abused, but is yet capable of much beauty when properly applied. The outline of the stone is marked on the plate, the ground is then carefully cut away with the scorper until the stone just fits in its place (fig. 46). You then cut a border round the stone, sloping away out-

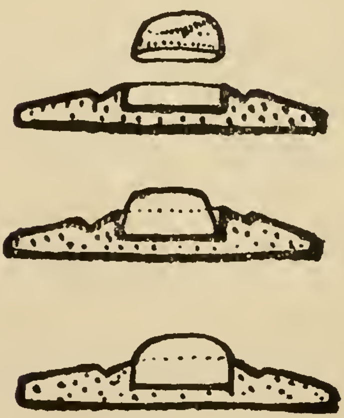


Fig. 46.

Digitized by Microsoft®

ward as wide as you wish, keeping this border highest next the stone. When the remainder of the work is finished, cleaned, and stoned and polished, the gem is put in its place, and held there while the metal is burnished up against it (fig. 47). This work requires great care and patience, for if not properly done the stone will quickly become loose. This method can only be applied to the harder stones. Figs. 48 and 49 show a paved setting used in the center of a ring, with tiny pierced fleurs-de-lis in the angles.

Fig. 47.

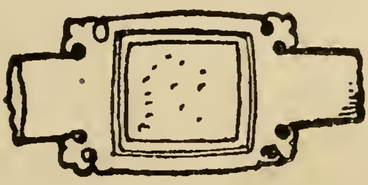


Fig. 48.

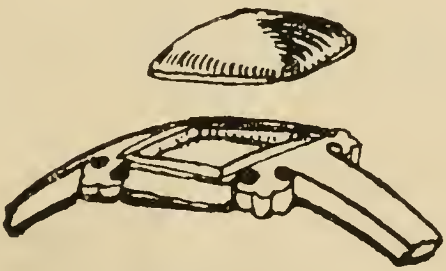


Fig. 49.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER XIII

Rings—Hoop Rings—Making Compound Wire—The Knot Ring—Polishing—The Wreath—The Filigree Table Ring—Another Form—The Carved Ring—The Design of Rings

Rings

THE simplest form is a hoop of flattened wire or a band of metal coiled round a mandrel and soldered. This is the foundation of more elaborate forms.

A pleasant-looking ring may be made as follows. Take a piece of half-round

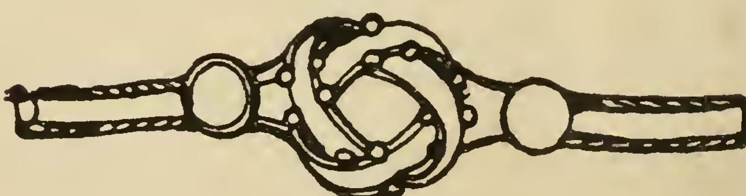


FIG. 50.

silver wire about $\frac{1}{16}$th inch wide, solder two fine wires lengthwise down each side of it, then weave this into a knot leaving an opening in the center (fig. 50). At every one of the crossings of the knot solder a tiny bead of silver made by

Digitized by Microsoft ®

cutting off snippets of metal and running them up into beads on a piece of charcoal; then take a small stone, a garnet or an opal or a chrysoprase, and set it in a close setting. Fit the setting inside the opening in the knot (fig. 51), and solder it there, taking care to leave room for rubbing the setting over the stone. Then make the band of the same compound wire, and solder two V-shaped bands to it as wide apart as the width of the knot; then solder the knot in between these, arranging the arms of the V's so that they run in with the lines of the knots; cover the joints with beads, either single or grouped three, four, or five together, or with single beads flattened out on the stake, then pickle the ring, stone it with small bits of Water of Ayr stone, or slips of slate, or with pointed slips of boxwood dipped in pumice powder and oil. Then polish it on the lathe with the scratch brush, and after setting the stone finish on the buff with rouge.

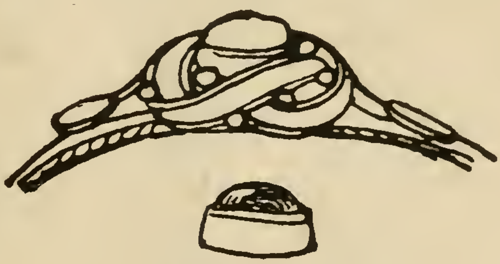


Fig. 51.

You can vary this pattern to almost

Digitized by Microsoft ®

any extent by using different sections of wire and different arrangements of the knots and beads; *e.g.*, the central wire instead of being round can be flat with hollow notches filed out of each side before the side wires are soldered to it. The knot can be made more complete by interlacing thinner wires in and out of the others, or you can add twigs and leaves in the interspaces.

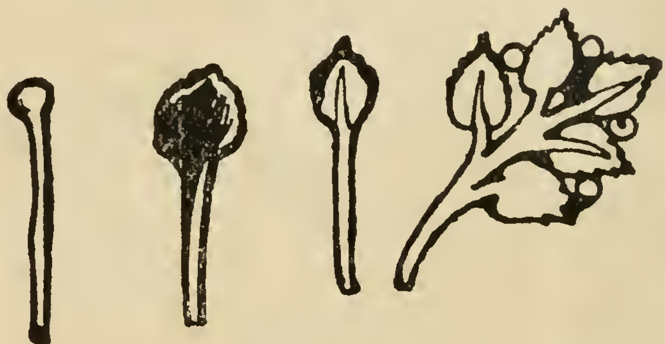


Fig. 52.

To Make Leaves.—Take a wire of the thickness you require the twig to be, heat the end in the blowpipe flame, plunge it in the borax, then direct the blue flame on the tip. The wire will quickly melt and run up into a bead (fig. 52). As soon as the bead forms, plunge the wire into water, and after flattening on the stake you can file it into whatever shape you please. Groups

Digitized by Microsoft ®

of three or five of these soldered together and the leaves joined at the tips by tiny beads look very well (fig. 52) when combined with knot work of flat wire.

Another form of ring is the filigree table ring (fig. 53). Take any small irregular stone and make a setting. Take filigree wire, or fine twisted wire flattened in the rollers (see fig. 55) will do as well, twist up the wire into a simple wreathed symmetrical pattern. Then take a piece of modeling wax—not modeling paste, that corrodes the silver—fix the setting upright in it and arrange the wire wreath round it. Have ready some flattened beads, group them into simple patterns with the wreath (see fig.), and press ever so lightly into the wax. (Fig. 54 shows another form of table filigree with a pearl center.) Then mix a small quantity of fine plaster of Paris and place a good body of it over the whole group; leave it to set and when

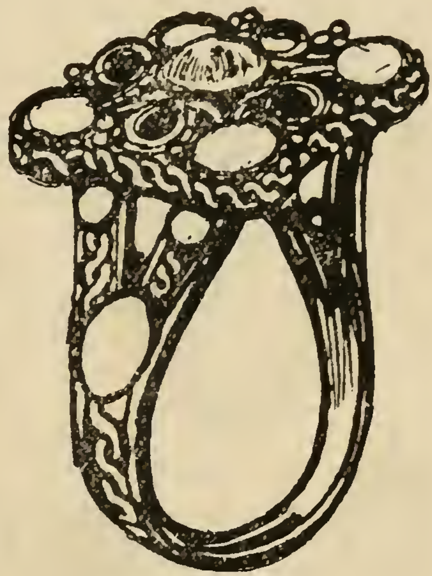


Fig. 53.

Digitized by Microsoft®

quite dry and hard remove the wax carefully. The silver will be found fixed in the plaster. Remove the plaster with a brush from between the joints and around the setting, but do this without disturbing the pattern in any way. Dry the plaster thoroughly in an oven or by the fire, then paint borax on the setting and over the crossings of the wire, and everywhere you wish to solder. Put paillons in the necessary places and play the flame over the whole gradually so that any chance moisture may be driven off. If this is done too suddenly the plaster may fly into pieces.

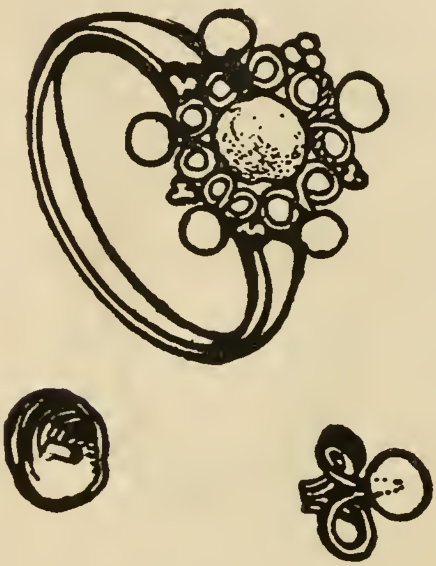


Fig. 54.

You will then direct the flame on the setting and the wreath until the solder has run everywhere. Then turn up a ring out of a strip of silver and solder it. Take a coil of wire twisted from right to left and another twisted from left to right and a length of plain wire a size or two larger. Boil out the band in dilute acid, coil the plain wire round the middle

Digitized by Microsoft®

of the band and solder it, coil the twisted wires on either side of it and solder them, using very small paillons of solder, as if much is used the coils of twist will be filled up. When the bare ring is finished thus far, boil it out, clean it in a little pickle, also the setting and the filigree. Take a piece of flatted wire —twisted wire or ordinary round wire passed once or twice through the rollers (fig. 55)—and bend it to the outline of the table of filigree, and after tying it on with fine wire, solder it to the edge to give strength. Then tie this table

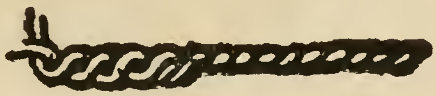


Fig. 55.

to the ring with wire and solder the two together, and arrange branch pieces of flatted wire or double rows of twist wire, so as to strengthen the junction of the ring with the table (fig. 53). These branch pieces will go from side to side of the ring behind the filigree, and their junction with the ring should be covered with a shield cut out of thin metal, or a flatted bead, or a knot of twist wire, or a group of grains like a flower. The main thing is that the joint must be covered. The junction of the branch pieces with the table of filigree will then be strengthened

Digitized by Microsoft®

Rings by round grains soldered in. It is important to remember in all ring designs that there must be no spiky projections; all must be rounded and smooth, and pleasant to the touch. As the field for the display of workmanship is only the upper area of the first joint of the finger, all ornament should be confined mainly to that space. Many things look well in a sketch which look ridiculous on the finger. It is best therefore to build up the effect on the ring itself, using a little hard wax to hold the pieces of silver and whatever stones you may use together. You will soon find out what effect is best if you remember that every design must have three principal features—the ring proper, the junction, and the bezel. Many old rings were carved out of the solid metal (fig. 56). To make a ring of this kind, you will first cast an ingot of the shape you require (fig. 57), or hammer a cast bar into the rough form; then anneal the metal, and put it on the pitch. Then sketch on the design in black water-color with a brush, and have ready

Fig. 56.

Digitized by Microsoft®

a few chisels of various sizes made by sharpening a few tracers on an oilstone. Outline the ornament or the figure with a small round-edged tracing-tool, and afterward cut away the groundwork with a rounded chisel. Then, with ordinary chasing tools, you can model the surface of the leaves and twigs or the figure as much as you please. Remember always to have a bit of the natural foliage near you as a guide; never do anything in

FIG. 57.

the way of ornament without reference to nature or without having made a careful detailed study of the plant or form you intend to use. You will have quite enough to do to overcome the technical difficulties without having also to puzzle your head over the form.

This is a rule which should never be neglected; you must learn the form before you can use it. Avoid sprawling lines; let leaves and twigs be well knit together, let all the lines lead the eye to some central point. You must not imitate but translate.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Rings All art is translation from one state into another, and the manner of the translation reveals the quality of the artist.

When you have modeled the wreath or the knot as much as you wish, you can then carve the remainder of the band with a running wreath or a chevron, or with a graver hollow out symmetrical cuts all round the band. File and scrape the inside smooth; polish with a ringstick, which is a taper rod of wood covered with chamois leather, and charged with rouge.[1]

CHAPTER XIV

Necklaces—How Designed—The Arrangement of Stones — Chain-making — Filigree Mounts for Pearls—Backing the Pearls—Woven Links—The Snap—Polishing—Another Form of Necklace—What to Study—How to Use your Studies—Pendants—Suggestions for Design—Loop for the Pendant—Cleaning and Polishing

Necklaces NECKLACES could be designed on a circle of 4½-in. diameter, and all pendants should

[1] Rings (hollow) can be chased up after the lining has been soldered in by boiling the ring (after a tiny hole has been pierced in the lining) in a strong solution of borax or alum. This makes a strong foundation for chasing, and can be removed by boiling in water afterward.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

be arranged on radial lines. No pendants should go beyond the semicircle or they will hang awkwardly on the shoulder when worn.

Cut a circle out of thin copper or brass 4½ in. in diameter. Have ready the stones you desire to use, and some flattened wire or rolled twist. Make a few flattened beads, and then sketch out the design which suggests itself when you have arranged the stones according to their preciousness and color. You will find that the mere symmetrical arrangement of the stones round the circle will suggest almost instantly any number of methods of treatment. Choose what seems the simplest, and twist up your wire to form knots or wreaths round the stones (fig. 58), and then arrange for the chains and loops which will be needed to link all up together.

Avoid the use of shop-made chains; they spoil the effect of the most carefully devised necklace. The only chain possible to use is that called Venetian chain, but even that is not quite satisfactory. The way to secure a good effect of chain-work is to coil up the links yourself. This is best done by taking a piece of flattened

Digitized by Microsoft®

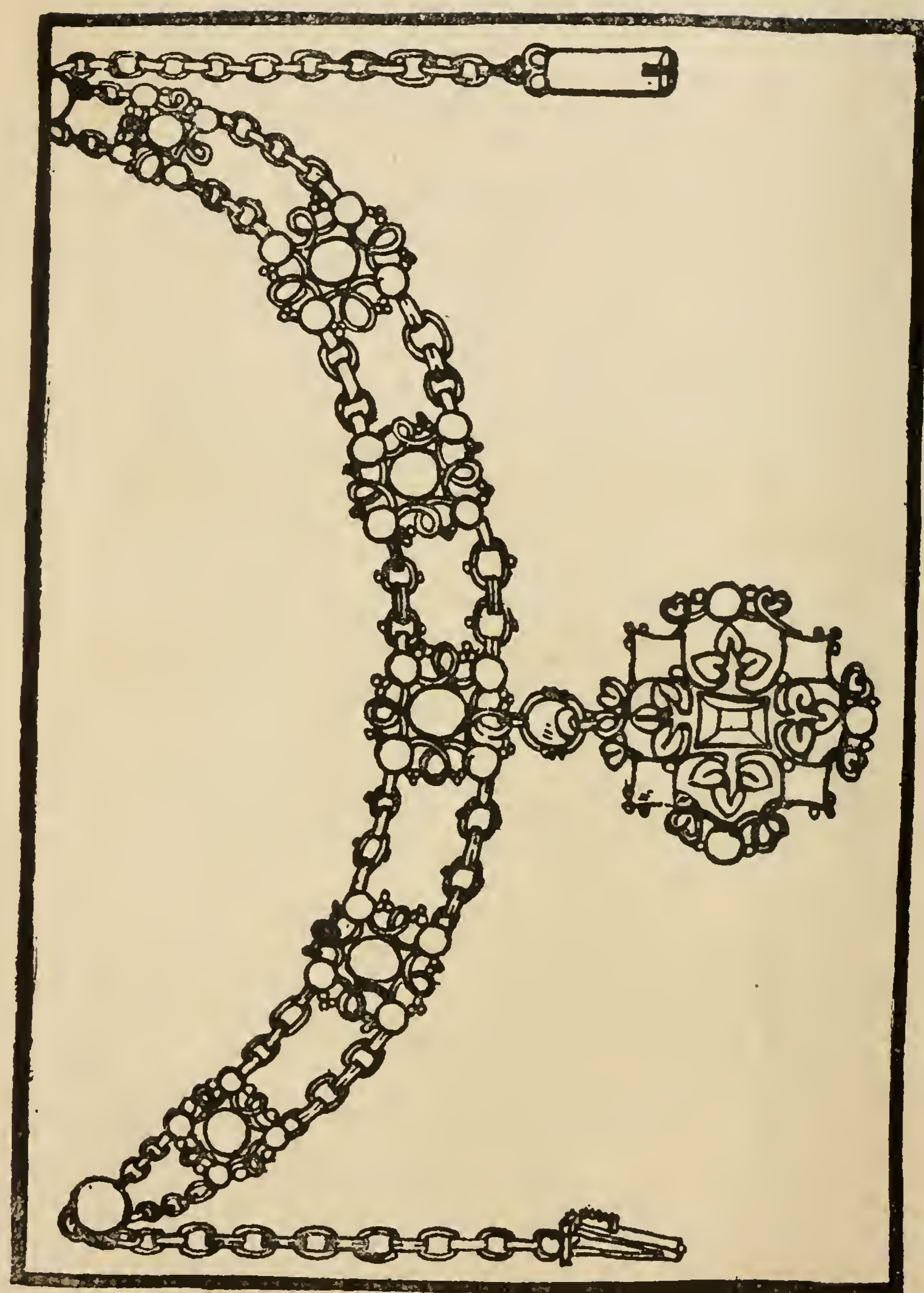


Fig. 58.

Digitized by Microsoft®

wire, oblong in section, with the edges rounded off with the file. This is to serve as the mandrel, and its size is regulated by the size of the links you desire. Wrap a strip of thin paper spirally round the mandrel, and secure it at each end with a few turns of binding-wire. Then take the wire, which may be simple or compound as described for rings, and fix the mandrel

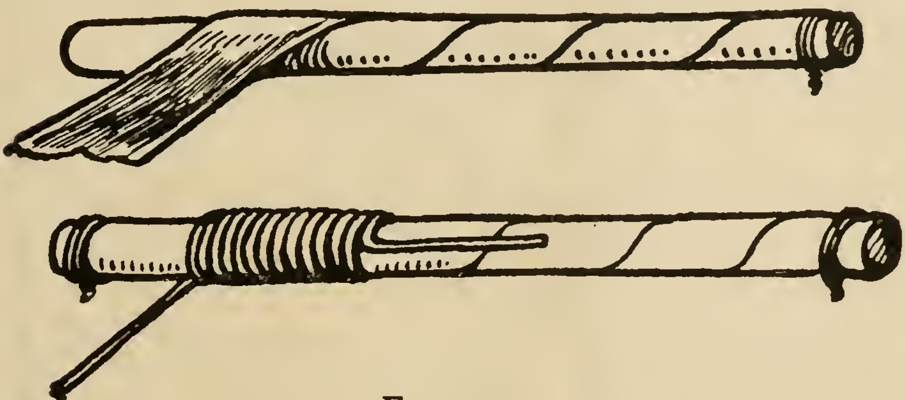


Fig. 59.

in a bench vise if the wire to be coiled is thick, or in a hand-vise if it be thin. Coil the wire spirally round the mandrel very closely and regularly until you have used as much wire as you require (fig. 59). Heat the whole with the blowpipe on the mop until the paper is charred away. You can now withdraw the mandrel from the coil, which would be impossible were

Digitized by Microsoft®

Necklaces the paper not used. With a jeweler's fret-saw cut off the links lengthwise down the spiral, keeping this cut as clean as possible. You can then coil on another mandrel of different, *e.g.* circular, section and slightly larger, another kind of wire, simple or compound, as may be necessary

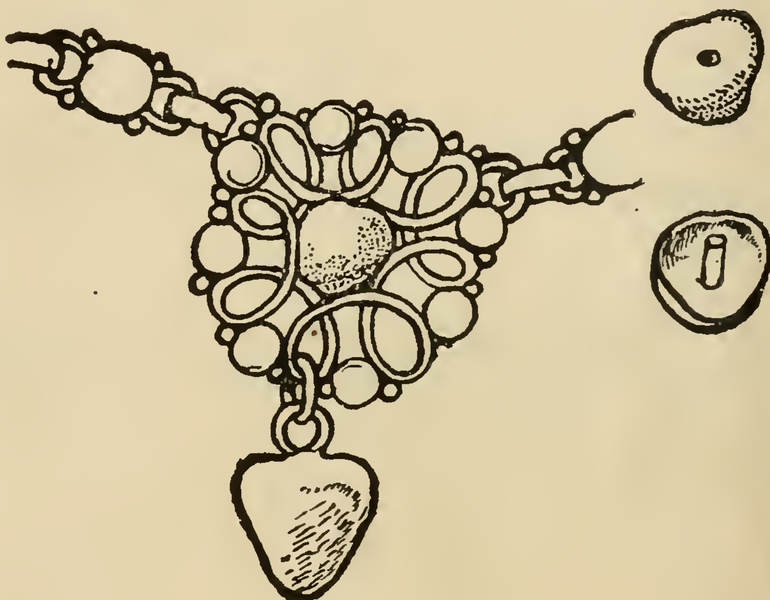


Fig. 60.

to give contrast to the first series, and saw these apart in like manner. You will then loop the two together in such lengths as you may need for connecting the various features of the necklace (fig. 62); and you must solder each link separately on the mop, taking care by

Digitized by Microsoft ®

using a small blowpipe and a small flame to confine the heat to the link you are soldering.

A pleasant effect can be produced by setting rough pearls or stones in a background of wire filigree (see fig. 60) or wreath-work of leaves and twigs (figs. 61 and 61A). It must be made as follows:—Take the stones you have selected, make either close or open settings, whichever you prefer, and set them round the metal circle. If you choose rough pearls or pearl blisters, take small pieces of silver, size 5 or 6, and dome them up with a rounded doming-punch, either on the lead-block or on the doming-block, to fit the backs of the pearls. If the pearls are irregular in shape, you must shape the metal backs with rounded punches on lead. Having fitted each pearl with a back, you can either file away the back until it can hardly be seen from the front,

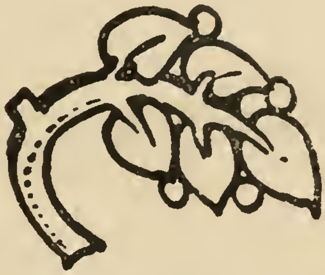


Fig. 61.

Fig. 61A.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Necklaces or you can keep the edge well to the front and file it into symmetrical shapes, or you can border it with twisted wire or

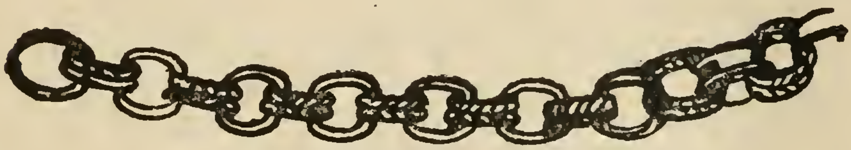


FIG. 62.

with wire bent into a rippled shape (see fig. 63) and soldered. Having made the backs for the pearls or the settings for the stones, arrange them round the metal circle—naturally keeping the best and largest stone or pearl for the center. Bend up some flattened wire into woven knots, as shown in the diagram, and solder the cups or settings on the wreath. Then make long interwoven loops of wire with circles or squares or groups of beads soldered at the crossings (fig. 64). This is not only to strengthen the work, but to give the necessary contrast of broad, simple surfaces, with the

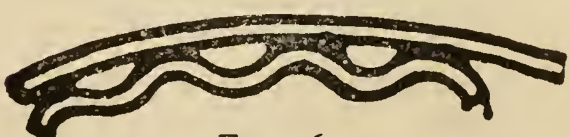


FIG. 63.

wreathing lines of the loops and backgrounds of the stones or pearls. Then make oval links, as described above, and loop the links all together.

Digitized by Microsoft®

You will need a pendant for the center. This can either be made out of a group of pearls or stones with a tiny panel of repoussé or enamel in the center, or it may be a small group of figure-work, if the student is advanced enough to do this.

You will now make the chain. This should consist of links, repeating the forms of the links in the central portion; these will afterward be joined together by small subsidiary links. A very pretty

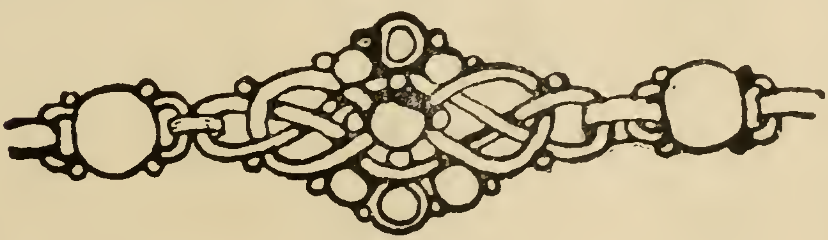


Fig. 64.

link is made with groups of grains or beads soldered on both sides of the link (see fig. 66). These, alternately with loops coiled up out of flattened wire, look very sparkling and pleasant when polished. These grained loops must be so arranged that the points are not likely to stick into the skin or to scratch when the necklace is worn. They must all lie flat, and the connecting loops must be smooth. The catch must next be made. Take a piece

Digitized by Microsoft®

 of brass wire 4 or 5 inches long, oblong in section $\frac{1}{8}$ in. broad, file the angles until it is nearly oval in section, or you may pass a piece of round wire through the rolling-mill. This is to serve as the mandrel (fig. 65). Bend a slip of No. 5 metal $\frac{1}{2}$ inch wide, so that it fits round the mandrel closely, and solder the join. On one end you will solder a bit of the same size metal and a ring on the center of this; at the other end you will file a notch half-way across the tube, and in this notch solder a narrow strip of silver, leaving a slot between the tube and

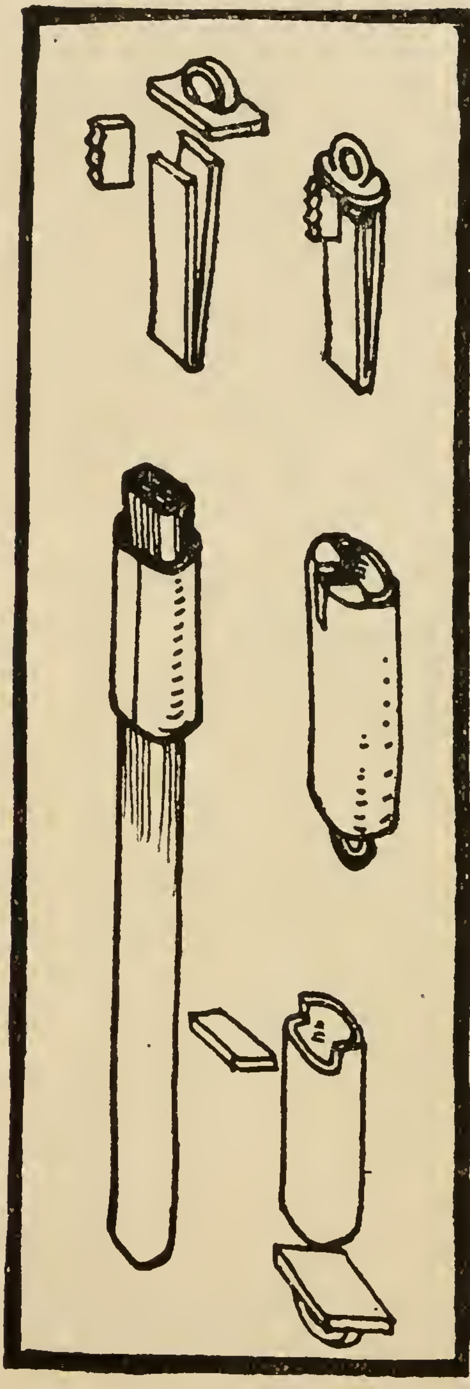


FIG. 65.

Digitized by Microsoft®

the edge of the strip; this is to take the tongue of the catch. In the center of the strip you will file out a notch dividing it entirely, and also the end of the tube for about $\frac{1}{8}$th of an inch. Then take a slip of silver as wide as the tube and half as thick, solder a plate of No. 5 metal at right angles on the end, then take another slip the same width as the first, and solder the two together at the opposite end to the right-angled plate. This is the tongue of the catch, and you must leave a space between the end plate and the end of this last slip or tongue, so that when it is pushed into its place the tongue may spring up and catch behind the slotted end plate of the body of the catch. A tiny slip of silver is now prepared which will just fit in the slot already filed in the body of the snap; this must be soldered on the end of the tongue. Now try if it will fit the catch, and if not, file the sides of the slot neatly and truly until the tongue slips in quite easily and springs up and holds the catch in its place and does not wriggle about. You will then file it up true and clean when, having linked one part on each end of the necklace and soldered the joins the whole is complete.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Necklaces

You will then boil out the whole necklace in dilute acid until it comes out quite white. Afterward polish the silver-work with the scratch-brush, using a little stale beer as a lubricant. Next wash it out in warm water, set the stones, and rub the settings over with the burnisher. At the same time you may burnish bits of the ornament, the loops, and particularly the flattened beads. Then repolish the whole with rouge to a brilliant surface.

You may wish to make a necklace entirely of silver. We will suppose it is to be a garland of roses. Now, for metal-work, it is important that all the natural forms you employ should be generalized; that is to say, while you can not study too closely the method of growth and the characteristic shapes of the leaves, buds, flowers, and fruit, you must avoid slavish imitation of accidental forms or the minute details of the growth. In your studies be as minute as you please, you can not be too painstaking; put in everything you see. But when you translate these studies into work, learn to leave out. The artist is known as much by what he omits as by what he puts in his work. He seeks forms typical of his subject and yet suitable to his material.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Now, for our immediate purpose a rose-bush is an assemblage of more or less symmetrically arranged masses of leaves, each leaf being a symmetrical group of five subsidiary leaves. Relieved against this mass of leaves we have large and small bossy forms, the roses and the buds. For our necklace the simplest way is to arrange the rose boughs in a series of panels of pierced repoussé, alternately square and roundish (figs. 66 and 67), the panels afterward connected by loops and beads. In these panels the roses and buds will be in high relief, the leaves and branches in lower and flatter relief, so that when the whole is polished the roses and buds will shine out brilliantly as jewels.

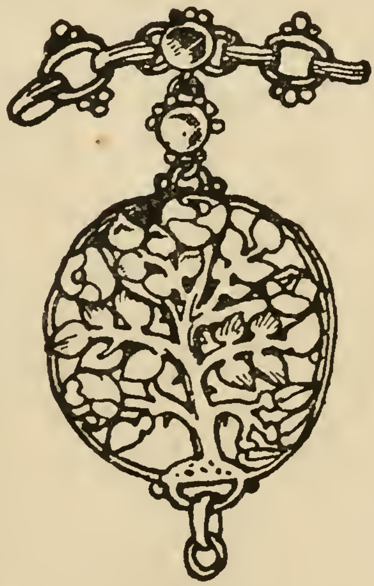


Fig. 66.

Take your circle, as before, and lay it on a bit of paper or on a sheet of wax rolled out. See how large you can make the panels, and how many you may require. Take a piece of silver, size 8, and outline the shapes of the panels, and sketch on it the main branches and mark the position of the

Digitized by Microsoft®

bosses of roses. Lay the metal face down on a thick piece of cork or cork-matting and punch out these roses from the back, and then punch out the smaller group of buds, distributing them carefully so as to get a sparkling effect. Then, after heating the pitch, lay the metal down after oiling the under surface. You will now outline the leaves and branches, keeping the arrangement as symmetrical and as simple as possible. Avoid curly leaves, coiling branches, wormlike roots, and squirming forms. Keep the drawing of the leaves clear and accurate and decided. When you have done this, then outline the roses and draw the petals on the bosses, either open or partly closed. Then with a sharp tracer outline the spaces to be pierced, which will probably be the whole of the ground, and then when you have done all you can to the repoussé, take the silver off the pitch, clean it and pickle it. Then lay each panel on its face and file away the ridges made by the outlining tracer, and soon the tiny

Fig. 67.

Digitized by Microsoft®

scraps of the ground will drop out and the ornament will show clear against the light. Next take a piece of silver for the back of the panel, size 4 or 5, a little larger all round than your panel, dome it up very slightly so that it may press against the backs of the twigs and leaves. When it fits scrape the surface all over and tie the two securely together; use plenty of borax between the joints, tack the back and front together in two or three places round the edge and in the center. When the solder has run, press the joints closely together wherever the metal has been warped by the heat, or wherever the joint may have been imperfectly fitted or secured. Then clean the whole in acid and recharge with borax and with enough but not too much solder, and see that the solder flushes well under and into all the joins. You can then pierce the ground out with a drill and fret-saw. Do not saw too closely to the ornament, leave a narrow fillet to be filed away afterward, and before cutting away the waste metal round the edge coil up some rings out of 14 wire and solder them on the back plate in contact with the panel where they are required. If these rings are simply soldered

Digitized by Microsoft®

Necklaces against the panel they are apt to pull off after a certain amount of wear. To loop these panels up together, you will require loops or links which carry out the design of the main panels. These may be either roses with a few leaves, or boughs twined up into closely knit bosses.

When the circlet is completed, you will make the catch, and the whole, after pickling, will be ready to be stoned and polished. If you wish to make a pendant for this necklace, it must not merely be an elaborated panel, but should have some central point of interest. You may either read "The Romaunt of the Rose" and take thence whatever suggestion most appeals to you, or you may prefer to put a nightingale singing in the middle of a bower of leaves (fig. 68). The latter will be the least difficult, as the former supposes a knowledge of the figure,

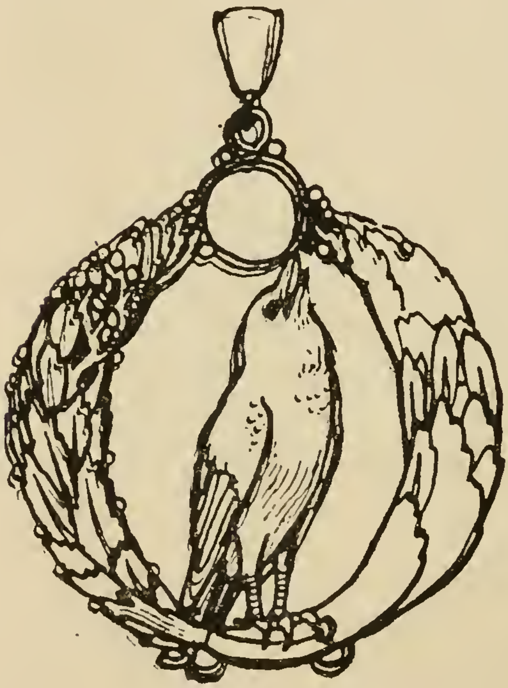


Fig. 68.

Digitized by Microsoft®

though you might make a little gateway with towers to the garden of the Rose, which could be made very interesting.

To Make the Nightingale.—First go and watch one singing. There are happily numberless woods and copses near London in which the nightingale may be heard and seen at almost any time of the day. Take an opera-glass and find the spot most frequented by the birds and least frequented by humans; sit motionless and watch them while they sing. If you have not seen one before, you will never forget the first sight of the little brown-backed, gray-breasted bird against the sky and leaves, with head thrown back and his throat throbbing in an ecstasy of song. Make as many sketches as you can, and when you get home take a piece of silver, size 8 —of fine silver if you are going to enamel, or standard if left from the tool, and it must be a good deal larger than the size you propose to make the bird—anneal it, sketch the outline the reverse way, and with a rounded doming-punch boss out the metal as much as you can on the cork pad. Then fasten the same domed punch in the vise, and after again annealing, take a boxwood or horn mallet and beat

Digitized by Microsoft®

the metal still further round, until the rough relief is as high as the thickness through the body of the bird. Reanneal the metal, lay it on the pitch, and shape the bird carefully with chasing and repoussé tools, driving the metal gradually round behind the back of the bird, taking care that you do not crack it in the process. You will find it possible to get the body quite in the round save for a narrow opening at the back. When you have modeled the surface as you wish, cut away the ground and solder a piece of metal over the opening, taking care, if there be no other escape for the air, to drill a small hole where it will least be seen. Then you will take another piece of metal, size 6, or a little less, and make the bower of leaves or branches within which the bird is to be set. You must keep it wreath-like and clear and simple in outline without any spikiness or too great irregularity of surface. It should be made double, the pattern on the back being developed from that on the face. The two can then be filed and fitted together, and pickled and soldered.

When the wreath is complete you can tie the bird in its place and solder it to the

Digitized by Microsoft®

bough you have prepared for it. When the work is clean you can then take a rounded graver and a cement-stick, and after fastening the bird and wreath on the wax, you can sharpen up the modeling of the leaves, cut away superfluous solder, and make the whole clean and workmanlike. The wreath can be hung to the necklace by one or two chains or loops. You will probably find that six loops of flat wire enriched with twist soldered round alternate links, with a rose boss in the center of the six links, will be sufficient (fig. 69). The loops must be fairly broad and not too long, or the pendant will twist about and will not hang truly. Then loop the whole necklace temporarily together to see the effect. It should hang in one even curve, and any irregularity must be corrected by lengthening or shortening links wherever necessary. You will probably find that a second drop or subordinate pendant is needed beneath the bird. Make a pear-shaped group of leaves and roses in two halves (fig. 70),

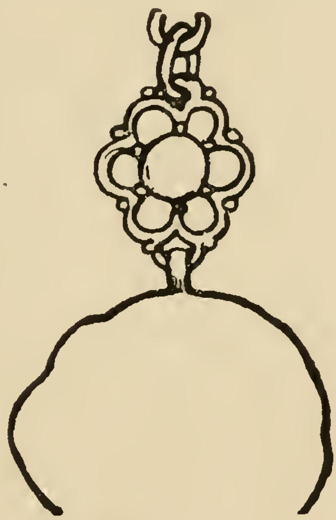


Fig. 69.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Necklaces solder them together with a loop at the top, and hang this by means of three or five links to the wreath.

When it all seems as complete as you can make it, put it all in the pickle and leave it till quite white and clean. Stone it carefully and polish on the lathe with the scratch-brush and stale beer. Then wash clean with soap-suds and hot water, and dry it in the sawdust. It will look staring and unpleasantly white and bright.


Fig. 70.

This defect can be removed by brushing it over with a hot solution of ammonia sulfid in water. Take care that it does not get into the setting or the effect of the stone may be entirely spoilt. When the surface gets as dark as you wish, wash it clean in hot water, and polish it by hand with a wash-leather and a little rouge.

CHAPTER XV

Brooches—Suggestions for Design—Mounting—The Making of Compound Twists—The Joint and Catch

Brooches Brooches should be kept rather small, and be designed on the same principles as

Digitized by Microsoft®

pendants. The back, however, should always be smooth, and if possible somewhat concave. We will suppose you have a moonstone which you wish to set. Choose some poetical subject suggested by the stone. If I were doing it I should probably reason in this way:—"The moonstone suggests Diana. Her symbol is a stag. The subject shall be a running stag bearing the moon in his antlers." But this is only one way of looking at the subject; the student must choose his own. What is personal to one may be an affectation in another, and affected art is bad art.

Suppose, however, that you choose to do a stag. Make a drawing of a stag running, or standing sidewise with his head thrown back or turned toward the spectator. We will suppose you make him standing with his head and antlers thrown back. You can either set the stone behind the antlers, like a moon rising behind trees, or you can use the antlers as part of a setting. Having made the drawing of the stag as you wish, take a piece of silver of suitable size and gage, 8 or 10 if for high relief, 6 or 7 if for lower relief. Fit your design within some simple set form, a circle, an oval, or square, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

Brooches

beat the stag out in relief. Make the setting for the stone and fit it into its place carefully, and if the stone is to be set in the background, arrange the horns so that they will take the setting of the stone, and see that the stone is placed nicely in relation to the rest of the enclosing space. When the repoussé is done, boil it clean, and if the ground is to be pierced, make a back as described for the silver necklace. If it is not pierced, dome slightly a piece of No. 5 silver sufficiently large to leave a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch margin all round. After the back and front are tacked together, drill a couple of small holes, one at each end of the horizontal diameter a little within the places for the joint and catch. This is to let the air escape, otherwise the imprisoned air expands, and either bursts the back off, or distorts the front by bulging it out in its weakest place.

You will now require a border. Take a round wire, size 12, pass it through the flattening-roller or hammer it into a ribbon, or draw a piece of round wire through a draw-plate with oblong holes. Take a length of smaller wire, about 4 in the metal gage, double it and twist up tightly from right to left; twist another piece

Digitized by Microsoft®

from left to right. Take two lengths of copper wire, the size of the silver wire before it was flattened, and tie one on each side of the silver ribbon with iron binding-wire. Then fix one end of this compound wire in the vise and one end in a hand-vise or a pair of slides, and twist the whole until the spiral is as close as you wish it. You can then remove the copper wires and replace with the silver twists, and after tying them in their place, you can solder them here and there, using small paillons and taking care not to fill up the twists with solder. Now boil, clean, and solder it round your panel as a frame.

Instead of doing this you can make a circle of small stars, either in repoussé round the panel, or you can make a number of groups of grains and solder them round. The latter has the more sparkling effect, but it takes much longer to do. When the border is made, file the surplus metal from the back and round the edge, and it will be ready to receive the joint or catch. Take a piece of thick, half-round wire and bend it into the shape of a C with a long tail (C_); then file the bottom of the tail flat, and afterward solder it in position on the brooch near,

Digitized by Microsoft®

but not actually on the edge. Next you must make the hinge for the pin. Take a piece of fine tube, about size 12 in the metal gage, and solder a short length, about $\frac{3}{8}$th inch long, on a slip of No. 5, a little larger each way (fig. 71). Then take a piece of stout silver wire and run the end up into a good-sized bead (fig. 72). Flatten the bead and file it into shape as shown. Upon the flat side of this you will solder another and shorter length of tube (fig. 73). File out of the center of the first

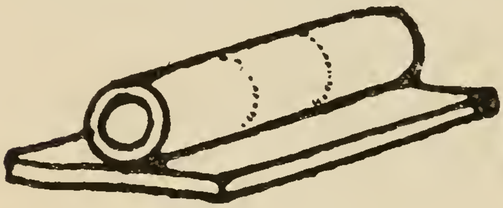


Fig. 71.

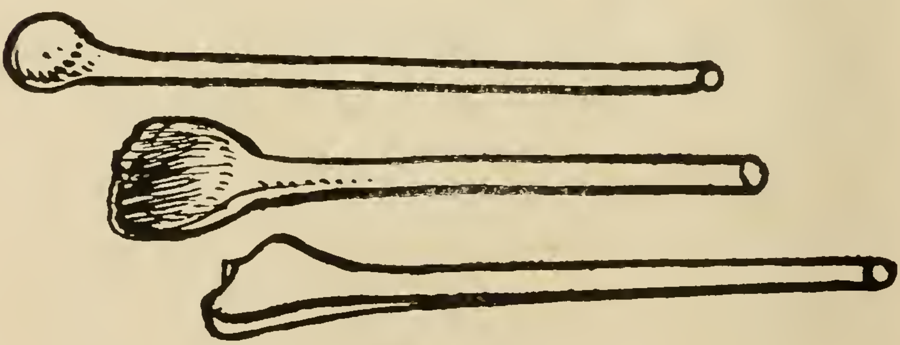


Fig. 72.

tube a space wide enough to take the tube on the end of the pin (see fig. 73a). When the two fit perfectly, take another piece of No. 5 and solder it at one side

Digitized by Microsoft®

of the bottom joint (see fig. 73A) so that the two lengths of tube are in the angle

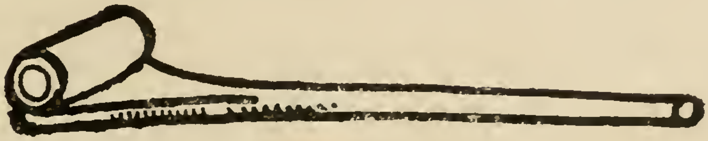


FIG. 73.

of an L. The last piece helps to make the spring of the pin. The flat end of the pin catches against this; the pin being bent down under the catch is held in place by the elasticity of the metal (fig. 74). Pins

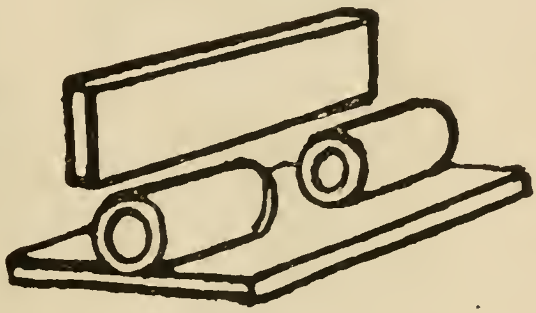


FIG. 73A.

made of 9-carat gold are very much better than silver pins, they are harder, and have more spring in them. The joint, when filed up true and clean, can be soldered in place. The whole can now be boiled

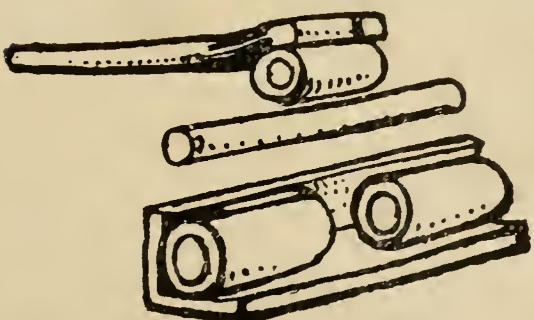


FIG. 74.

out and scratch-brushed, and the stone set. If you have a close setting, it is best to

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Brooches back the stone with a piece of white foil to give it greater brilliancy. Another way of setting stones in the background of any panel is to beat out a hollow from the back into which the stone exactly fits. You will then pierce out all of this except a narrow piece just sufficient to retain the stone firmly. You will then turn up

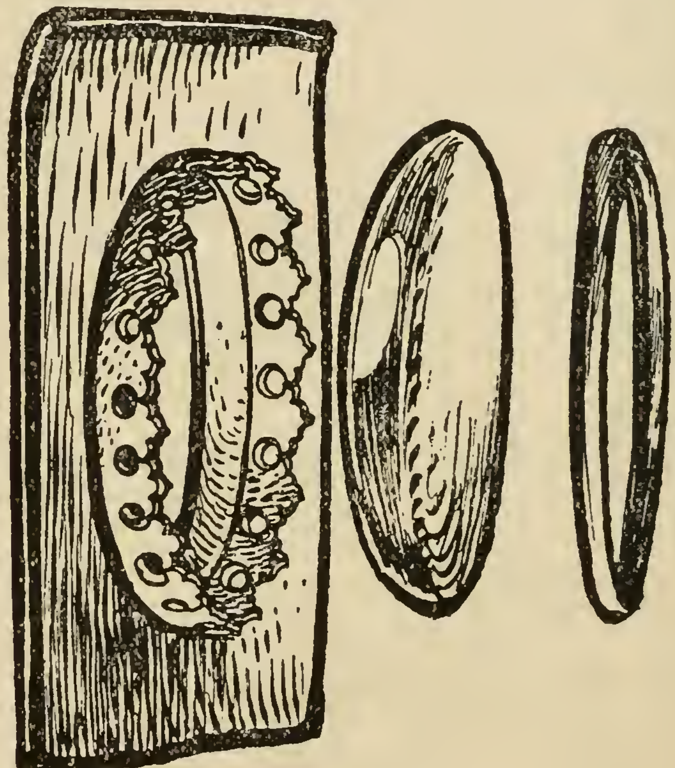


FIG. 75.

a narrow setting of thin silver and file the edge either wavy or scalloped or serrated, and solder it in behind as shown (fig. 75). This forms a subsidiary setting,

Digitized by Microsoft®

and when all is complete the stone can be dropped into its place and a piece of round wire, bent to the curve of the setting, can then be fitted in behind the stone, and the wavy, scalloped, or serrated edges of the setting bent over the wire and burnished until the stone is set quite firmly. The advantage of this is, that the work on the background can be carried round the setting without any of the awkward joins which are almost impossible to avoid when a separate setting is soldered in or upon the ground. At the same time you must not make the work look as if a hole had been made in the metal and a stone dropped casually in. The setting must be frankly made to look like a setting, and the foliage or branches in the background must be made to lead up to the setting as the culminating point of the whole jewel. Brooches

CHAPTER XVI

Pendants—Things to be Avoided—Suggestions for Design—The Use of Enamel—Setting the Enamel—The Hoop for the Pendant—Polishing

Pendants

PENDANTS should not be large or sprawling. Points, projections, and roughnesses should be avoided. The lines of the

Digitized by Microsoft®

Pendants ornament should tend toward the center or to some point of interest within the outline. The back should be made interesting as well as the front. My method of design is to make each jewel enshrine some story or symbol. I try to make the ornament allusive to the gem, to its legendary history, to its qualities, or to the ideas suggested by it. For example, you take an aqua-marine; the name itself, no less than the color, at once suggests things of the sea. Any other method is permissible if the student is sincere. He must follow whatever inspiration is given him at all costs, and in spite of everything. The design now suggested is merely a peg on which to hang the technical description. Lay your stone or stones on a bit of silver, and draw fishes swimming spirally to or from the stone as a center; make studies of fish, avoiding grotesque or extraordinary forms; pay great attention to the bony structure of the head and the set of the fins. Look at any Japanese drawings of fish you can get hold of, and follow their methods.

After you have made the setting for the stone, draw the fish on the silver, boss the whole well out from the back, arrange a

Digitized by Microsoft®

hollow for the setting of the stone and fairly deep hollows between the fish to be filled with enamel, and let the outlines of the fish be fairly undercut to give good hold for the enamel. Put a range of spiral curls rather high in relief all round to make a frame, and let the tip of the spirals lip over the bodies of the fish so that they are encircled by waves (fig. 76). When the repoussé is finished, you must arrange for the back. You can have it all in enamel like a sea, or you can put a silver ship with sails on enamel waves.

Fig. 76.

A modern sailing ship is still as beautiful a thing as men make nowadays, and you should make a careful drawing of one. Take care that it fills the panel well, and raise it and chase it until it is as complete as you can make it. If you intend to put an enamel sea, you must prepare a sunken ground wherever

Digitized by Microsoft®

Pendants the enamel is to come, and the edges of the ground must be undercut, so that the silver itself frames the enamel. Nothing looks worse than enamel melting away into modeled work without a line to frame it and keep it in its proper place in the composition. Enamel is not a kind of paint which can be applied anywhere as a means of hiding inferior work; it must be treated as a precious material, and employed in small quantities. The modern tendency to cover large surface with enamel vulgarizes the material, making it look like so much colored varnish, and this without any corresponding advantage. You will then clean the metal by boiling out in acid, and wherever the enamel comes, the ground and the back of the metal also is to be scraped quite clean and bright all over.

Choose two or three good rich enamels, ranging from dark to pale sea-green, and grind it up fairly fine, and wash it well till all milkiness disappears; then paint the back of each plate, wherever there is to be enamel in front, with gum tragacanth and water, and dust the backing (see chapter on Enamel Work) all over. Shake off the surplus, and leave to dry. Then take the ground greens, add a tiny drop

Digitized by Microsoft®

of gum to each mixture, fill in the spaces left for the sea, shading the greens from dark at the edge to light at the center, making the lightest green a little darker than the central stone, because everything must lead up to that. Then fire carefully in the muffle until the enamel flows smooth and shining, remove from the furnace, and cool slowly in a sand bath or in front of the stove.

When cool, you can remove any irregularities of surface with a corundum file and water. If necessary, re-fire to get all smooth and bright. You will now have to arrange the fitting of the two together. Take a piece of 10 silver, a little larger than the outline of the pendant, mark the outline all round with a point, leaving projections where loops come, then saw out the center leaving only a band $\frac{1}{8}$th inch wide. Cut a narrow band of No. 5 silver, bend it round the outline, and when it fits solder the ends together, and solder the whole to the plate you have sawed out, so that you have, as it were, a skeleton setting. Treat the other side in a similar way. File the setting into a wave-like line, and, after soldering two strong loops to the central plate, file away

Digitized by Microsoft®

 the surplus metal, and make the whole setting smooth to the touch and pleasant to look at. Take a fine drill, and, fixing the front in place, drill a hole here and there through the setting and the relief. Do this with the back also. Make taper pins of silver wire to fit the holes, and, after rubbing the edges of the setting over with a burnisher, insert the pins and press them firmly home. Cut them off close to the setting, and take a small graining-tool (fig. 77) or a hollow-headed punch, the hollow of which is not larger than the head of the pin, grain the point over with a circular movement until the rough head of the pin is well rounded. This fixes the pin firmly in its place. You will now need to make the loop, and a little knop to act as a spreader for the suspending chains. You may make the knop to sug-

Fig. 77.

Digitized by Microsoft®

gest the air. Draw a sea-gull with outstretched downward drooping wings. You can see them any day about the bridges on the Thames. Beat it up from a bit of 7 or 8 silver, underneath you can place a band of curling waves. The ground can either be cut away or it can be enamelled in different blues. If enamel is used, the silver must be fine silver; and you must solder on the back with 18-carat gold solder—other solder is apt to be destroyed in the firing.

If you prefer the pierced ground, cut it away with a metal saw, and solder the bird on a back of No. 5 thickness. Take care that the joins are all well flushed up with solder. Provide for suspension loops, coiled rings for the bottom, and a loop like this for the top loop, all soldered on the back plate. Cut the ground away again and file up the whole true, and clean and stone ready for polishing. The loop is made of a thick piece of metal, No. 8 or 10, shaped as in fig. 78A. Take a rounded doming-punch and hollow it well out from the back (fig. 78B). Take a pair of round-nosed pliers and bend it as in fig. 78C, and solder the ends together. Have ready the coiled

Digitized by Microsoft®

Pendants rings, and solder them to the loop (see fig. 78D), and fix a grain between the two for the sake of strength no less than for appearance. Make chain loops as before described, and beat up four little bosses. They may be shells or little coiled fishes; make them double, solder them together, solder loops top and bottom, and then loop the whole up temporarily to see how it hangs. After correcting any inequalities, solder all the chains together, then polish with the scratch-brush and beer, and afterward finish with rouge. The enamel portion can be polished with putty powder and a little water.

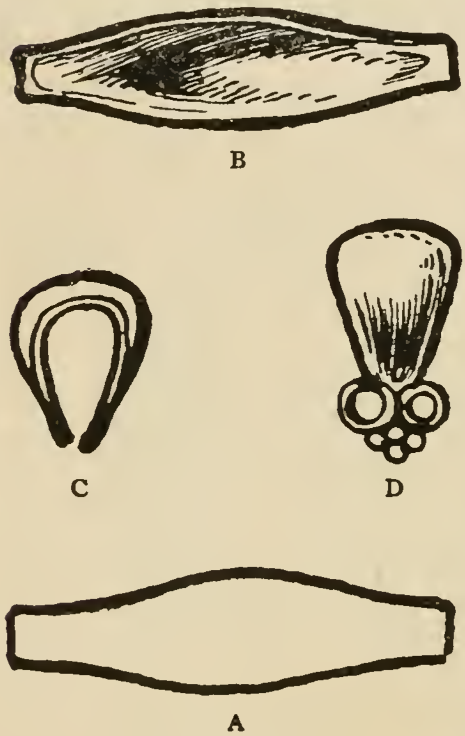


Fig. 78.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XVII

Hair Ornaments and Combs—Silver Hairpin—The Skeleton Sphere—Hardening the Pin—A Comb in Silver—How to make the Prongs—The Joint—The Head of the Comb—Arranging the Stones—The Groups of Leaves—The Pin for the Hinge—Setting the Pearls—How to Drill Pearls

Hair Ornaments and Combs

Combs and other ornaments for the hair must be very light, and free from sharp angles or roughnesses. The required lightness is obtained either by using very thin metal, or by building up the design out of wire or filigree.

Let us take the simplest first, and make a long pin for the hair.

Take a rounded iron doming-punch and beat out two half-domes out of No. 2 or 3 silver, file the edges level, and solder the two halves together to make a complete ball. Leave a hole $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch wide in the center of one of the half-domes and a smaller hole opposite this and fill it with pitch. Then warm the pitch-block, and wet the silver ball and press it into the pitch; then take a fine tracer and trace spiral lines round the dome, taking care not to drive the punch in too deeply; then

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 79.

with other punches chase the surface into rounded spiral ribs, either with a narrow rib between each pair, or simply a series of rounded spirals. Next take twisted wire, the smallest size you can get, and solder it into the hollows between the ribs.

This done, cut a piece of stout silver wire 6 inches long and file it into a taper pin; solder the chased ball on the top of this pin so that the end of the pin projects very slightly. Next take two rings of wire, about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter, solder the two together crosswise, and solder a small bead at the top. Then solder this on the top of a tiny piece of round wire like a column, and put a grain of silver in each angle (see fig. 80); then solder a tiny half-dome of the silver on

Digitized by Microsoft®

the top of the large ball and the skeleton ball and pillar on the top of this again.

Where the pillar meets the half dome (fig. 81) you must put a ring of fine wire to cover the joint and make a neat finish. Now take a piece of silver wire and coil it on a mandrel, ½ inch in diameter, about a dozen times.

Fig. 80.

Saw the rings apart and solder two together as before described. At the junctions you will solder two small rings of flat wire, just large enough to let the pin pass through both at the top and the bottom. Cut the remaining rings in half, and solder a half-ring in each angle. Repeat this until you have a skeleton sphere. It is better to finish soldering at the top of the sphere before proceeding to the other pole; and when soldering the other ends, it is better to cover the part already soldered with loam and water, or whiting and water; this will prevent the solder from melting and the rings from falling to pieces. The skeleton sphere can now be strengthened by a row of tiny half-domes and groups of six grains alternately; the

Fig. 81.

Digitized by Microsoft®

width of each half-dome and flower being exactly the width apart of the ribs. Solder one to the center of each rib, and let all the flowers and small half-domes be soldered to each other. Next file away the crossing-wires within the top and bottom rings, and slip the completed ball into its place on the pin; find the point at which it looks best, and there solder a collar of wire on the pin. You will now solder the skeleton sphere in its place, beginning at the top. Protect the half not being soldered with loam or whiting. When the upper join is made, clean away the loam or whiting and boil the metal clean and white in pickle. Scrape the joint bright, and slip another ring on the pin to make a collar underneath the spheres. Before proceeding to solder, make two stout rings $\frac{1}{8}$ inch inside measure, and tie them opposite each other where the pin and sphere meet. Then protect the rest of the work with loam or whiting as before, and finish soldering. Next make six small hollow spheres of No. 2 metal, and having coiled up a number of small rings of fine wire or fine twist, have ready a number of small beads of silver, and solder the rings round the outsides of the balls, and put a grain in

Digitized by Microsoft®

every alternate circle. Then solder a ring on the top of each ball, and make six lengths of fine chain as described for necklaces, or simply of circles of wire, alternate twist and plain, large and small, and loop three balls on each loop as shown in fig. 79. Next hammer the pin carefully on a bent stake to make it hard and springy. The whole can now be cleaned and polished.

To Make a Comb.—Take a strip of silver, size 10 ordinary gage, and mark out a simple three- or four-

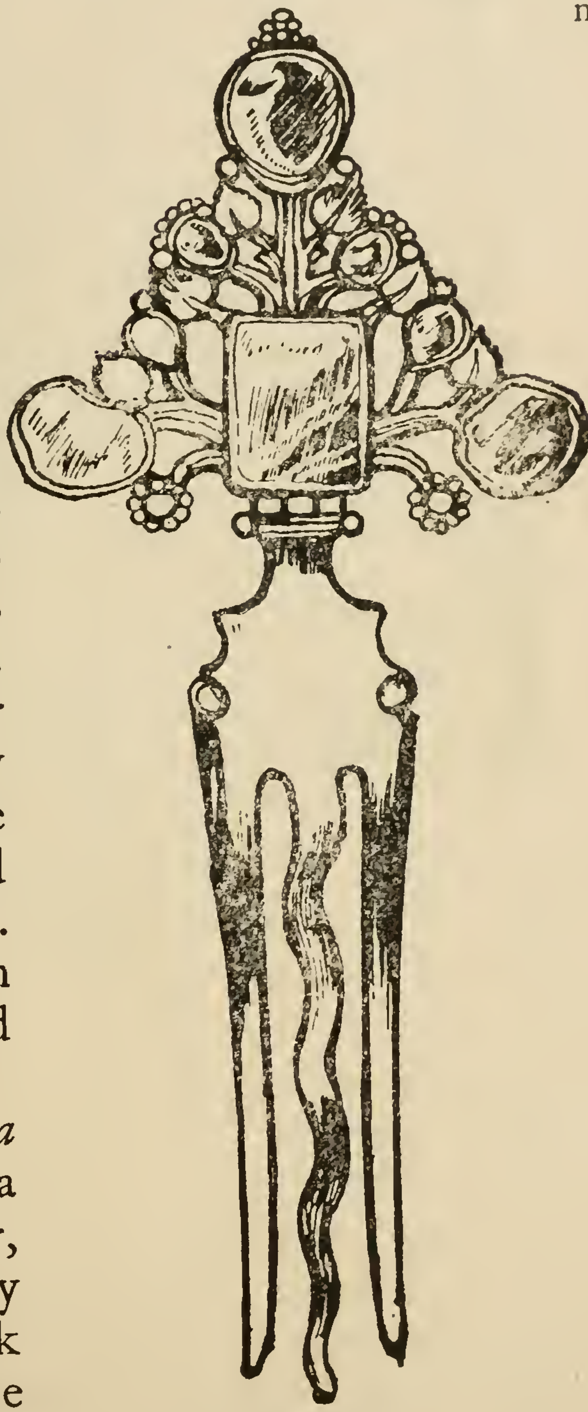


Fig. 82.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hair Ornaments and Combs

pronged comb, as in the lower portion of fig. 82. Leave a space of at least three-quarters of an inch before you begin the prongs. Then saw out the prongs and file up the edges clean and smooth. Draw a piece of fine tube, as described before, about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch in diameter, and solder a length along the back of these prongs as at A in fig. 83.

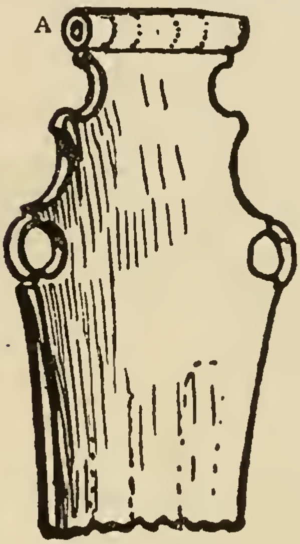


Fig. 83.

You will now require to make the top of the comb. The best way is to get a few clear stones and arrange them into a pleasant pattern, with different shaped bosses of metal and wreaths of filigree (fig. 84). This was an arrangement of aqua-marines and pearls. The pearls should be of irregular shapes, and drilled so that they may be mounted as roses. First make settings for the aqua-marines, and solder them on a back-plate hammered up into a domical section. Then make strong twigs of thick wire hammered taper and soldered together in a simple interlacing pattern embracing the settings. The pattern must not be too regular,

Digitized by Microsoft®

nor must the stones be of equal size or color.

When the main stems are soundly

Fig. 84.

soldered, take silver wire and make leaves as before described, and solder them to-

Digitized by Microsoft®

gether in groups of five, with grains between each pair of leaves. Then make a calyx or skeleton setting for each of the pearl roses, and solder a calyx on the tip of each principal twig, leaving enough of the twig to pass through the pearl and be riveted or grained over when the pearl is fixed. This will be done when all the soldering, cleaning, and polishing has been completed. Having fixed the position of the roses, you can now arrange the groups of leaves in order on the stem, and solder them, using loam or whiting to protect the joints. The center line of each leaf should be tangential to the main curve (fig. 85).


Fig. 85.

When all the leaves have been soldered on you will need to strengthen the bottom plate both for the attachment of the hinge and to bind up the settings for the stones into a connected whole. Take a piece of stout sheet-silver shaped as at B in fig. 78, and, having filed it up smooth, tie it firmly with wire, or strong clips of bent iron

Digitized by Microsoft®

wire, to the body of the comb. When the solder has flushed well in and around every joint boil the work clean in acid, and then file a groove with a rounded file along the bottom edge of the projecting tongue, and solder a tube of the same size as before into the groove; file spaces into each tube to receive the projections in the other. There should be not less than five joints—three above and two below (fig. 86). This

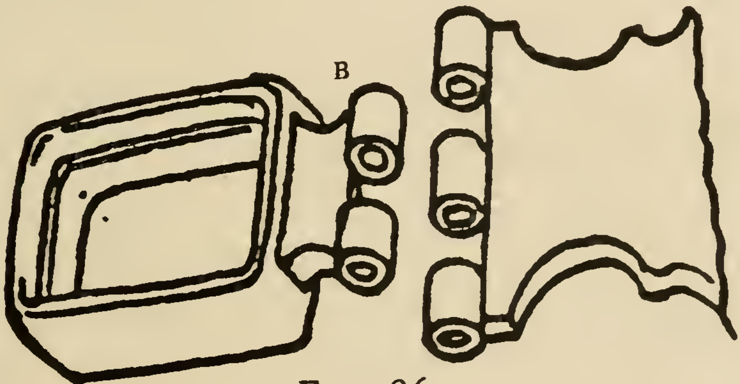


Fig. 86.

way of making the hinge is an easy one, but it is not the best, because it is almost impossible to file the joints of the hinge perfectly true and square without the joint tool. If you wish to spend more time on the work you can make the hinge in short lengths, as described for the casket hinge, and then, having slipped all the parts of the joint on a brass pin filed to fit, tie the head and the tang of the comb to-

Digitized by Microsoft®

gether with the hinge between; then just tack the tubes—three to the tang and two to the head—with a tiny panel of solder to each; do not flush the solder or you will spoil the whole hinge by running the solder into the joints. As a precaution you should paint the inside of the tubes and the faces of the joints with a little rouge and water. When the parts are tacked, take the work apart and solder it all firmly.

Next make two hollow balls, and solder one to the end of a pin (fig. 87) which exactly fits the hinge, and, having drilled the other ball,

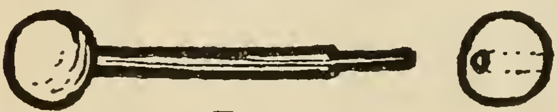


Fig. 87.

file a shoulder on the other end of the pin just where it comes through the hinge. When the comb is finally fitted together the pin will be securely riveted over the ball.

When the whole is stoned with Water of Ayr stone and has been polished, you may set the stones as before described. In fixing the pearls you will need to use shellac to cement them to their settings. Take a stick of shellac, and after heating one end in the gas flame, draw it out into a long thread. Then heat the setting of

Digitized by Microsoft®

each stone, and wind a little of this thread of shellac round it. Warm the pearl, and run a little of the shellac in the hole; then, holding the setting and the pearl, one in each hand, over the flame, slip the pearl over the peg while the cement is liquid; when it is cold you can rivet the peg very carefully. If the pearls have not been drilled, you must drill them. To do this you will need a holder. It

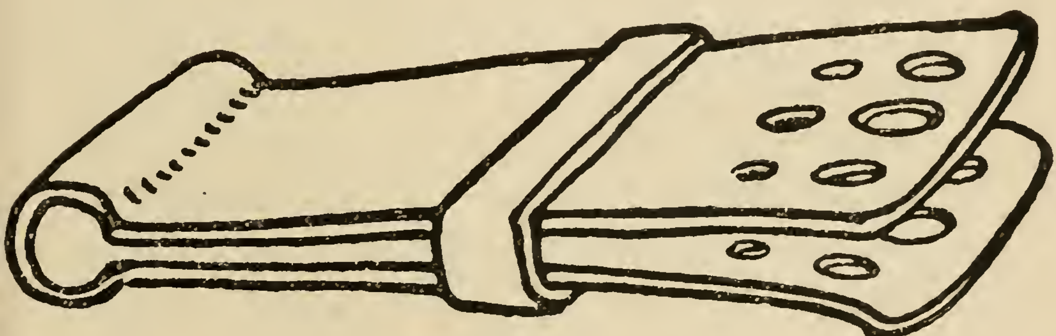


Fig. 88.

consists of a strip of brass bent as in fig. 88 and fixed in a hand-vise; a graduated series of holes is drilled through the two contiguous halves, the inner edges of the holes are then slightly countersunk to prevent injury to the pearl, a slip collar is made, and the instrument is complete.

Put the pearl you wish to drill in the pair of holes that most nearly fits it, slip the collar until the pearl is firmly held.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hair Ornaments and Combs

You can now drill the hole without danger of injuring the pearl or your own fingers. There is no need to drill the pearl right through, a well-made peg well cemented will hold quite well, even if it only goes half-way into the pearl. If the pearl is specially valuable the peg may be keyed on. This is done by drilling a hole and making it larger at the bottom than at the top. The peg used is made of two half-round wires put together and soldered to the cap, the two ends are then slightly filed away, and a very tiny wedge of metal inserted; the peg is then cemented and pressed into the hole. The pressure on the wedge drives the two halves of wire outward and the peg can not be withdrawn. It can only be drilled out. Care is needed in doing this or the pearl may be split.

CHAPTER XVIII

Bracelets—The Hammered Bracelet—The Hinge Bracelet—The Band—The Snap—The Hinge—Fitting the Joints—The Flexible Bracelet—Cleaning and Burnishing

Bracelets

BRACELET sizes range from 6¼ to 7 inches in circumference.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Take a short length of thick silver wire about $\frac{3}{16}$th inch in diameter, anneal it, and flatten it out to a square section in the center and fan-shaped and feather-edged at the ends (fig. 89).

When you have stretched it out to at least two inches longer than the circumference required, take a sharp chisel and divide the fan-shaped ends as shown in

Fig. 89.

the diagram. Anneal the metal thoroughly, next open out the strips of metal and hammer them into a more regular taper. Do this to both sides, and anneal again. Mark out the right lengths of the bracelet, and bend the ends to a sharp angle, so that the tips of the ends will just reach the extremities of this line. Solder on each bend a short piece of silver the

Digitized by Microsoft®

Bracelets

thickness of the bracelet, making the band of the bracelet just the right length, and file up the ends true and clean. With a pair of smooth, round-nosed pliers bend up the taper twigs into simple scrolls (fig. 90) and connect them with each other by means of large beads made as before described, and flattened with the

Fig. 90.

hammer on the square bench stake. When this has been done to both sides, bend the band round with two pairs of strong pliers into the shape of a flattened circle. To avoid marking the metal you must make thin copper or brass shields to slip over the jaws of the pliers. When the curve is perfect, and the ends butt cleanly together, take a small jewel, say a chryso-

Digitized by Microsoft®

prase, an opal, or a garnet. Make a box setting for it, and solder the setting on one side of the band, so that one-half of the setting will be on the band, the other half standing free. This will cover the junction of the ends and yet give the metal play, so that it can be slipped over the hand without difficulty (fig. 91). The outside of the bracelet may be hammered into a rounded or softly beveled section,

FIG. 91.

and the surface afterward decorated with chasing-tools. This work will, of course, be done upon pitch. The inside of the bracelet must be scraped and filed clean and smooth and rounded, and all roughnesses removed from every part of the work with the Water of Ayr stone. It is now ready for whitening, stoning, and polishing. This done, the stone can be set and the final polishing given. When,

Digitized by Microsoft®

unless you wish to oxidize the work, which can be done as described elsewhere, the whole is finished.

To Make a Hinged Bracelet.—Cut an ellipse of the size required out of stout sheet brass (fig. 92). This is to serve as a guide when bending the band of the bracelet. Take two lengths of square silver wire and make two ovals to fit

Fig. 92.

closely over the brass pattern. Solder the two ends together, and cut a narrow slip of No. 6 or 8 sheet-silver as broad as you wish to make the band. This can be decorated in repoussé with very simple patterns of symmetrically arranged dots or a simple running pattern.

Bend the band to fit the outside of the oval rings; tie the band and the rings

Digitized by Microsoft®

firmly together as in the diagram (fig. 93), and solder the whole soundly together. This makes the band of the bracelet. You have now to make the hinge and snap.

To Make the Hinge or Joint.—Draw a length of thin silver tube as wide as the thickness of the bracelet edge, and another length just to fit inside this tube. Drill a hole through the edge wires of the

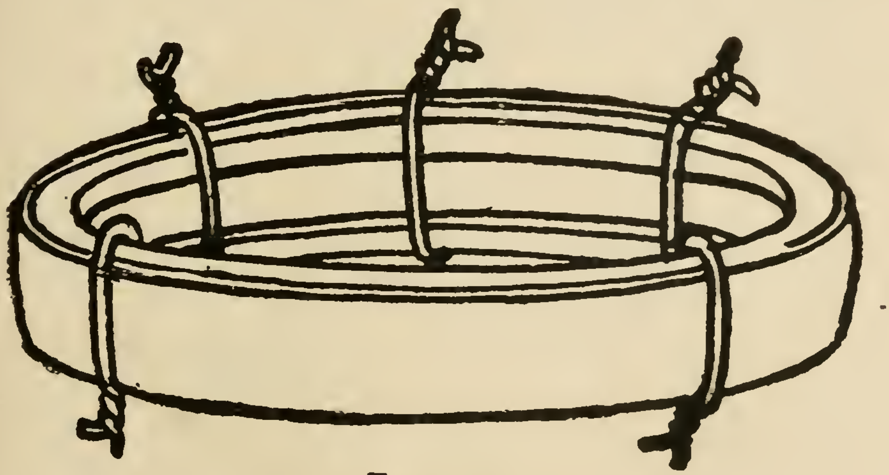


Fig. 93.

bracelet, and enlarge this with the needle file, so that the larger tube will slip comfortably into its place. Now cut off a short length of the larger tube a little longer than the depth of the bracelet band, and halve it lengthwise with the frame-saw. Into one half solder two lengths of the small tube, with a space between them —each piece being a third as long as the

Digitized by Microsoft®

Bracelets joint—and into the center of the other half solder another piece of tube filed to fit exactly between the first two (see fig. 94). Fit these two halves of the joint together after painting each with a little rouge and water to prevent them from sticking together while being soldered into the bracelet. Scrape the outside of the tube quite clean, and tie it in place with binding-wire. See that the joint in the tube lies across the edge of the bracelet as in fig. 95. Put some small panels of solder on each side of the tube, and solder it without giving too much heat, or the solder may flush into the joint and spoil the work.

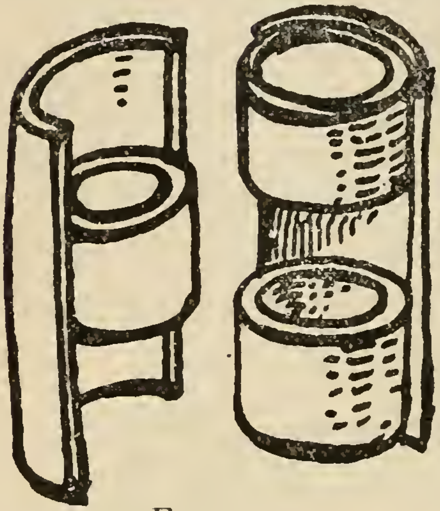


FIG. 94.

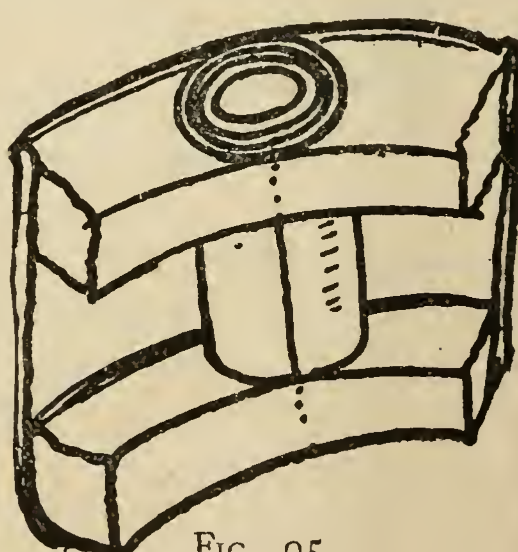


FIG. 95.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

File the ends of the tube flush with the edge of the bracelet. The snap is made by cutting two strips of 8-gage metal, one for the back, and one for the face of the snap. File the face into the form at fig. 96. The upper space is for the spring plate, the lower for the bottom plate of the snap. For this latter take a strip of 8- or 9-gage silver, file it to fit the lower slot B, and solder it at right angles to the back-plate (see fig. 97). The spring-plate is a narrow strip of the same metal filed to fit the groove C. Solder the end of it to the bottom plate at D so that the edge nearest the back-plate is separated from the latter by a space exactly the thickness of the metal (fig. 98).

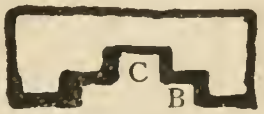


Fig. 96.


Fig. 97.

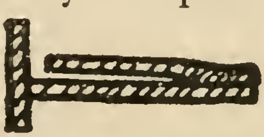


Fig. 98.

If you now file notches in the band of the bracelet lengthwise down the joint, and saw the band through on the opposite side, the bracelet will come in two, and can be hinged up temporarily with a brass peg. The snap-plates can now be soldered

Digitized by Microsoft®

Bracelets

to the other end. The plate A should first be soldered in position, a lining-plate, B, being soldered inside each half of the bracelet (figs. 99, 100), and a slot filed at C to admit the thumbpiece of the snap. Fix the snap-plate carefully in place, rouge it, and tie it with wire. Scrape the back of the snap-plate and the end of the bracelet which abuts on this; tie binding-wire round the whole bracelet, and solder the back-plate of the snap to the proper half of the band. File the joint clean and smooth, and release the snap by pressing the point of a file or a knife upon the spring-plate through the slot C. The thumbpiece, made of a strip of silver, can now be soldered in position, and the snap is complete. A loop may be soldered on each side for the attachment of the safety-chain if you wish, but it is not absolutely necessary.

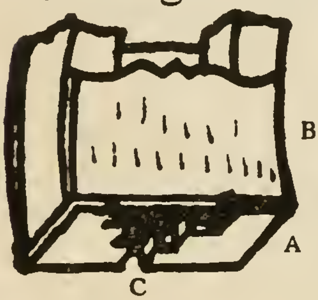


Fig. 99.

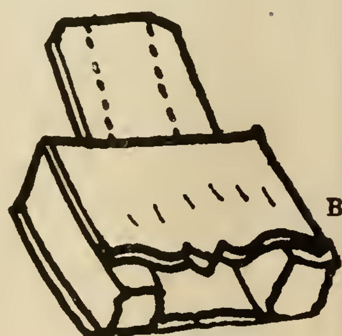


Fig. 100.

All the constructive enrichment of the band—as, for instance, a panel of filigree-

Digitized by Microsoft ®

work, foliage, or set stones—should be done before the joint and snap are made, otherwise the bracelet may not snap or close properly.

How to Make a Flexible Bracelet.—Make a number of small half-domes out of No. 5 silver.

Fig. 101.

Take a silver wire, about 20 gage, and coil it round a paper-guarded mandrel; anneal it, slip off the coils of wire, and with the saw cut off the loops one by one until you have a good number. Boil the rings clean, and arrange them together (see fig. 101) on a level piece of charcoal. Solder them all together, and solder a half-dome in the middle and a grain in the intersections of the circles. Make a number of these links, say twenty. Make a similar number with groups of three small grains added in the intersections of the circles (fig. 102). These are the ornamental loops to the chain of which the flexible part of the bracelet will be made. Take a mandrel of flattened iron or brass wire, coil a strip of thin paper round it, and

Fig. 102.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Bracelets after the paper flattened or half-round wire, gage 18 or 20. Saw these links off, and with them loop the first made links in groups of three and solder each link; the three central ornamental links car. be looped together also (fig. 103). You will now be able to loop up the whole $6\frac{1}{2}$ inch length easily, or you can make the bracelet with a single row of ringed loops, as shown in fig. 104. This

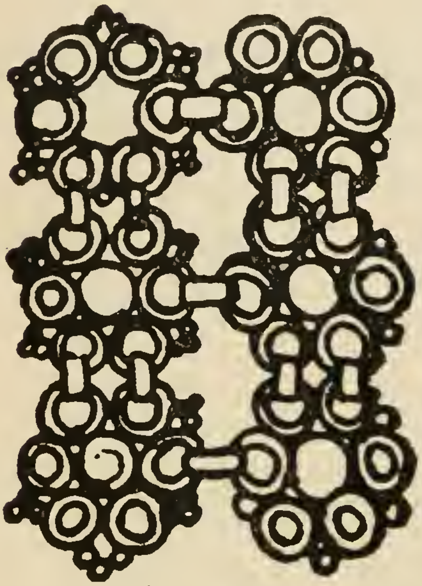


Fig. 103.

done, make the two end panels, one to hold the snap and the other for the catch-plate. You can do them in repoussé out of 8-gage silver. A pair of little rabbits, or squirrels in a bower of leaves, would look well, and the relief should be fairly high. The group should be done in one piece, leaving a clear line down the center for the joint. When the modeling is complete, boil it out and

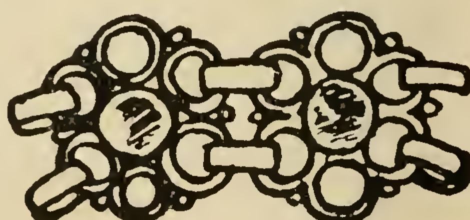


Fig. 104.

Digitized by Microsoft®

solder on a back of No. 6 metal. Saw the panel in two, and solder the slotted catch-plate centrally on one and the snap-plate to the other. File out a slot in the catch-plate side and fit the two together, and file up clean. When the thumbpiece has been added, the clasp is complete, except for the loops.

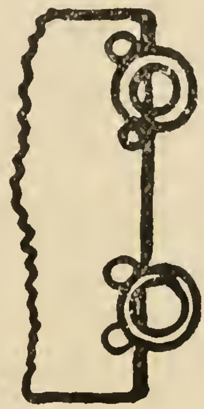


FIG. 105.

Mark on each half the proper position for the loops of the chain-band; solder on stout links of wire. These should be circles and soldered firmly to the back-plate of the clasp, and each loop further strengthened by soldering a grain of silver on each side of it (see fig. 105). Now loop it all up together, boil it out, and clean in pickle. Then remove the traces of pickle by boiling it in hot water and soda. Polish it on the scratch-brush with beer, and brighten the domes of each loop with a burnisher. The clasp can also be gone over with the burnisher with great advantage. It may be well to mention that springs of catches made in 9-carat gold last longer than those made in silver.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER XIX

Gold Work—The Care of the Material—Board Sweep—Method of Treatment—Alloys—Hair Ornaments—The Ingot—Drawing the Wire—Making Grains—Leaves—Flowers—Gold Solder—Nine-Carat Gold for the Pin—Study of Old Work

Gold Work GOLD work, on account of the greater cost of the material, needs very much more care on the part of the workman. Board sweep, lemel, polishings, the sweepings of the floor underneath the work-bench—must all be carefully preserved for refining when a sufficient quantity has been obtained. The material should always be used, so that it gives its utmost decorative value. The work must be built up out of thin sheets or wires, not filed up out of the solid. Gold, by its very ductility and malleability, invites this method of treatment; and it is the one most used in all the finest periods. To work in solid gold is to waste precious material needlessly. Used thin it gives a beauty unattainable by other means. The quality of the gold to be used depends on the nature of the work. For enameled panels

Digitized by Microsoft®

fine gold is best, but on account of its extreme softness it will not stand much wear.

To give it hardness, it is alloyed with varying quantities of copper and silver. Copper by itself gives the gold a red color, silver by itself a greenish color; the two together gives the alloy almost the original color again. The best alloy, both for working and appearance afterward, is naturally that which is most nearly fine gold—viz., 22-carat. The next best is 20-carat, while the ordinary gold of trade jewelry is 18-carat. But this, if alloyed with copper only, is not pleasant in color, is much harder to work, and is liable to crack if used for repoussé work. If it is alloyed with silver only the alloy is paler in color than gold, but it is very pleasant to work, and is very ductile and kindly. For repoussé gold may be allied with silver down to 12-carat; but beyond 12-carat the alloy looks much more like silver than gold, and the effect of it is not, perhaps, much better than gold-washed silver. Yet it is as well to remember that the addition of even a small quantity of gold to silver gives a richness of color which can not be obtained in any other way.

Digitized by Microsoft®

We will suppose you wish to make a pair of hair ornaments in 20-carat gold. First you will buy from any of the bullion merchants 1 oz. of fine gold. Take 10 dwts. of this, *i.e.* one-half, and to every dwt. add two grains of fine silver and two of alloy copper, in all 1 dwt. 16 grs. Put it in a crucible with a little borax, melt and cast it in a narrow ingot. When cool, draw it out on the anvil into a square wire, hammer the tip taper, and after annealing draw it down with the draw-plate until you get it to size 0. Coil it up and anneal it carefully on the mop; boil it out in hydrochloric pickle. Next run the ends into beads, some large for leaves, and some small for berries, and snip off short lengths. You will

Fig. 106.

Digitized by Microsoft®

now need solder. Take two or three dwts. of the alloy you are using; to every dwt. add 5 grains of fine silver, and melt on the charcoal block with a little borax; flatten the resulting button of alloy with a hammer, roll it out thin, and cut it up into tiny panels ready for soldering.

Fig. 107.

Take the prepared bits of wire, flatten the larger beaded ends into leaf shape with a few taps on the square bench stake (see fig. 52), group them on either side of a central stem (see fig. 107), lay tiny panels of solder over each junction, and direct the flame on each joint in succession till the whole has been soldered. Do this until you have as many groups as you want. In like manner make groups of the smaller beads (fig. 109). Now dome up a piece of sheet-iron into a half ball the size of the proposed ornament. Make two rings of plain wire, a size or two larger than that used for the twigs and leaves, and between them solder a ring of twist wire. This

Fig. 108.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gold Work

is for the foundation band round the edge. This circular band must be soldered to a circle of flattened wire, the wire being bent edgewise. You will next dome up a ball of gold in two halves out of size 1 or 2; when the metal just fits the doming-block, take a file and file away the superfluous metal and having made an air-hole in one half solder the two together. Bend up a small strip of metal into a tube about $\frac{3}{16}$th inch long, solder this on a $5\frac{1}{16}$ circle of size 2, domed slightly; on the top of the tube solder the gold bead. Next coil up six rings of fine twisted wire, just large enough to fit in between the hollow bead and the base, tie them all in position with binding-wire, and solder them to the stem, to the hollow bead and the base (see fig. 110). Make grains out of small lengths of wire or bits of scrap gold, and solder a grain in the angle between the ring and the bead and in the angle between the ring and the base.[1] Round the edge of the base put a double row of twisted wire to enclose the upright rings. Between each pair

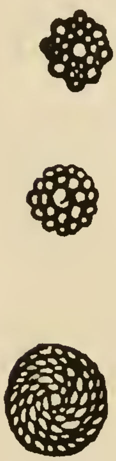


Fig. 109.

[1] To solder grains: finish paillion solder on the back of grain, then borax it, and lay it in place and flame it. The solder will fire grain without appearing on surface.

Digitized by Microsoft®

of rings you must now solder a group of three grains, but take care not to use too much heat, or you will melt the rings. This, when boiled out clean, forms the central boss of the whole ornament. Tie this and the large ring already made on the iron ball with binding-wire. You can now arrange the groups of leaves and berries in their places between the boss and the ring. Each group must touch two others and the top and bottom rings. If this is not done, the work will not be strong. While soldering these it may be well to paint the parts not to be soldered with a paste of loam or whiting and water, or pipe-clay and water, as a precaution against melting. The solder itself should run more easily than that used for the groups of leaves. To secure this, take as much of the first solder as you think you may require, and add to it a piece of silver solder, about two grains of silver solder to each pennyweight of the original solder. When the soldering is complete, boil the work clean. Have ready a number of small grains also boiled clean, and solder one in the angle between the twigs and the bottom, using this both for ap-

Fig. 110.

Digitized by Microsoft®

pearance and strength (fig. 111). This done, again boil out clean, and having made three circles of wire, size 22, solder them together as in fig. 112. Take a short length of tube, like that you made for the central boss, and tap it with a female screw; file up the ends true and solder it to the center of the three rings. Fig. 113 shows another arrangement for the bottom of the filigree dome. This trefoil must now be soldered to the back of the bottom ring, and the first part of the work complete. Fig. 114 shows the knop complete, but with a boss of coiled twist-wire in the center instead of that first described.

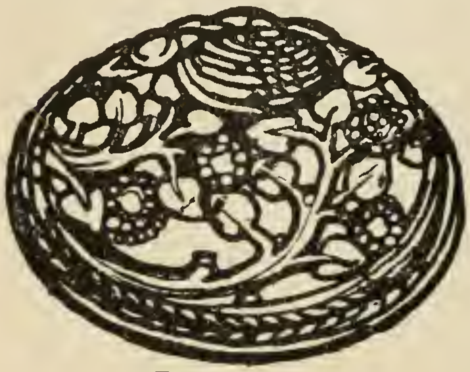


Fig. 111.

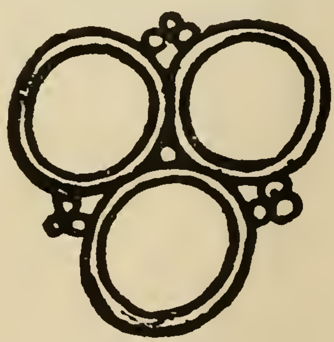


Fig. 112.

The next is to make the pin for attachment to the hair. It should be of 9-carat gold. Take in the proportion of 9 of gold to $7\frac{1}{2}$ of copper and $7\frac{1}{2}$ of silver, *i. e.* $7\frac{1}{2}$ grains each of copper and silver to 9

Digitized by Microsoft®

grains of fine gold will make 1 dwt. of 9-carat gold alloy. Having weighed out your alloy, melted it, and cast the ingot, draw the ingot out into wire, size 18. Cut off a piece double the length of the pin, bend it in the center, and solder a segment of wire to make a complete circle (see fig. 106). This strengthens the end of the pin. Next make a hinge out of a small tube as described for the brooch hinge (see fig. 74). On the center portion of the joint solder a male screw to fit the female already prepared (see fig. 114). File away all roughness; no projecting points must be left, or they will catch in the hair and cause inconvenience. All work intended for wear should be smooth and pleasant to the touch. The work can now be stoned and polished with pumice, crocus, and rouge.

Fig. 113.

In all jewelry work, but most of all in gold work, the effect must be built out of small details. Design is the language

Digitized by Microsoft®

you learn from your work, and as your skill in handiwork grows, so will your power of design. Design can not be separated from handiwork. It is the expression of your personality in terms of the material in which you work. One has only to look at any piece of early gold work, Egyptian, Mykenean, Etruscan, Indian, or Anglo-Saxon, to realize what rich effects can be produced by repetition. The beautiful patterns evolved by Arab, Persian and Hindoo artists from the simplest elements, offer a world of suggestion to the young craftsman, and open up ideas for future use. Do not attempt to copy such work, but study the principles of contrasted line, texture, and form. A grasp of the method of building up all work out of thin sheet, will help you to apply these principles for yourself.

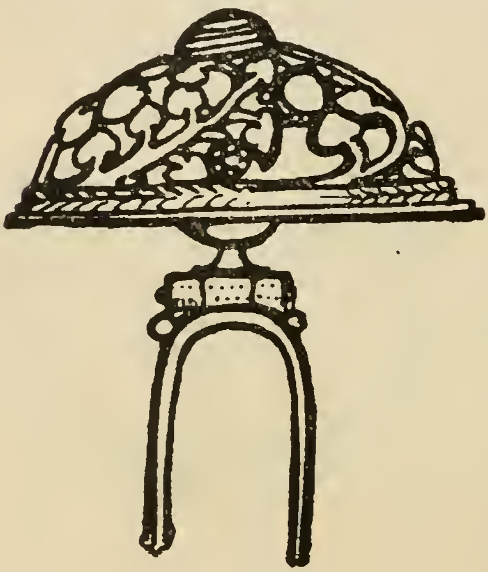


Fig. 114.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XX

Gold Necklace with Pendant Fleurs de Lis—The Brass Mold—Burnishing the Gold over the Matrix—Another Method of Making Fleurs de Lis—Engraved Matrices

Gold Necklace with Pendant

TAKE a piece of brass large enough and thick enough for the pendant, and having carefully transferred to it the outline of your pattern, pierce out the shape with the saw, and file it up to the shape of the pendant (fig. 115), omitting of course the rings and loops for suspension. Take a cement stick (fig. 116), which is merely a short taper handle of wood with roughened end. A good-sized lump of engravers' cement[1] is warmed in the flame of the blowpipe or spirit lamp and fixed on the roughened end of the stick; the cement

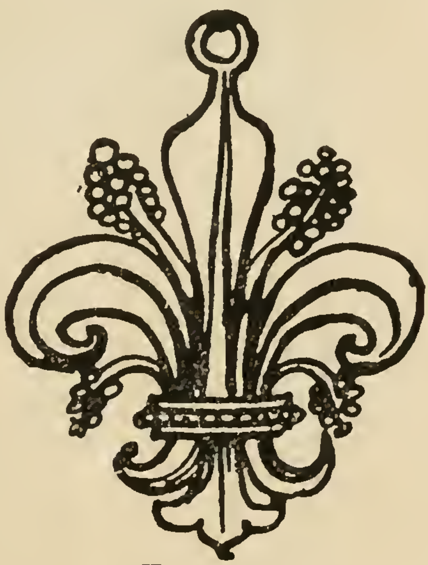


FIG. 115.

[1] To make engraver's cement: melt Burgundy pitch, 4 parts; Resin, 4 parts; Plaster of Paris, 2 parts; Bees-wax, 2 parts, in a pipkin. Stir well till thoroughly incorporated.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gold Necklace with Pendant

while warm is pressed intc any shape required by rolling it on a cold iron plate sprinkled with water to prevent the cement from sticking. In this case you will press the warmed cement on the iron so that you get a level top (fig. 116). Take the brass model, warm it, and press it into the cement so that exactly half remains exposed. Smooth the cement down round the edges with a wetted steel spatula. Cool it in water, and when cold take a piece of 22 gold, size 2, anneal it well, and with a rounded burnisher press and rub the gold over the brass shape. Anneal the gold frequently at first, and you will find the work easier. When you have got the shape very nearly, warm the gold, and press it firmly on the cement until it sticks (fig. 117). Now with the point of the burnisher you can drive the gold into the angles, and finish the shape completely. Remove the brass mold from the cement,

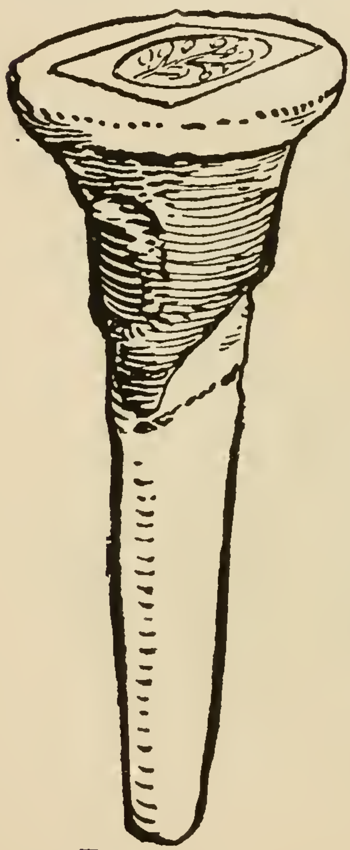


Fig. 116.

Digitized by Microsoft®

clean it well, and refix it with its other face upward. Repeat the burnishing process with another piece of gold, cut away the surplus metal from the outside with the shears, and file up the edges until the two fit perfectly together (see fig. 115) and boil them out. You will

Gold Necklace with Pendant

Fig. 117.

now need to strengthen the two halves of the ornament, so that they may not get crushed out of shape after being fastened together. Take snippings of silver or short lengths of silver wire curved to fit the hollows at the back of each half, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gold Necklace with Pendant

solder them in place with panels of 18-carat solder, made by adding 6 grains of fine silver to every dwt. of fine gold, or, if you use the scraps and filings from the 22-carat, 4 grains of fine silver to each dwt. of scrap. This done, boil the work clean, tie the two halves together with fine binding-wire, fitting the edges very closely to each other or the solder will not flush properly. Remember that in gold work you can not fit too closely; in silver work, on the contrary, if the work fits too well, the solder runs along the surface and not into the join. When all the joins are soldered the work can be filed up and the hanging rings fixed. The smaller sizes will be made in like manner. If you wish for more elaborate forms you can model the shape in wax, and having made a plaster matrix, make a cast in type metal. You can now rub the gold over the type metal cast in the same way as over the brass model; or, having made the plaster matrix, you can take a zinc cast of it in a sand mold, and rub the gold into it instead of over it. Any irregularities in the mold can be removed by chasing the surface with repoussé tools.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Another method is to take a thick piece of brass large enough for your purpose, and having hammered the surface carefully to make the metal uniformly dense and tough, take a scorper, and with it hollow out a matrix of the form you require. The surface of the ornament can be further modeled up with rounded chasing tools to almost any degree of fineness. The effect of your work can be seen by oiling the metal and taking frequent impressions in wax or modeling paste. Into this mold the thin sheet gold can either be rubbed or beaten in with a hammer and a strip of lead (see fig. 118). The lead prevents injury either to the mold or the metal, and by spreading out under the blow, forces the gold into all parts of the mold. If fine silver is used it can with care be hammered solid into the mold, and then filed off true.

Gold Necklace with Pendant

In all these methods it is well to remember that the forms must be clear, and studied closely from nature, or based on some form which you have found by experience looks well in work.

There must be no under-cutting or the work will not draw from the mold when you have beaten it in.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gold Necklace with Pendant

The plan of engraving matrices in brass was one extensively used in old work. Many of the elaborate necklaces shown in the gold room of the British Museum are made up of simple forms produced in molds like those just described, then

FIG. 118.

soldered together, and linked up with rough pearls and uncut stones. Having by one or other of the above methods made your pendants, group them round the $4\frac{1}{2}$ circle, and at the points of suspension put either a stone, a simple boss of gold, or a beehive coil of twisted wire,

Digitized by Microsoft®

with a network or openwork of wire round it. Solder three strong loops to the backs of these bosses, make some lengths of chain and a snap, and loop the whole together as before.

Gold Necklace with Pendant

The central pendant may be made longer, and the side ones hung in diminishing lengths from the centre. For this, make small half balls of thin gold, solder backs to them, and put a ring of twist round the join. Fix two loops opposite to each other on the backs. These will now be linked up between the pendants and the main bosses, completing the necklace.

CHAPTER XXI

Locket or Pendant Casket—The Frame—The Bezel—The Hinge—The Back—Fitting the Hinge—The Joint Tool—Swivel Loops

Locket or Pendant Casket

THE student would be well advised to attempt this first of all in silver, as these lockets are by no means easy to make. The fitting and the hanging require very great care. Take a piece of silver, size 8, a little wider than the full depth of the pendant (fig. 119). Bend it up into

Digitized by Microsoft®

Locket or Pendant Casket

the shape of the outline in fig. 120, and solder the two ends firmly together. Next take two plates of size 6, one for the back and one for the front, dome slightly, and solder them to the outline frame. File the surplus metal from the edges and mark the center line down the sides of the

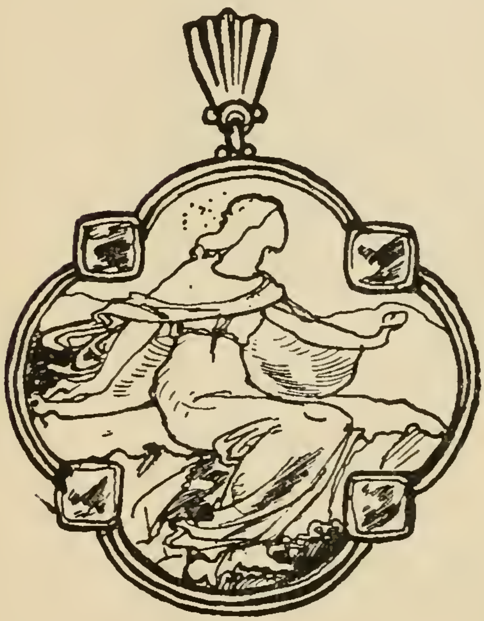


FIG. 119.

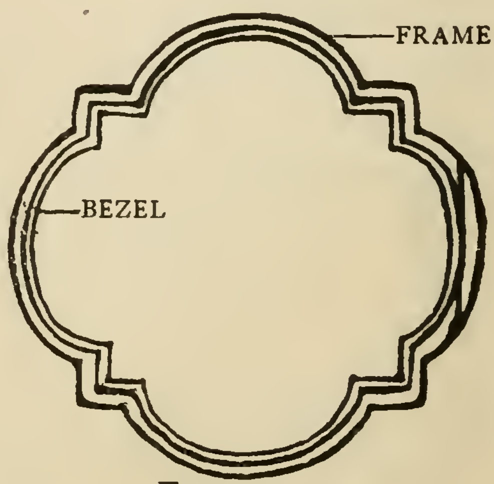


FIG. 120.

frame, and saw the box apart lengthwise (fig. 121A). You have now two halves which exactly fit each other. Mark the sides, which should come together so that you may readily fit the two in the right place. Next take a strip of No. 5, a little deeper than the sides of each half locket,

Digitized by Microsoft®

bend it to fit exactly within the locket, and solder it in place (fig. 121B). This is to form the bezel on which the lid fits, and by which the lid is held firmly in place. Now boil the work clean and fit the two together. Having drawn a short length of small tube from which to make the hinge, with a small round file or a joint file make a deep groove along the line of the joint (fig. 122). It should be as deep as possible, so that the tube may not project and spoil the outline of the pendant. Cut off three lengths of the tube, so that the three together just fill the space provided for the hinge. File the ends of these short lengths true and square in the joint-tool (fig. 120). Mark

Locket or Pendant Casket

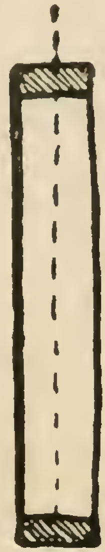


FIG. 121 A.

FIG. 121 B.

the position of the center one, and after taking apart the two halves of the locket, solder the center length of tube in its place on one half of the locket and the other two lengths on their half. The

Digitized by Microsoft®

Locket or Pendant Casket

loop can now be soldered on. It can be either a plain or a swivel loop.

A swivel loop is made as already described in the chapter on Pendants, only instead of having the small rings at the bottom a hole is drilled up through the point of the loop and a wire, beaded at one

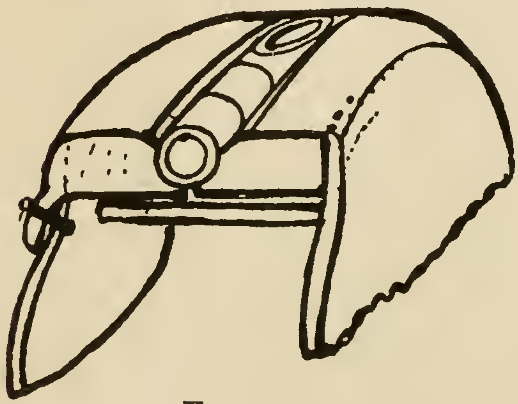


Fig. 122.

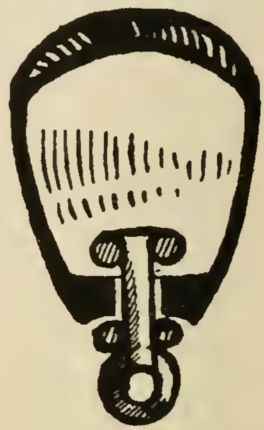


Fig. 123.

end, is slipped in, and bent over to form a ring below the loop (fig. 123). This ring should be soldered. The swivel and the hole must be painted with a little rouge and water, so that the solder may not run and make a solid instead of a swivel joint. Stones may be set on the front and the front panel cut away, leaving a narrow rim. An enamel panel can then be fixed in from the back, as described in the chapter on Settings.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXII

Carving in Metal—Where Carving is Necessary—Making the Tools—Tempering—The Wax Model—The Use of the Chisels—Finishing—The Spiral Knop—The Wreathed Setting

Carving in Metal

SMALL figures, wreaths, sprays, and small animals and birds, can be very easily carved out of the solid metal. As mentioned in another chapter, where the work is to be enameled, it is necessary that it should be carved out of a material which is perfectly even in texture or the enamel will fly off. The tools required are exceedingly simple. A few chisels of various sizes made out of short lengths of bar steel, a chasing-hammer, and a few files and ordinary repoussé tools will alone be necessary.

C

B A

FIG. 124.

To Make the Tools.—Cut off a few 5-inch lengths of square bar steel of different sizes and different widths; soften the ends by heating them to a cherry red. Let them cool gradually. File the ends

Digitized by Microsoft®

of each into a blunt bevel (see fig. 124 A, B). Fig. 125 shows an enlarged view of the cutting end of the tool. Fix each in the vise and file off the square edges along the sides and the top, so that the tool will be more comfortable to the hand. It will be well to have one or two made with a rounded bevel like a gouge, and one with a rather sharp beveled edge for occasional use. Having got them filed up into shape, and the sides and top made nice and smooth with emery-cloth, harden each by heating it to a cherry red and dropping it into a bucket of cold water.

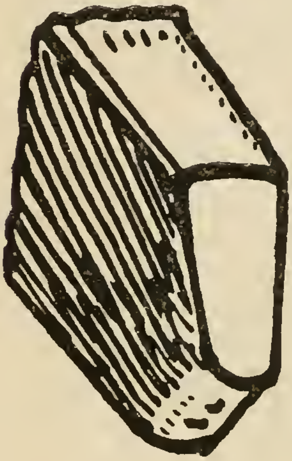


Fig. 125.

They will now need tempering. First brighten the metal at the cutting edge by rubbing it on emery-cloth. Then hold the tool in the flame until the first pale straw color comes. Have ready a vessel of cold water, and as soon as the color appears, cool the tool in the water. When all have been treated, you will be ready to begin to work.

Take your lump of silver or gold, hammer it well all over to make it more

Digitized by Microsoft®

dense and uniform in texture. It is well to have the metal longer than the object you wish to carve, so that you can hold it in a small bench-vise while carving.

Before beginning, it is wise to take the precaution of making a model in wax of the subject you intend to carve. Block out the principal masses with the gouge-shaped chisel. Do not be too eager to get down to the surface of your model. It is better to get the action and movement before attempting modeling in detail. Then, with the smaller chisels you can go over the work, and realize the form more completely, taking care always to drive the chisel along the line of the bevel which rests upon the work (see fig. 124 c). At this stage you may take the work out of the vise and put it on the pitch-block, and work it up with repoussé tools. Oval matting-tools, with a slightly rounded surface, will be found very useful for this. Use the chisels now and then to remove any metal which by repeated working has become too hard to yield to the tracing-tool. With smooth punches and tracers you can get almost any degree of fineness of work. If, however, the work is to be afterward enameled, it is useless to spend too much

Digitized by Microsoft®

Carving in Metal

time upon surface modeling; a great deal must be left to be done in the enameling.

Sprays of leaves and flowers or knops of leafage can be very easily produced by this method in the following manner. Suppose you wish to carve a spiral knop of nut leaves. Take a piece of 16-gage silver, beat it into a dome of the size and depth of your knop. Anneal the metal. Now draw with a fine brush and Indian ink the spiral twigs and the masses of leaves. See that branches or twigs stretch from each line of the spiral to the lines above and below it (fig. 126). This is in order that the knop may be strong all over. With a drill and a fret-saw pierce out the interspaces. Take your gravers, begin with the round scorper, after wetting the tip of the tool and cut grooves lengthwise along the twigs, so that the spiral growth of the twig is emphasized. Next,

Fig. 126.

Digitized by Microsoft®

with a flat scorper cut the groups of leaves so as to show their overlapping. With a small gouge you can now vein the leaves and add any necessary finishing touches to the twigs. The knop may be finished up still further by putting it upon the pitch and adding any refinements of detail you may desire.

How to Carve a Wreathed Setting.—A fine stone will often look well in a conical wreathed setting carved out of thick sheet metal (fig. 127). Mark out the section of the setting at A, fig. 128. Produce the sides till they meet. From this point as center draw circles as shown. On the base make a semicircle, and divide it into any number of equal parts, say 16. Set out these on the larger segment, join the last point to the center. The enclosed form is that required to make the setting. Cut this shape out with the shears, bend the metal up to fit the stone, and solder the edges. Draw on this (fig. 129) a wavy spiral of twigs, and while keeping the design very open, see that the various

Fig. 127.

Digitized by Microsoft®

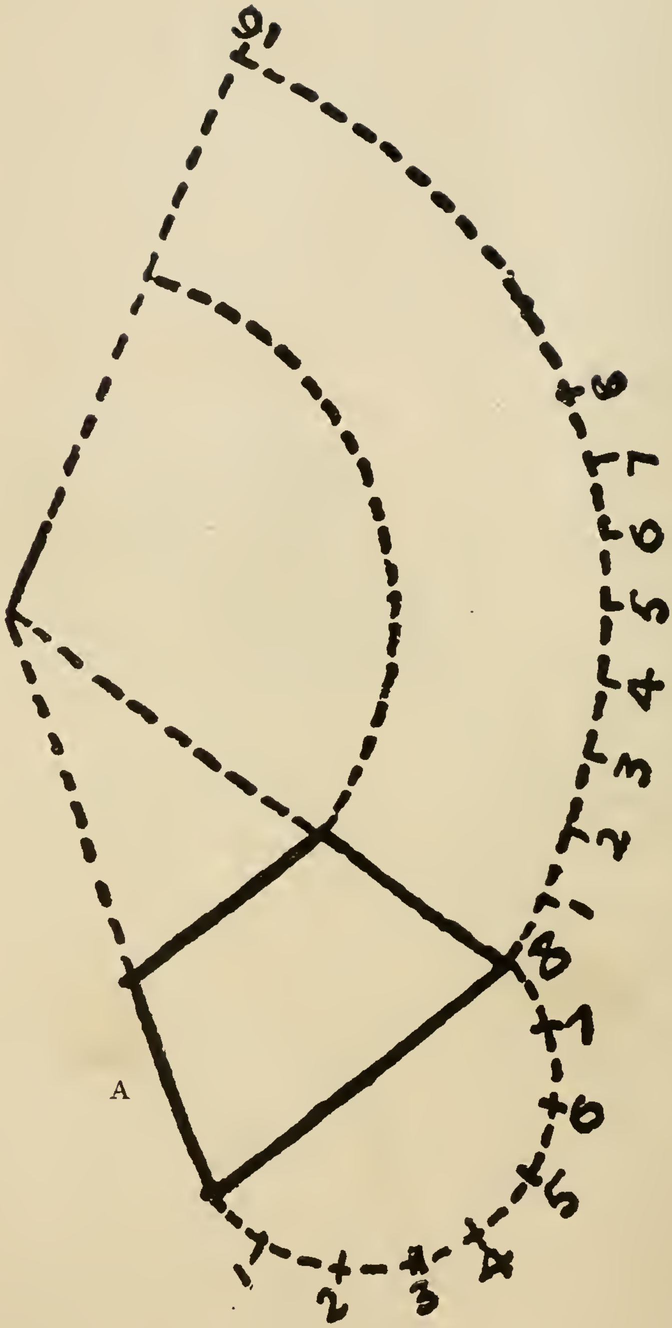


Fig. 128.

Digitized by Microsoft®

branches and leaves are well knit together. Pierce out the interspaces with the drill and saw. Then take an engraving-stick and a piece of gold-beater's skin, warm the cement on the stick, and shape it with a wetted thumb and forefinger just to fit the setting. Place the skin over the warmed cement, and press the setting, also warmed, well down upon the skin-covered surface. The cement will press the skin out through the holes in the setting, and when cold will keep it firmly in its place. Unless the skin is used the cement is apt to spread all over the metal, so that you can not see what you are doing. You can now carve the work with scorpers, as before described.

Carving in Metal

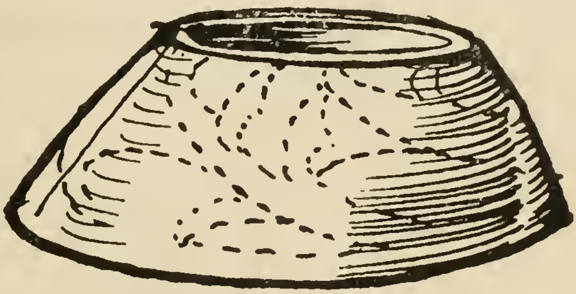


FIG. 129.

CHAPTER XXIII

Casting—The Cuttlefish Mold—Flasks—The Loam—Smoking the Mold—Slate or Bath-brick Molds

Casting

VERY small castings, such as reliefs to set in rings and sprays of foliage, heads, birds,

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Casting etc., can very easily be done in cuttlefish bone. Choose a clean and perfect specimen cuttlefish, cut it in half, and rub each face perfectly flat. Insert three small register pegs in one face (fig. 130), leaving plenty of room between for the pattern. Press the two faces together, so that they

Fig. 130.

fit absolutely close. Lay the pattern, which must not be anywhere undercut, in the space between the pegs, and press the two halves of the mold carefully and firmly, so that you may get a perfectly clear impression. Take them apart, re-

Digitized by Microsoft ®

move the pattern, make a funnel-shaped channel for the metal, also channels for air-holes, leading radially outward (fig. 131), and tie the mold up with binding- Casting

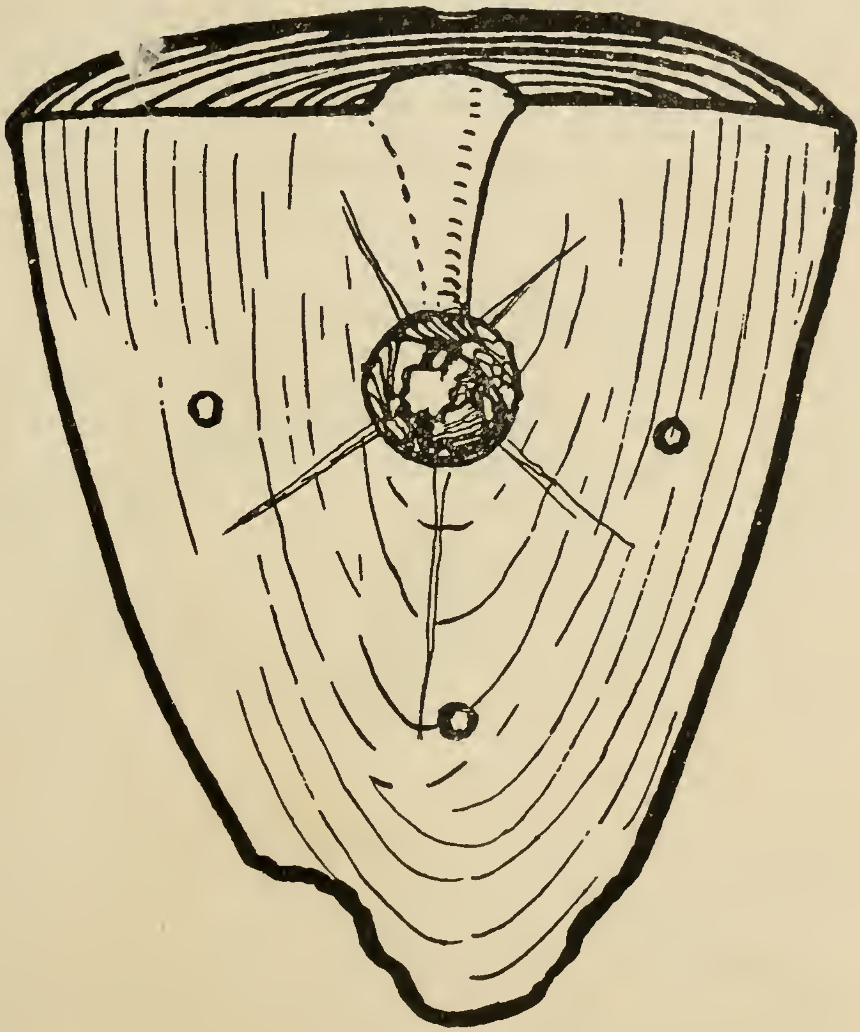


Fig. 131.

wire (fig. 132). Make a little pit in a piece of charcoal large enough to take the gold or silver you wish to melt, tie

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting the charcoal to the top of the mold, so that the pit comes opposite the channel or "pour." Make another channel from the hollow in the charcoal to the channel in the mold. Now put your gold or silver in the charcoal, melt it with the blowpipe, adding a little borax to aid the fusion, and when the metal runs into a clear shining molten globe, tilt the mold

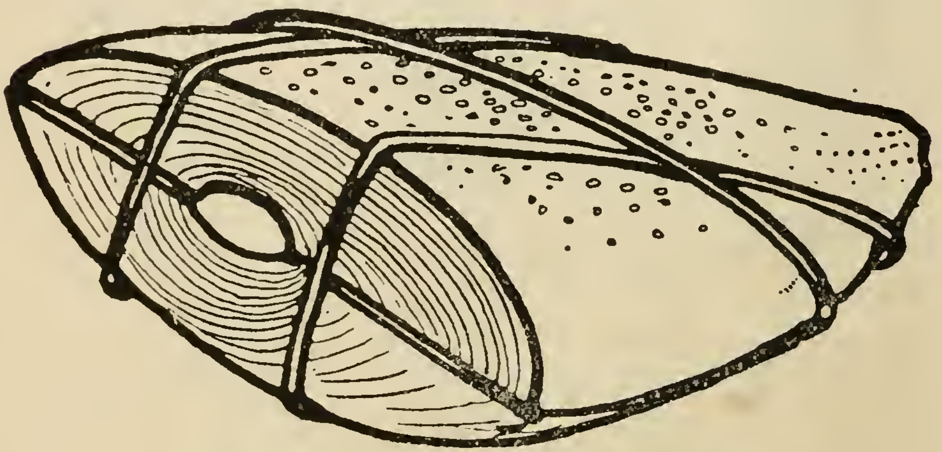


FIG. 132.

so that the metal runs in. Let it cool, and the task is complete.

Casting in Sand.—For this work you will need a pair of casting flasks, fine casting sand or loam, some black lead and French chalk in powder, and a muslin bag full of pea-flour to dust over the patterns and the surfaces of the mold. Casting flasks are two equal-sized frames

Digitized by Microsoft ®

of cast-iron, one of which has flanges carrying pegs which fit into holes in corresponding flanges on the other frame. The first is called the peg side, the second the eye side. Lay the eye side flange downward on a perfectly flat, smooth board. Within this, rather near to the funnel-shaped entrance to the flask, the pattern will afterward be laid. We will suppose it to be a piece of relief work with a flat back. It should be well rubbed over with black lead, so that the sand may not stick to it.

Now take some handfuls of the molding sand and loam, wet the mixture with water sprinkled over it, just enough being used to make the loam bind. When you have mixed loam and sand thoroughly, press it down and beat it well into the mold with a mallet. Strike the upper surface level with a straight-edge, and, having placed a bit of board upon the mold, turn it over eye side upward. Dust the surface of the mold with finely powdered brick dust. This is to prevent the two surfaces of the mold from sticking together. Lay the pattern, which must be well brushed over with black lead, upon the surface of the mold on the center line, but not too near

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting

the opening into the mold. If the pattern is placed too near the opening the weight of metal above the pattern will not be sufficient when it is being poured in to force the liquid metal into all the crevices of the matrix. On the other hand, it must not be too far away or it may take more metal than you happen to have at your disposal. Take the pattern, press it half-way into the mold, dust the whole surface of the pattern and the mold with fine brick dust. Now place the peg side in position, press the loam very carefully in by hand, and then beat it well in with the mallet. Take the peg side off, blow away loose particles of sand from each side, and very carefully remove the pattern. The mold must now be dusted with powdered charcoal or pea-flour, or smoked with a burning taper, and the pattern once more placed in position, the two halves pressed firmly together, so as to take the final impression of the pattern. Loosen the sand over the pattern with a knife, and then drive it home again with repeated blows with the mallet. Remove the pattern, make the pour and a few air-channels leading away from any prominent part of the pattern, so that the

Digitized by Microsoft®

air can escape when driven out by the inrush of the molten metal. The molds should now be put over a gas-burner to dry, which must be done very thoroughly. When it is quite dry melt your metal in a good-sized crucible, and while the mold is warm pour the metal quickly in. The casting when cool can be filed up and chased as much as you wish.

The methods just described are only useful for comparatively rough work to be afterward chased. When a fine surfaced cast is required, or when there is much detail in the model, the molds must be made as described in chapters XXXI. and XXXII.

Molds for simple objects may be made of slate, steatite, or bath brick. The forms desired can very easily be hollowed out of any of these materials. Bath brick, however, will only serve for a few casts, while the others will last for a long time. There are several interesting specimens of these molds, with examples of the work produced by them, in the medieval room of the British Museum.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXIV

Enamel Work—General Considerations—Requisites—Cloisonné Work—Filling the Cells—Mounting the Enamel—Champlevé Enamel—The Tools—Use of Gold Solder—Limoges Enamel—Network Enamel—Setting the Enamel—Deep-cut Enamel

Enamel Work

THE use of enamel in jewelry is to add richness and color. It should not be used in large masses or the effect will be heavy, and the most valuable quality of enamel, which is preciousness, will be lost. The colors used should be pure and brilliant and few in number. As a general rule each color should be separated from its neighbor by a line of metal, and be also bordered by a line of metal. That is to say, where the enamel is used to decorate a surface it should be enclosed in cells, made either by cutting them out of the surface with gravers and scorpers, or by raising the walls of the cells from the back, or by soldering flattened wire bent to shape edgewise to form the cell walls or cloisons: the cloisons form a kind of network which encloses the enamel in its meshes and carries the metal con-

Digitized by Microsoft®

struction through the design. The color and sheen of the metal outline harmonize the different colors with each other, and give a greater brilliancy of effect than can be obtained by any other means. The color of the metal, in fact, is a valuable ground tint. The limitations of this method are great, but in those very limitations lies the strength of the student. The scheme must be completely thought out, the outline must be clear, and the color clean and pure. Nothing can be left to chance. Many valuable hints can be gained by a careful study of Indian enamel work; that of Jeypore in particular is full of suggestiveness and beauty. Enamel may be used as a background for set stones, or an effect of color made the motive of a design, but in all cases care should be taken to secure a clear metal outline.

For translucent enamel pictures the metal outline can not of course be used; but in this case the whole picture should be small enough to set as a jewel. The burnished edge of the setting then takes the place of the metal outline.

Large plaques of enamel are unsuitable for personal ornament. If enamel is to be used on small figure subjects, the figures

Digitized by Microsoft®

should either be beaten up in the round from sheet, or carved out of solid metal. Enamel rarely stands on cast work, partly because of the inequality of texture of the metal, and partly because the metal is so full of minute air-holes. It will hold for a time, especially if soft; but sooner or later will fly off in the form of tiny flakes. This can in some measure be prevented by stabbing the ground of the enamel with a sharp graver, so that little points of metal are left sticking up all over the surface. These hold the enamel fairly well, but you can never be sure that it will not flake off just where it will most be seen. The best grounds for enamel are fine alloy copper, fine silver, fine gold, and 22-carat gold.

The various methods of enameling will probably be familiar to most students, through Mr. Cunynghame's recent work on the subject. It will therefore be unnecessary to do more than to treat each process briefly, and refer those who may desire fuller information to that work.

Requisites.—The following things will be found useful:—

A china mortar and pestle.

A small agate mortar and pestle.

Digitized by Microsoft®

A nest of covered palettes as used for water-colors.

A slab of ground glass about 12 inches square.

A large rounded hematite burnisher.

A few wide-mouthed glass bottles with corks, to hold the enamels.

A few pieces of sheet iron. Some binding-wire.

A corundum file.

A small flask of hydrofluoric acid. A 6-inch dipping-tube, made of $\frac{1}{4}$-inch tube, to use with this acid. A lead trough made by bending up the sides of a square of rolled sheet-lead—that at 5 lbs. to the foot will do.

A good strong painter's palette-knife.

A long-handled pair of tongs.

A muffle-furnace, or, for small work, a crucible.

Cloisonné.—How to make a Brooch in Cloisonné Enamel.—Take a piece of 22-carat gold, size 4, the size of a shilling, and with a good-sized burnisher rub it into a very flat dome. Draw a piece of gold-wire through an oblong-holed draw-plate until it is about size 10. Bend it into a ring a little smaller than the disk. Solder the ends of the wire together in the flame with

Digitized by Microsoft®

18-carat solder. Make both disk and ring clean, and solder the ring so that it makes a rim to the plate. Have ready some flattened gold wire, drawn several sizes smaller than the first, and having decided on your design, bend the wire edgewise into the shape required; dip it into borax water, and place it in position. Get a section of the design done in this way, then charge the work with snippets of 18-carat solder and tack the wires in their places. It is not necessary to flush the joints fully. Boil the work out and proceed until the panel is complete (fig. 133).

Some enamelers do not solder the cloisons; but if they are not soldered, when the enamel is fired again the cloisons may float about and get out of place. Still if the gold back is thick, and a few of the main cloisons and the outer ring are soldered, the remainder can well be left to be fixed by the melting of the enamel.

Now, having chosen your enamel, suppose opal for the ground, green for the leaves, blue for the dividing rays; grind up each color separately in the small agate mortar, and when it is like fine sand, wash away the milky portion of the enamel by pouring clean water over it until

Digitized by Microsoft®

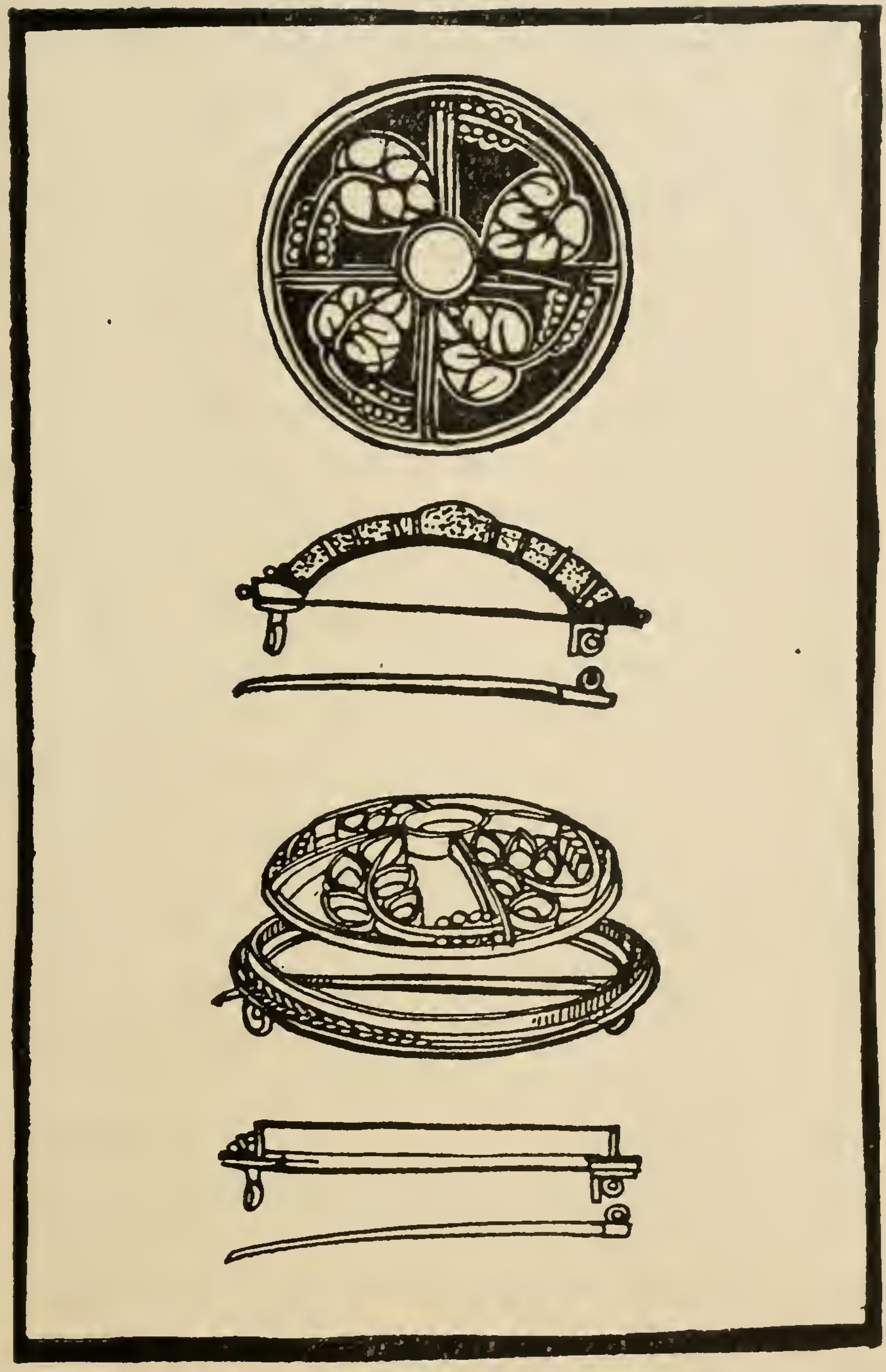


Fig. 133.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Enamel Work

the residue is clear, sparkling, and crystalline. Now, with a small spatula fill each cell or cloison with the proper color, taking care that no grains of color get into neighboring cells. Drain away the superfluous water with bits of clean blotting-paper, fill the other cells, and dry them in like manner. You will now make a support out of a square of thin sheet-iron, having the center bossed up to fit the underside of the brooch. Paint this over with loam or whitening and water with a little borax added. When it is dry, place the work upon the support, and having dried the enamel on an iron plate heated by a spirit lamp or a Bunsen burner, place it in the muffle for about a minute until the enamel fuses. Take it out, and boil in dilute acid to remove the dark scale of oxide which has formed on the surface. You will find that the enamel on fusing has greatly shrunk in volume; refill the cells with the same enamels as before and refire, repeating the process until the cells are full. When this happens, smooth the whole surface with a corundum file and water, wash the grit away with a little hydrofluoric acid and water (use India-rubber finger-stalls for this work, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

take care not to get any of the acid on your flesh). You can now fire the work again, just enough to glaze the surface, and after picking away the scale of oxid, polish it with putty on a soft buff. Make a frame and a setting for it out of 20 or 22-carat gold—the frame would be a piece of flat wire or a strip of No. 7 gage bent round flatwise into a flat ring and soldered. On this you will fix the thin band, size No. 3 or 4, to fit the enamel panel. In the angle between the edge of the flat ring and the upright face of the setting you may solder a row of small grains alternately with lengths of plain wire thus

••••——••••——   o——••o••——••o••——o

or double rows of right and left hand twist in short lengths, with small half-domes of thin gold soldered on at intervals. The catch and joint can now be made of 18-carat gold, and a pin out of 9-carat gold. When the frame and pin have been polished, the enamel center can be set and the edge burnished over evenly all round.

It is quite possible to solder the ring which takes the joint and catch on the back of the brooch before the cloisons are soldered on. The joints and the soldered

Digitized by Microsoft®

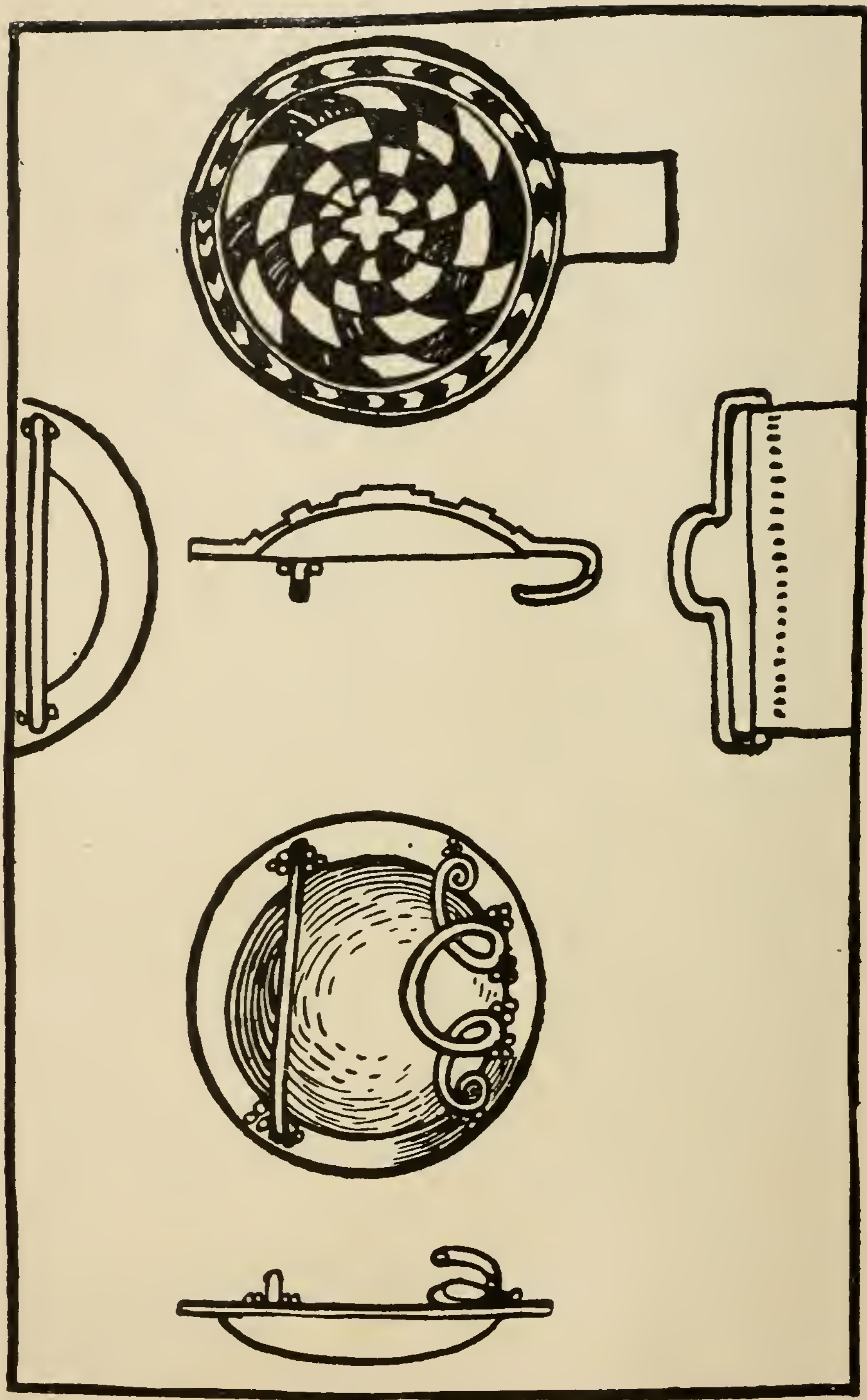


FIG. 134.

Digitized by Microsoft®

rim are protected from the heat by whitening or loam; the whole thing is then put in the furnace. Great care, however, is needed lest the joint or catch should drop off in the muffle. The latter way is the simpler looking, and the possibility of an imperfect setting is avoided. The brooch can also be made in fine silver, but if the last-named method is used for the catch it must be soldered with 18-carat gold solder; silver solder eats holes in the metal when heated in the muffle.

Champlevé Enamel—How to Make a Buckle in Enamel.—Take a piece of fine silver, size 15, and mark out upon it the size of the buckle. Dome the center slightly, and make a flattened border round the dome (fig. 134). The pattern you devise had better be a simple one for the first attempt. That given above you will probably find fairly simple to cut and yet elaborate enough to give you plenty of opportunity for arrangements of color. Before setting to work on the silver it will be well to make one or two trials on copper. Fix the metal either on an engraver's block with cement or on an ordinary pitch-block, or, if the work be small enough, on an engraving stick.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Have ready a few scorpers of different sizes and shapes (see figs. 135, 136), flat, half-round, and pointed, and a good oil stone. Hold the scorper blade between the thumb and forefinger, and the handle in the hollow of the palm. The point of the tool is guided by the thumb, and driven by the pressure of the palm. A little practise, or a few moments' instruction from a practical engraver, will soon put you in the right way. First wet the tip of the tool, make a sloping cut round the borders of the parts to be sunk, the deepest part of the cut being next the outline and a little within it, then remove the central portions with a half-round scorper; then take a straight scorper, and go all over the ground with a rocking side-to-side motion of the tool, making a zigzag cut thus . This roughens the ground, and makes the enamel hold

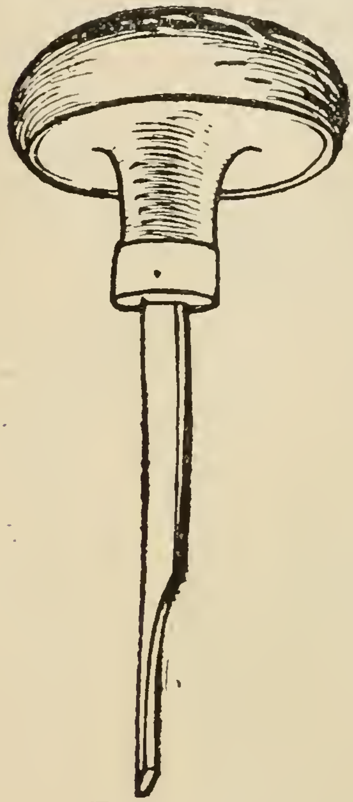


Fig. 135.

Digitized by Microsoft®

better than on a smooth surface. If translucent enamels are used, however, this surface has a mechanical look which is rather objectionable, and if the sides of each cell are slightly undercut the enamel will hold quite well. When you have got the whole

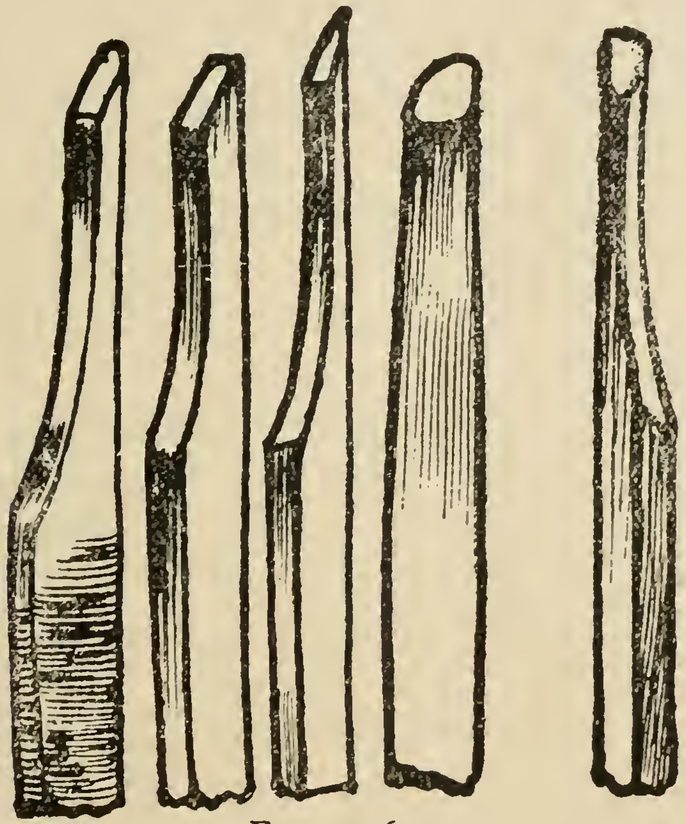


Fig. 136.

pattern cleanly cut you can now fix the bars which are to carry the belt, and solder them firmly with 18-carat gold solder, or with a specially hard alloy of silver and copper composed of—

Digitized by Microsoft®

	oz.	dwt.	grs.
Fine silver .	1	0	0
Fine copper .	0	5	0
	1	5	0

If the latter is used the soldered portions must be carefully protected from the heat of the furnace by loam and whitening or plaster of Paris and borax. When the soldering is done you must go over the work again with a flat scorper, and remove the white skin or "boil" produced by the pickle. If this is not done the enamel will not hold.

The next thing is the enameling. The best colors for silver are blues, greens, purples, and opal. A good scheme for this buckle would be deep but not dark blue, rich apple green, and opal and dark green in the outer border. Grind the enamels as before described, but not too finely. The coarser you can use the enamel the better the color; wash each clear of milkiness, and fill every cell with its proper color; dry the work, and fire in the muffle on a cradle of sheet-iron made to fit the back of the buckle, or in a crucible with a cover, using a blowpipe and foot-bellows. Greater brilliancy can be

Digitized by Microsoft®

obtained by using clear flux as the first layer, and adding the colors only after the first firing; or in some of the cells a ground of flux can be laid, and bits of gold foil, pricked full of holes (with a bunch of fine needles set in a cork), can be laid on the flux, covered over first with a thin layer of flux and then with a thin layer of green or a fine red. The cells will need refilling and refiring until they are full. The surface can now be filed smooth with a corundum file, washed in hydrofluoric and water, refired, and the whole afterward polished with rouge.

How to Make a Pendant in Limoges Enamels.—Take a piece of thin Swedish or French copper of the size required. With a burnisher rub it into a slight dome shape, and turn up the edge very slightly all round by burnishing it over the edge of a round-peened hammer fixed in a vise. Next pickle it in dilute nitric acid until the metal is perfectly clean. Paint the back of the plate with gum tragacanth and water, and sprinkle the dry waste enamel which results from the washings over the back from a pepper-pot or tea-strainer; shake off the superfluous enamel, and let it dry. Now take the color you

Digitized by Microsoft®

have selected for the foundation, grind it and wash clean, put it in a china-color saucer, mix a tiny drop of tragacanth with the enamel, and dab it over the face of the plaque with a brush. When the whole surface is evenly covered, take away any superfluous moisture with a bit of blotting-paper or a piece of clean, dry, old linen rag. Press the enamel down evenly and smoothly all over with a stiff palette-knife. Have ready an iron cradle or support domed to fit the underside of the plaque, and painted with loam or whitening as before described; dry the enamel over the spirit lamp, and fire in the muffle or in the crucible until the surface is smooth enough to reflect the palette-knife when held over it. Take it out, let it cool slowly, and when cold repair any faults in the surface by cleaning the metal in pickle and by rubbing down with a corundum file. Wash the surface clean, repair the holes with fresh enamel, and refire. You will now take some silver foil, prick it all over with the needle, and cut out leaves, as many as you need, and a piece of gold foil large enough for the rose; fix them in their places on the plaque with a little tragacanth, cover each with a thin layer of flux, and fire it. Now

Digitized by Microsoft®

cover each leaf thinly with green, and the rose with red enamel. You can get the effect of slight modeling by laying the enamel on the rose thicker at the top of the petals than at the bottom, but it must not be too thick or it will flake off. The spray can now be outlined carefully and firmly with a fine-pointed miniature brush and shell gold. This outline can be fixed by being fired. It must not be fired too much, or the particles of gold will sink into the enamel and the outline disappear. The work can now be set either as a pendant, as a panel in a necklace, or a center for a buckle or clasp.

How to Make Network Enamels or Plique à Jour.—In this method the enamel when finished has no ground, but is supported by a metal network within the substance of the enamel. Get a flat sheet of aluminum bronze or platinum about 10 gage, and burnish the surface quite bright. This is to form the temporary ground. Next take a piece of stout silver or gold wire, and bend it into the shape of the enclosing line of this proposed panel.

Next take some cloison wire, which you can buy, or make by drawing round wire through a draw-plate with oblong holes in

Digitized by Microsoft®

it, or the wire can be drawn through a square hole and flattened in the rolling-mill.

You can make a draw-plate out of a piece of an old flat file by heating it red hot, and driving a hardened taper steel punch of the right size through the steel. Larger holes can be made by driving the punch in still farther, or the hole can be made smaller by beating the hole down with a rounded hammer, and again driving the punch through to the required distance. Take the wire and bend it up to form the outline of the leaves, or the fish, or whatever pattern you may wish, and solder the outlines together. Take great care to have the whole well tied together (fig. 137). The leaves should touch each other, the stems, and, where possible, the frame. The strength of the work when finished depends on the thoroughness with which this is done. You now have the skeleton design. Boil it out and scrape the sides of the cloisons bright, lay the work on the burnished plate, fill the cells with ground enamel well washed, and fire in a fairly quick heat. Let it cool gradually, fill up the cells where the enamel is deficient, and refire. When all the cells

Digitized by Microsoft®

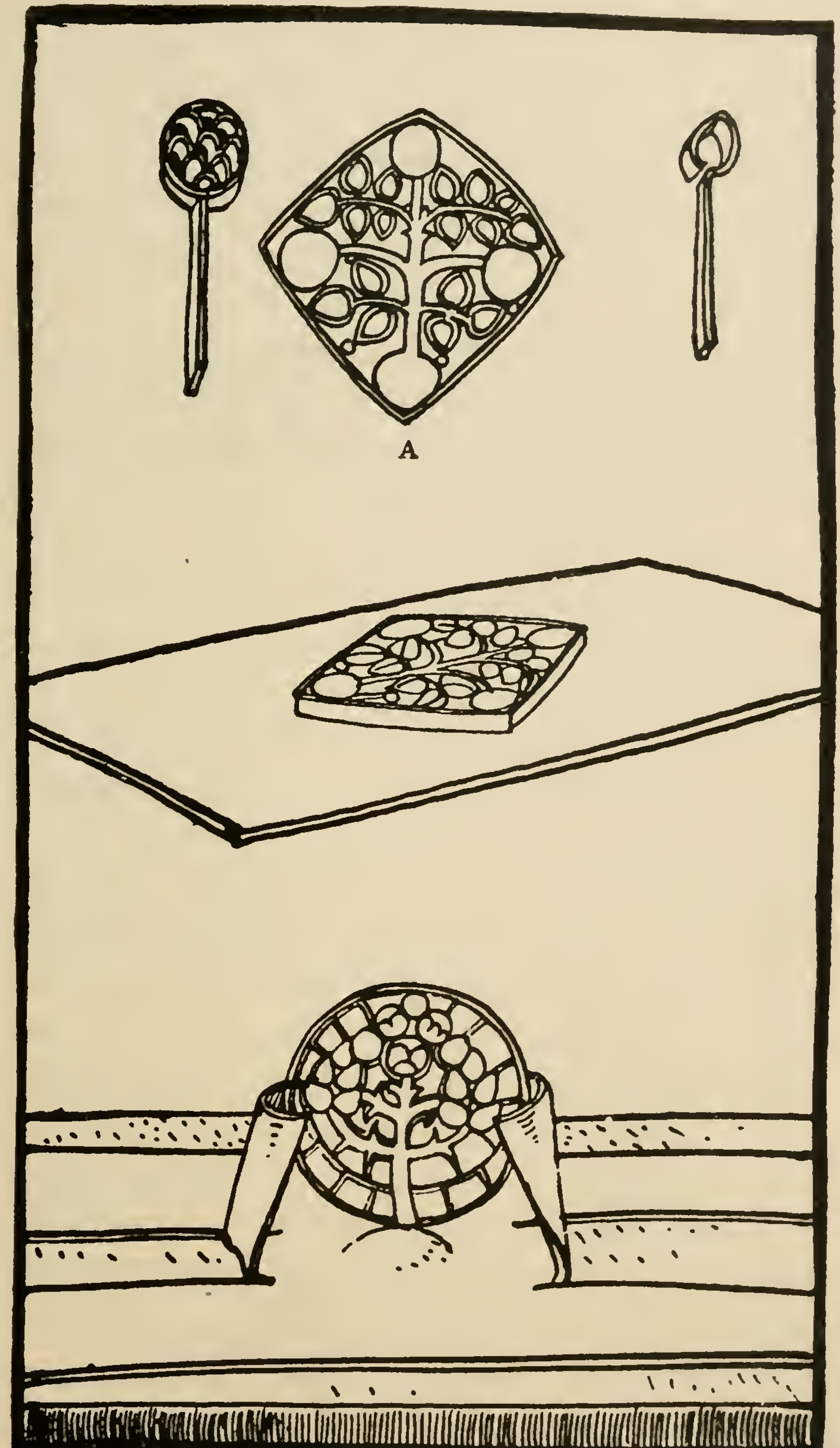


Fig. 137.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Enamel Work

are completely full lay the work on the table, with the enamel upward, and give the bronze a few sharp blows, and the enamel will be released, and can be polished with emery and water, crocus and water, and finished with rouge on a buff.

If you have no aluminum bronze or platinum use a sheet of copper about size 5, and when the enamel is complete paint the face over with two or three coats of varnish to protect the cloisons if they are of silver; if they are of gold no protection is necessary. Place the whole in sulfuric acid and water—one part of the acid to one of water. The copper will be dissolved away, and when it is as thin as thin paper, can be peeled off. The enamel may then be polished as before described. If the openings in the network are small enough, *i. e.* about $\frac{1}{8}$th of an inch across, the above methods can be dispensed with. Hold the network panel upright, and fill in the spaces with enamel mixed with a very little gum tragacanth. When done, fix it upright on a support cut out of thin sheet-iron. Fire it quickly in a very strong fire, so that the enamel runs like water in the spaces. It must be cooled carefully,

Digitized by Microsoft®

and not taken away from the heat too suddenly, or the enamels may crack away from the cloisons and the effect spoilt. A panel like fig. 138 would look well in a skeleton setting, and would do either for a brooch or a pendant for a necklace. Another way is to cut out the spaces with a piercing-saw, leaving the cloisons slightly thicker, and filing them down afterward. This does away with the need of solder, but it is more laborious, and the result lacks the freedom and life of the methods just described.

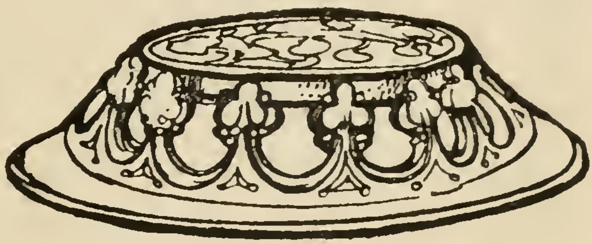


Fig. 138.

How to do an Intaglio or Deep-Cut Enamel.—In this work the forms are carved or modeled below the surface of the metal, at the bottom of a shallow pit, as it were. The pit is afterward filled up with enamel, fired, and then ground and polished level with the surface of the metal. Where the carving is deepest the enamel is darkest in color, and *vice versa.* Having decided on your design, suppose a leaf pattern as at A (fig. 137), take a piece of hardish modeling-wax and make a model in very

Digitized by Microsoft®

low relief. When the outline is clean, and definitely expresses your intention, make a mold from it in the finest plaster of Paris. This will give you a good idea of the depth of your cutting. Copy this in silver or copper—the metal should not be less than 16 gage, or you will soon cut through to the other side. Fix a piece of the metal, cut nearly to the size and shape you require, on an engraving stick or on a pitch-block, and with a spit-stick outline the design; then cut the design deeply round the edges within this line. Thus, if for a leaf, the cross-section of your cutting would be thus . The stalks would be deep grooves, and the flowers carved to suggest them as nearly as possible. The sides of the sinkings must be kept upright; if they have become irregular, they can be trued up with a justifier, which is a scorper ground with two cutting edges at an angle to each other as in fig. 139. B and C are the cutting edges. When the modeling is as complete as you can make it, and the surface of it everywhere bright, put the enamel in and press

Fig. 139.

Digitized by Microsoft®

it down; when fired, and the enamel filed and polished, the relief is, as it were, translated into a shaded drawing in color. If you do figure-work, the faces, hands, and feet can be left in metal and afterward engraved in line, the backgrounds and draperies alone being deep cut and enameled. An etcher's dry-point is useful for fine work in the hair and features. The lines of the engraving can be afterward filled in with etching-ball or thick black paint or shoemaker's heel-ball.

Small figure-panels in raised gold or silver can be produced by first doing the work in ordinary gesso on a piece of smooth, hard wood. Fine silver or fine gold, rolled to the thinness of common note-paper, is then annealed, and burnished over the relief in the same way that a schoolboy makes the foil copies of a shilling. When the metal impression is as complete as the gesso original it can be fixed on the pitch-block, and the modeling carried still farther with pointed burnishers. This, when enameled back and front, can be set in a frame and fixed in a bracelet or a pendant. Panels for altar-crosses, candlesticks, etc., can be so produced. They can be strengthened

Digitized by Microsoft®

by backing with cement composition. Make the wall of the setting which is to enclose them $\frac{1}{8}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ inch deeper than would be necessary for the enamel itself. When everything is ready for setting the enamels, melt some rosin in a pipkin, and add to it about half its bulk of plaster of Paris or powdered whitening; stir it well, pour it into the setting, warm the enamel slightly, and press it into its place; and when cold, burnish the edge of the setting carefully over the enamel and clean it with methylated spirit and a soft rag. Almost any composition with a resinous base which sets hard would, however, serve the purpose equally well. Figures in higher relief can be done by taking a cast in type-metal from a model in wax. The thin metal is then rubbed and burnished over the type-metal and frequently annealed during the process. Or the reverse of the model may be cast in type-metal or pewter, and the thin gold or silver rubbed into it. This, of course, can not be done if there is any undercutting.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXV

Hinges for Casket—Drawing the Tube—The Mandrel—The Liner—The Joint Tool—Soldering the Joints—The Pin

TAKE a strip of metal, say size 6, thrice wider than the diameter of the proposed hinge. Suppose the hinge to be $\frac{1}{8}$th of an inch in diameter, the width of the strip of metal would be $\frac{3}{8}$. Mark this off the sheet with the dividers, running one leg of the dividers down the edge as a guide (fig. 140). Snip off the angles at one end of the strip as shown in fig. 141. This is to make the end taper, so that it will slip into the hole in the draw-plate. Now fix in the vise a block of wood one inch wide in which you have made a few graduated semicircular notches (fig. 142), and with the end of the hammer beat the strip of metal into a hollow gutter lengthwise (fig. 143). Bend it still farther round at one end until it is a rough tube-shape (fig. 144), and anneal it in the fire or blowpipe flame. While it is still hot rub it over inside and out with a little bees-wax. Take a steel mandrel, which is a

Hinges for Casket

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hinges for Casket

length of polished steel wire, as thick as the inside of the proposed tube, file the

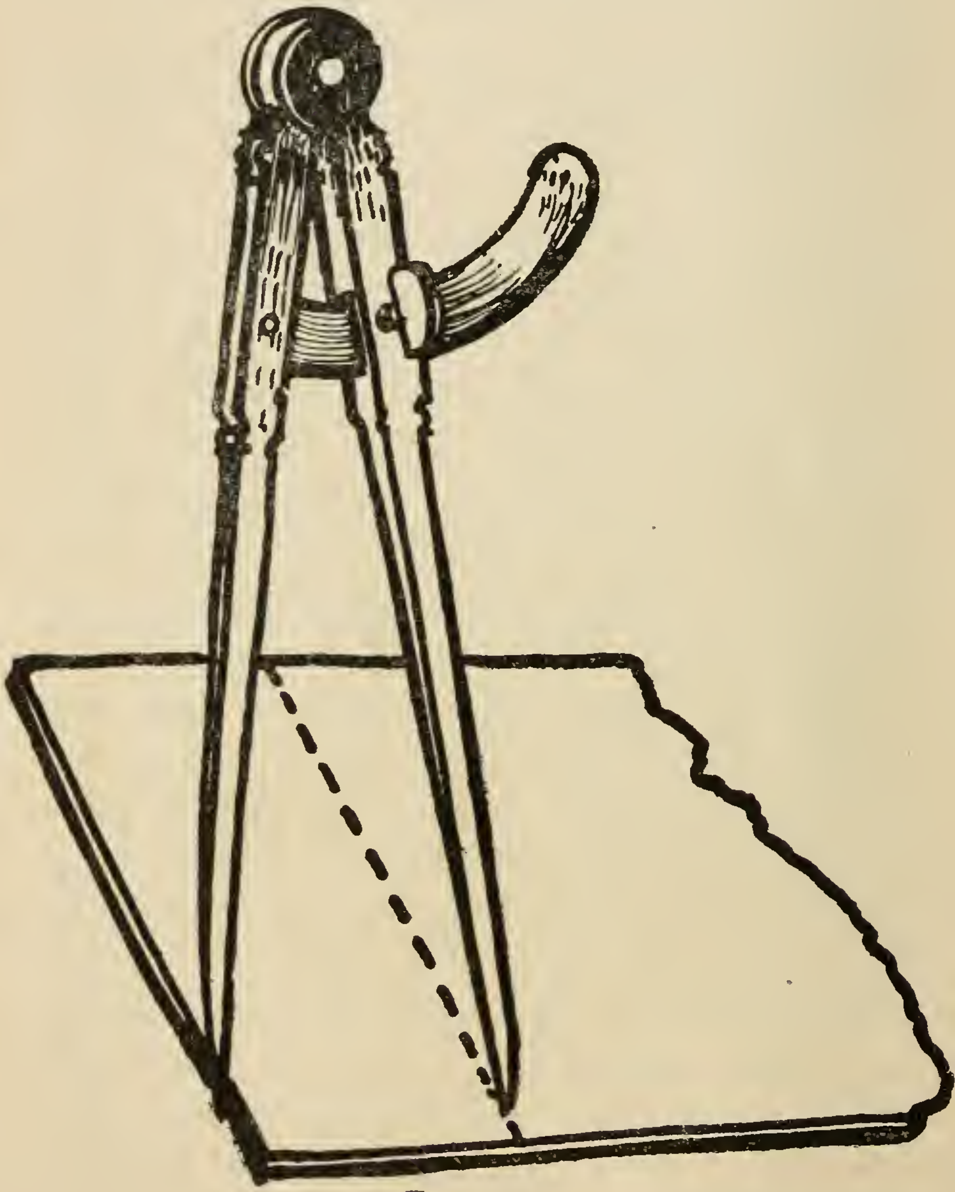


Fig. 140.

end taper (see fig. 145). Place the taper end in the rough tube, and squeeze the

Digitized by Microsoft®

metal round the mandrel at the end (fig. 146). Now fix the draw-plate in the vise, slip mandrel and tube together through a suitable hole in the draw-plate, and draw them by hand through successive holes until the metal becomes a tube which nearly fits the mandrel. Now place the draw-plate on the draw-bench, and draw the tube and mandrel together until the latter fits fairly tightly. Now put the reverse end of the mandrel into a hole in the plate which exactly fits it, and draw it out either by hand or with the draw-bench. The tube is now complete. It can be made still smaller if necessary by drawing it through the holes in the plate without the mandrel.

Hinges for Casket

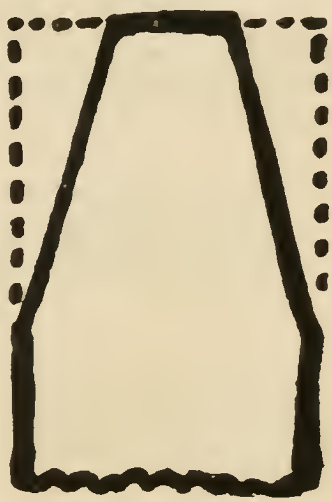


FIG. 141.

In like manner draw another tube a little larger in diameter, so that the tube first made will just fit inside. Anneal both tubes; saw the large tube in two halves lengthwise, and take two strips of metal as wide as the edge of the casket and as long, and solder a half tube to each (fig. 147). File away the outside

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hinges for Casket

Fig. 142.

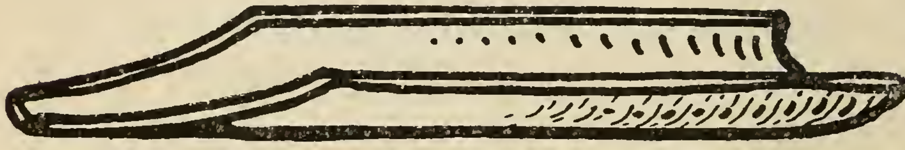


Fig. 143.

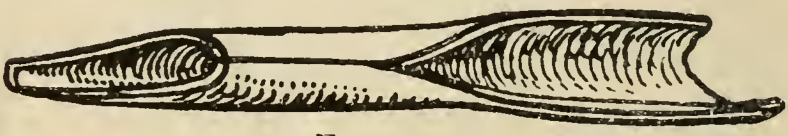


Fig. 144.

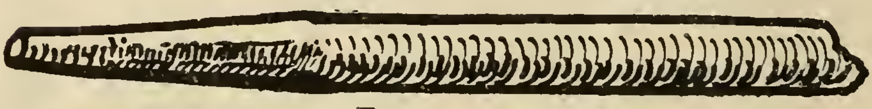


Fig. 145.

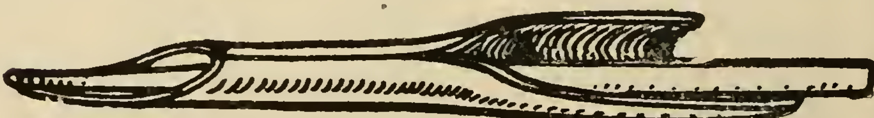


Fig. 146.

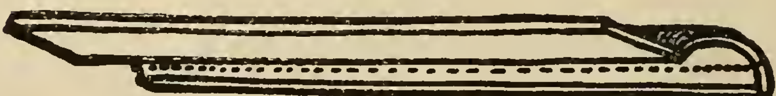


Fig. 147.

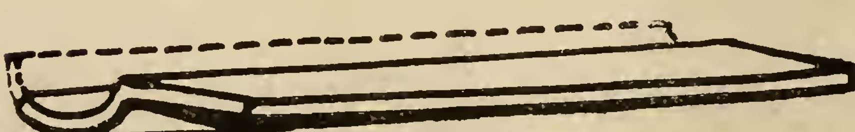


Fig. 148.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

quarter of each semicircle (figs. 148 and 149) to allow for the lid to open. Divide the length of the casket into an unequal number of small spaces from $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to one inch, according to the greater or less length of the hinge; cut the smaller tube into corresponding lengths, and file the joints flat in the joint-tool (fig. 150). Fit the two halves of the hinge together, and lay the short lengths of tube along the groove close together (fig. 149), and with a small panel of solder tack the alternate lengths to one side of the hinge (see fig. 151), taking care not to run the solder into the joints between the tubes. Take the two halves apart, and soundly solder each length of tube in its place. Do not forget to clean the work in pickle after each soldering. The hinge is

Hinges for Casket

Fig. 149.

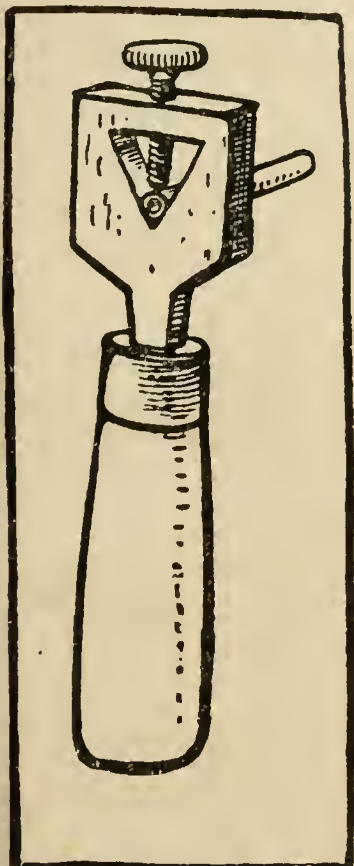


Fig. 150.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Hinges for Casket

now ready for the pin, which may be a piece of brass wire drawn to the proper size and slipped into place. The pin must not, however, be fixed until the casket is other-

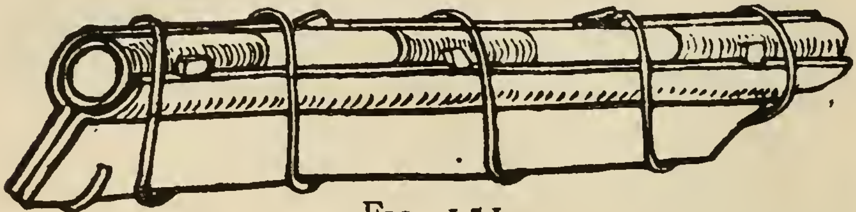


FIG. 151.

wise complete. The work may now be filed up clean, made true, and each half carefully fitted and soldered into its place on the lid of the box.

CHAPTER XXVI

Moldings—The Swage-Block—Filing the Grooves—Drawing the Metal

Moldings

FOR this you will need a swage-block (see fig. 152) with movable dies (see figs. 153 and 154).

In the upper surface of one of the dies file a groove of the shape of the molding you require as in fig. 153. The groove must be trumpet-shaped, the smaller end being the exact section you wish the molding to be. This must be done

Digitized by Microsoft®

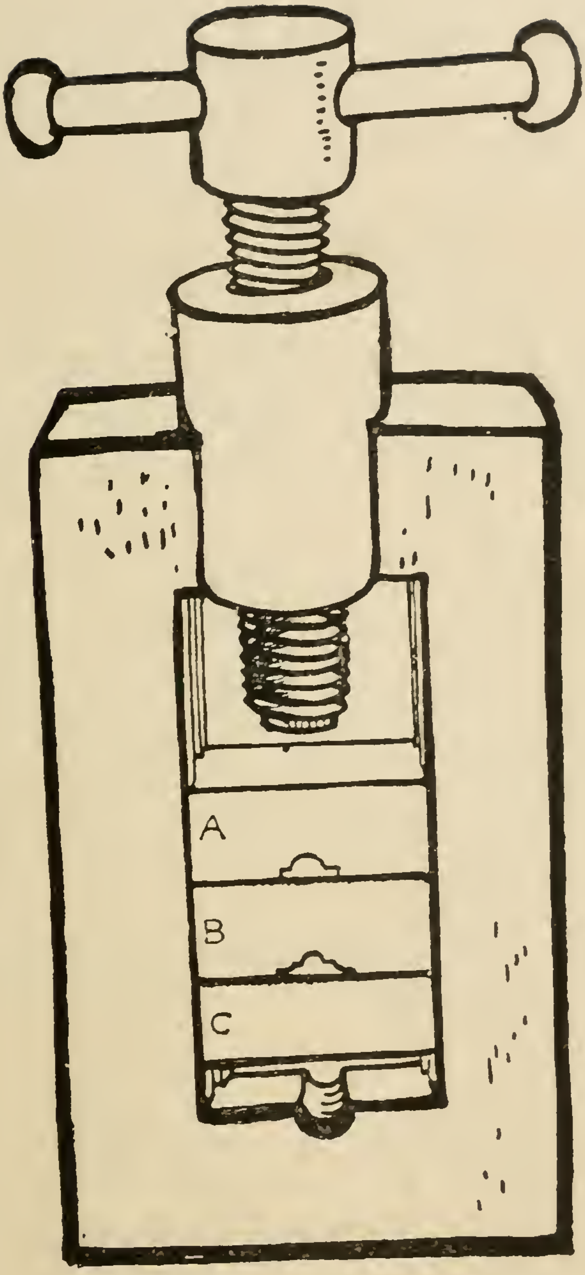


FIG. 152.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

with great care, as the smallest mark will show on the molding. Now cut a strip of metal slightly thicker and wider than the proposed molding. Having annealed it, pass one end through the groove you have made in the swage-block, and screw the plain block down so as to press slightly on the metal. Now fix the swage-block in the vise, take the draw-tongs and pull the strip through with a steady movement. Pass the strip through the swage again and turn the screw slightly, pressing the metal more closely into the mold. Repeat this, annealing the metal from time to time until you have made the molding as complete and as thin as you wish.

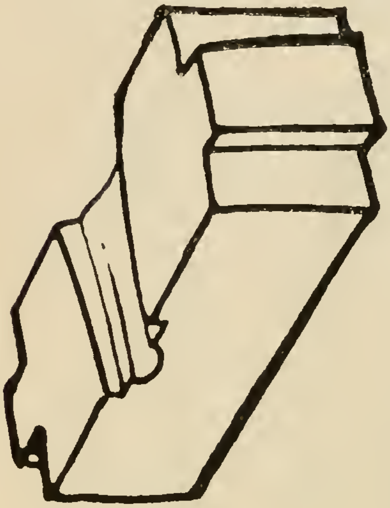


FIG. 153.

FIG. 154.

By modifying the section of the groove in the swage, and by filing the lower sur-

Digitized by Microsoft®

face of the upper swage-block, hollow moldings of almost any section can be produced, provided, of course, that no part is undercut. Moldings

CHAPTER XXVII

Polishing—Materials Required—Polishing Silver Work—A Simpler Method—Burnishing—Polishing Gold Work—Care of Polishing Waste—Cleanliness of Tools

THE materials required will be polishing sticks, which are flat strips of wood covered on one side with chamois leather—one for use with oil and pumice and one for rouge and water. A ring-stick, a round, tapering leather-covered rod of wood, will be found useful for polishing the insides of rings. A few mops, scratch-brushes, and a leather buff, together with pumice-stone, rotten-stone, crocus, sticks of charcoal, and a small quantity of jeweler's rouge, will complete what is necessary for most kinds of polishing. Polishing

Polishing Silver Work.—Silver work is polished in several ways according to the degree of luster desired.

For a very brilliant polish the method

Digitized by Microsoft®

Polishing is as follows:—After the work has been pickled or boiled out clean in dilute acid, the whole visible surface is carefully stoned over with sticks of Water of Ayr stone, working with a circular motion to avoid scratching or grooving the metal. Internal angles, narrow grooves, and shallow lines, are stoned with thin slips of slate. The work must be wiped clean from time to time to see that the surface is being evenly polished. The object of stoning is the removal of the film of oxid produced by heat, and all marks of the tools and files. The surface is next more finely polished with charcoal and oil; you can add a little crocus to hasten the process if you wish. This done, polish again with fine rottenstone and oil, taking care in each process to avoid lines, scratches, or marks of any kind. The final polish is given with jeweler's rouge and water, and the work washed in hot soap and water to remove all traces of grease. This process is laborious, but the result, when properly carried out, is most brilliant.

A more rapid method, used for ordinary work or for polishing repoussé, is as follows:—The work is stoned as before and then scratch-brushed on the lathe, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

sprinkled from time to time with stale beer. Moldings, bosses, ribs, or projections from the surface can be brightened still further by burnishing with a smooth burnisher. A little soap and water used with the tool makes it work more easily. Indian workers simplify the process still further. The surface of the metal, after being carefully whitened in pickle, is scraped over with the scraper, and afterward vigorously burnished with agate and hematite burnishers; but unless both scraping and burnishing are most carefully done, the work, as might be expected, will look rough and unfinished.

Polishing Gold Work.—The process of polishing gold work is very similar to that first described for silver. The work is boiled out as before and stoned. Then put a little finely powdered pumice into a shallow vessel, and mix it into a paste with olive oil. Take a boxwood polishing-stick—a skewer or a slip of any hard wood will do—dip the point in the oil and pumice, and rub over the whole work, cleaning out crevices, sunk lines, etc., most carefully. If this be not done, the oxidized surface at the bottom of the hollows will remain as whitish patches scattered over

Digitized by Microsoft®

Polishing

the otherwise polished surface with a disfiguring effect. In time this defect is removed, the hollows get filled with dirt, and the work looks more interesting. It is better not to rely on the result of time; besides, the reflected light from the bottom of the hollows when polished often makes the work look richer and more full of color.

When you have gone over the whole surface with the oil and pumice, the process is continued with oil and crocus, and completed with rouge and water. In the case of both gold and silver work, the polishings and scourings of the metal should always be kept and refined to recover the precious metal which has been removed in the process. The burnishers, mops, and polishing-brushes must all be kept perfectly clean and free from dust. Unless this be done, the work may be scratched and spoiled when most near completion.

The burnishers should be occasionally polished on the buff, and kept wrapped up in chamois leather when not in use.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXVIII

Coloring, Darkening, or Oxidizing Silver and Gold Work—Materials Required—Darkening Gold—Coloring Copper

Coloring, Darkening, or Oxidizing Silver and Gold Work

SILVER work, when newly whitened and polished, always looks unpleasantly white and glaring. Time will always remedy this, but the process can be hastened. This can be done by oxidizing the surface with any of the compounds of sulfur. The work may be exposed to the fumes of sulfur, or it may be washed with solutions of any of the chemical compounds of sulfur, such as potassium sulfid, ammonium sulfid, barium sulfid, etc. The ammonium sulfid is what is most generally used, and it gives a range of color to polished silver, varying from pale golden straw through deep crimson to purple and bluish black. The depth of the color depends on the strength of the solution and the length of time the metal is exposed to its action.

The simplest way of applying it is to make a hot solution of the ammonium sulfid—not too strong, a pale straw color

Digitized by Microsoft®

Coloring, Darkening, or Oxidizing Silver and Gold Work

will give about the proper strength. Do this in the open air if possible, as the odor disengaged is most offensive; then brush a little of the solution over the work you desire to darken. Watch closely until you perceive the color you wish for, then swiftly wash the work in clean water, and dry it. If the surface be now rubbed gently with a chamois leather the film of oxid is removed from the projecting portions of the work, giving it a much richer, older appearance.

The chemical must not be allowed to penetrate behind settings or the brilliancy of the stones will be spoiled. Neither should it be allowed to remain on the hands or they will be badly stained.

Alloyed gold can be darkened in the same way, only it is necessary to warm the metal until it is almost too hot to handle or the sulfid will not act upon it. Gold of 9, 12, 15 carat can be darkened by heat alone, and often takes the most beautiful shade of purple if the heating is arrested at the right moment.

Copper can be darkened either by the ammonium sulfid or by heat, and if brushed over while warm with a stiff brush and a very little pure beeswax will

Digitized by Microsoft ®

keep its luster and color unchanged for a long time. In gold work of any intricacy it is often difficult and sometimes impossible to polish the inner portions of the ornament, and when finished the work looks unpleasant and incomplete. This difficulty can be obviated by first slightly gilding the whole work, and then polishing it in the ordinary way. A recipe for this is given at the end of the book.

Coloring, Darkening, or Oxidizing Silver and Gold Work

CHAPTER XXIX

Methods of Gilding—Mercury Gilding

Gilding

Mercury gilding is done by means of an amalgam of gold with mercury. It is the oldest way of gilding, and is still the best, because the gold is carried into the surface of the metal, and is not merely a thin skin more or less adherent.

Take 8 parts of mercury and one part of fine gold. Put the gold into a small crucible and heat it on the forge with a blowpipe, and when the crucible reddens pour in the mercury, and stir it into the gold with an iron rod until you have a pasty mass. Empty the crucible into a

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gilding bowl of clean water, and wash the amalgam carefully by kneading it with the thumb and finger against the sides of the vessel. This is to get rid of the excess of mercury. Then take the amalgam, place it in a bit of chamois leather, and squeeze out the remainder of the uncombined mercury. Because this excess of mercury contains a portion of gold it should be kept separate, and used when you wish to make amalgam again.

Next dissolve mercury in pure nitric acid in the proportion of 10 parts of mercury to 11 of nitric acid; dilute the solution with 20 times its mass of water, shake the mixture well, and keep it in a stoppered bottle for use.

Boil out the objects you wish to gild, and remove all grease with hot soda, and dip the work in the solution of nitrate of mercury. Take a small scratch-brush of brass wire, dip it first in the solution, and then take up a small portion of the amalgam, and spread it carefully and evenly over the whole surface to be gilded.

Some workers mix the amalgam and the nitrate of mercury together, and dip the object to be gilded in the mixture. The first method is probably less wasteful.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Then hold the work over a charcoal brazier placed in a fireplace with a glass screen across the opening. This enables you to see the progress of the evaporation without the danger of inhaling the vapor of mercury. The work should not be laid on the coals, but in an iron pan or on an iron plate over the coals. When the mercury has evaporated rub the object with a soft brush, and polish with the scratch-brush and a little stale beer, or with rouge and water on the buff. If the work appears spotty, drop a little strong nitric acid on the spots, afterward plunge the whole object in weak pickle (5 of water to one of acid), and then touch the defective portions with fresh amalgam, and evaporate as before.

Another method is to soak linen rags in a solution of chloride of gold. Dry and burn the rags, carefully preserving the ashes. Thoroughly clean the object you wish to gild, and rub the ashes with a bit of damp leather over the surface. Continue this until you see the gold-color appear; then wash the object well, and burnish the surface with a highly polished burnisher. The washings and every particle of the ashes should be carefully kept because they

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gilding contain minute quantities of gold which can all be recovered when desired. Other methods are given in the Appendix.

CHAPTER XXX

A Method of Shaping and Cutting the Softer Precious Stones—The Stones most easily Cut—The Cements Required—Drilling Stone—The Engraver's Lathe—Polishing

Shaping and Cutting Precious Stones

THE softer precious stones, such as moonstones, opals, chrysoprase, peridot, and turquoise, may be shaped either with the corundum file and water, or with emery-wheels fixed on a polishing-spindle. In the latter case it will be necessary to have a water-can, with a tiny tap soldered in the bottom, hung over the emery-wheel in such a way that a drop of water may fall on the wheel at frequent intervals while you are grinding. To protect yourself from being splashed, you will need a metal catch-pan, which will collect the drip and the water which flies from the wheel. The stone to be shaped must be fixed on the end of a rod of wood about as thick as a pencil and 8 inches long. Many people use cane for this purpose; being flexible, it is less likely to jar the

Digitized by Microsoft®

stone when the latter is pressed against the wheel; but a piece of common fire-wood will do just as well. Warm a lump of ordinary graver's cement, and mold it on the end of the stick with a wetted finger to a roughly conical shape (fig. 155). Warm the end again, and press the stone, also slightly warmed, into the end of the cement, and mold the cement closely round it with the finger. When cool, the stone can be pressed against the wheel and shaped to whatever form you please. A fine surface can be given on a wheel of finer grain and the stone polished on a leather buff with fine emery and water, finishing up on another buff with putty powder and water. If the stone is very tender, as, for example, opals often are, it may be well to use what is called soft cement for fixing the stone to the polishing-stick. This is made of finely sifted wood ashes, well

Shaping and Cutting Precious Stones


FIG. 155.

Digitized by Microsoft®

kneaded into melted suet until the required consistency is obtained.

Stones can be slit by using a bow made out of a tapered rod of ash about 2 feet long strung with iron wire. The wire is fastened 4 inches away from the butt, so that the latter may be used as a handle. This wire, anointed with emery, is used as a saw. Much patience is needed, as it cuts very slowly. A quicker result is obtained by cutting out a disk of soft iron and using it as a circular saw, with oil and emery. A lapidary's slitter is merely a larger disk used horizontally. The defect of the small iron disk is that it is difficult to get a clean cut with it. Still, for cutting turquoise or opal matrix it does well enough, if worked steadily and with patience. The stone to be slit should be cemented to a block of wood instead of a stick, and the block firmly secured to the table of the polishing-lathe, yet in such a way that it may be pressed gradually against the edge of the wheel as the latter slowly cuts its way through the stone. It is useless to attempt to hasten the process. The least hurry may easily ruin a good stone. The advantage of the methods just described is that they

Digitized by Microsoft ®

are within the reach of any one, and with care can be made to produce very good results. It must be remembered that native workers in the East do their work with tools even more rudimentary than these.

Shaping and Cutting Precious Stones

For drilling stones, a drilling or seal-engraver's lathe-head will be needed, as it is important that the drill should revolve with great speed and steadiness. This lathe-head is a simple pillar of iron or brass, with a small wheel revolving in a slot. The axle of the wheel is a steel tube working in tin bearings. The drills and cutting tools are fixed in this tube with melted tin or lead. The drills themselves are small tubes of iron, and the cut is given by means of diamond dust. Small rods, with variously shaped ends, taper knobs of different sizes, and tiny wheels, are used, with diamond dust to give a cutting surface, in engraving seals.

By using small wheels of thick copper screwed on the spindle of the polishing-lathe, some of the harder stones can be shaped with oil and emery, and polished on similar wheels of tin, the final polishing being done on wheels of wood or with fine emery, followed by leather and

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Shaping and Cutting Precious Stones

putty powder; but, if any considerable amount of work is required, it is better to get hold of an intelligent lapidary, who will cut the stones for you much more quickly than you could.

CHAPTER XXXI

Piece-Molding—The Model—The Casting-Flasks—The Sand—Filling the Flasks—Making the Mold—The Charcoal—The False Cores—The Back Mold—The Core of the Model—Arranging the Gates—Drying the Mold

Piece-Molding

WORK that is undercut, or in any way complicated, can only be cast by piece-molding or by the waste-wax process. Suppose it necessary, for example, to make a piece-mold cast of the symbol of St. Luke designed as one of the feet of a cross or candlestick. First make your model in wax or clay, and take a cast of it in plaster of Paris. Next take a pair of casting-flasks, large enough to hold the model and give plenty of room for the pour of the metal. Lay the lower or eye portion of the flask on a flat board, and fill it with fine casting-sand made very slightly moist. The sand must be such as will bind well under pressure. Hampstead sand, which

Digitized by Microsoft®

is naturally mixed with a small quantity of fine loam, is very useful for this purpose.

Piece-Molding

The sand must be well rammed with a mallet into the flask, and great care should be taken to compress the sand well against the sides of the flask, or it may drop out when the mold is turned over. This done, strike off the excess of material with a straight-edge, and adding a few more handfuls of sand, lay a stout board on the top, and drive the sand well in by evenly distributed blows of a mallet. Again strike off the superfluous sand, and lay the model to be cast well within the flask, so that when you make the spout or pour for the metal there may be a good weight of metal above the model. Yet it must not be too far away or you will be in danger of getting a spongy cast, because the metal will have cooled in its passage into the mold. Having fixed the position of the model, take a metal spatula or modeling-tool and excavate a hollow in the sand just large enough to receive half the thickness of the model; lay the model on its back in the hollow, and with some very fine sand fill in underneath the model, so that every part of it

Digitized by Microsoft®

Piece-Molding

is well supported—until, in fact, you have taken a partial impression of the surface. Now dust some finely powdered brick-dust from a rough canvas bag—a bag made of sacking or nailcloth will do perfectly well for this; with a camel's-hair mop, such as gilders use, brush this well into the surface,

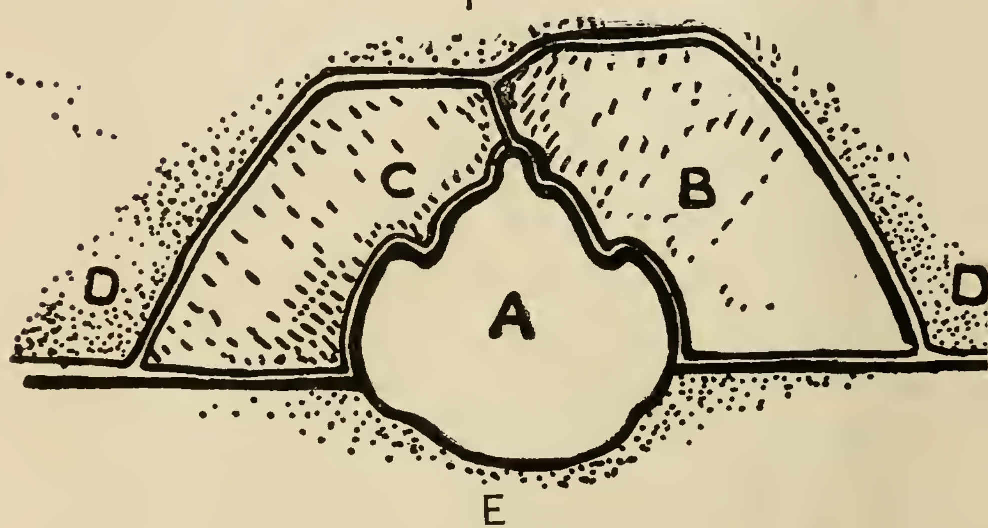


Fig. 156.

and blow away all that does not now adhere. You will now proceed to make the false cores. These are movable portions of the molds so arranged as to avoid the undercutting (fig. 156). Again dust the model A with a little finely powdered French chalk, and brush the superfluity away with the camel's-hair mop, and, taking a little

Digitized by Microsoft®

fine sand, press it carefully with the fingers into the interstices of the form, and build the sand up into a block with sloping sides. (See fig. 156, B.) With a small mallet tap the sand all over evenly, both to

Piece-Molding

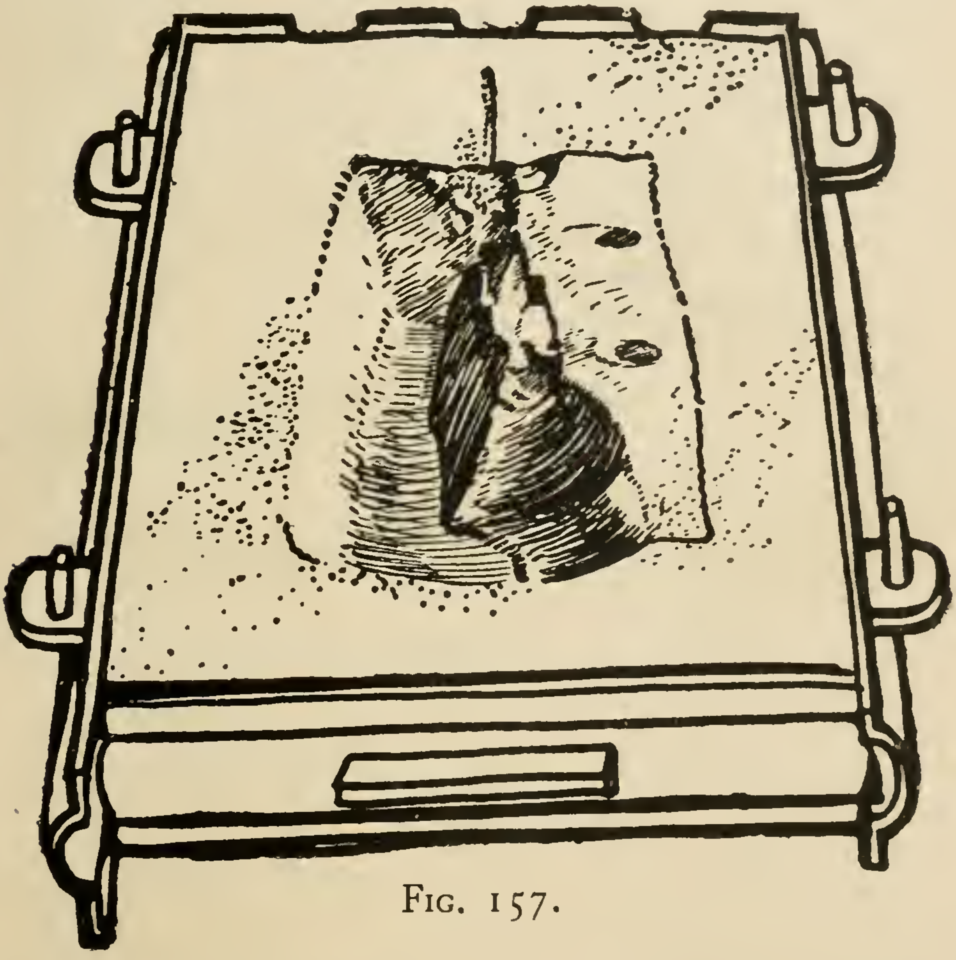


Fig. 157.

drive it home and also to consolidate and shape it. Then with the flat steel spatula or modeling-tool cut away the sand along the line you have chosen for the seam (see fig. 156, F), pare the surface of the block

Digitized by Microsoft®

Piece-Molding

into a regular and even shape. Now stick a fork made of two thick strong needles or pointed wires inserted in a slip of hard wood (see fig. 158) into the block, and having laid the flask on a flat board, tap the under side of the board smartly, but not too vigorously, until you see that the core has separated slightly from the model, lift it carefully away, and dust the molded surface with finely powdered

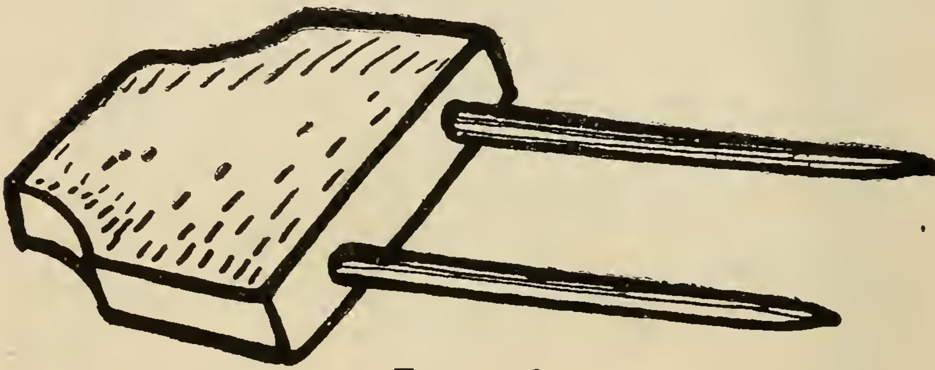


FIG. 158.

charcoal from a coarse muslin bag, and replace the core on the mold; tap it gently but firmly home again. Proceed in like manner with the opposite side of the model (see fig. 156, C). You will now have to make the mold for the upper part of the head. This you will do in the back-mold, which will be made in the peg half of the flask (see figs. 156, D, and 157). Place this upper half of the flask in position. Having

Digitized by Microsoft ®

dusted the whole upper surface of the false cores and the under mold, press some of the finest sand over the top of the head of the model, and then fill the whole mold with ordinary casting-sand and ram it well into place with the mallet handle and afterward with the head of the mallet. Strike off the superfluity as before, and as before again pile on sand and drive it down with the flat board and the mallet. Now lift the peg half away, and you will have the impression of the false cores (fig. 156, D, shows the section of the back-mold) and also a mold of the top of the animal's head, thus completing one-half of the mold. Now dust charcoal over the impression of the head and replace the upper half of the flask. Carefully turn the whole mold over and lift the under half free from the model, leaving the model and the false cores resting in the upper half of the mold. With a spoon or a spatula scoop out two shallow hollows in what are now the upper faces of the false cores. This is to give a register and to enable you to place the false cores in their proper positions when the mold is taken apart (see figs. 157 and 159). Now shake out the sand which

Piece-Molding

Digitized by Microsoft®

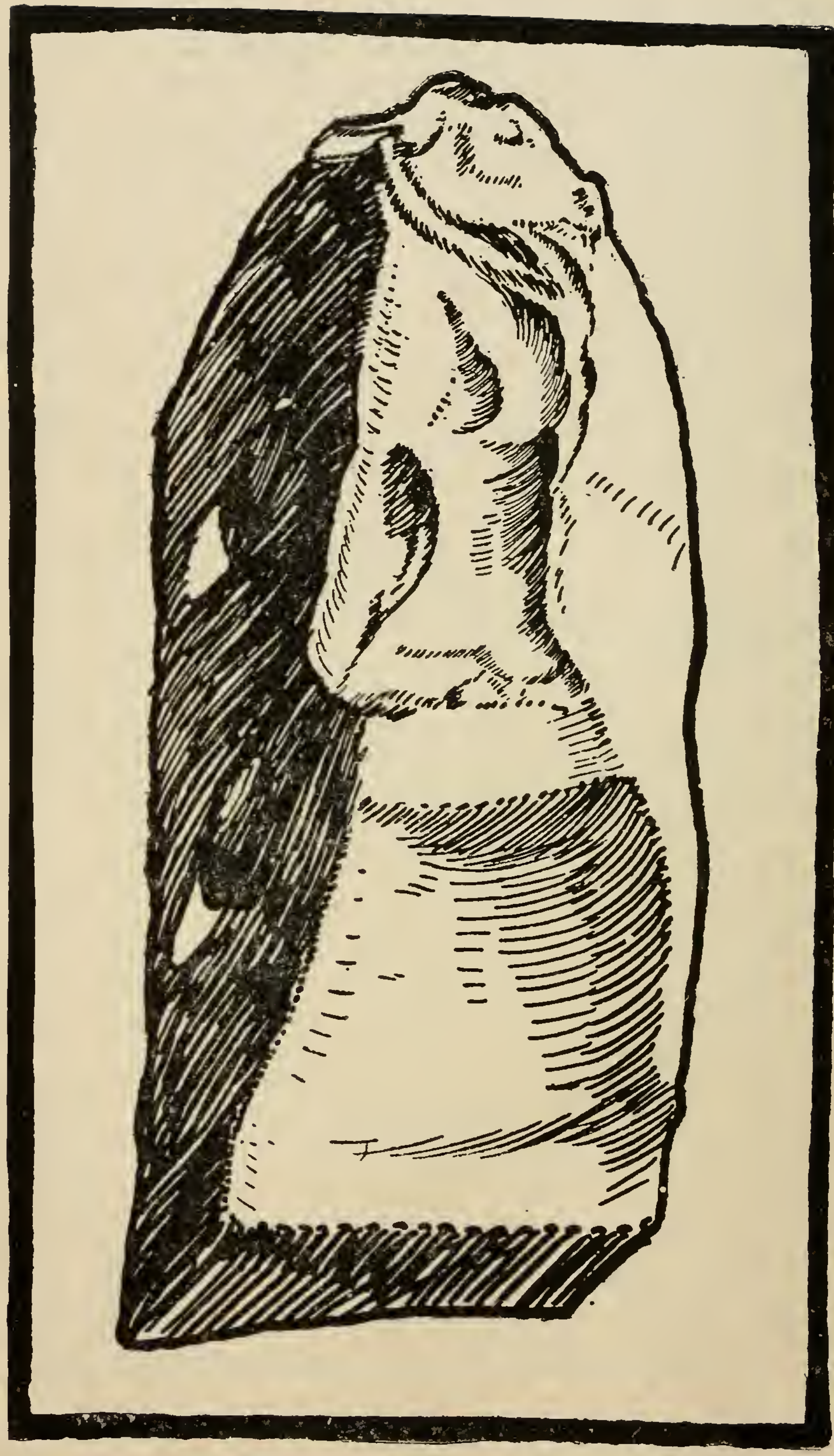


Fig. 159.

Digitized by Microsoft®

you had previously beaten into the under mold, and replacing the frame in position on the upper flask, dust the mold over with brick-dust as before, carefully press fine sand over the back of the model, then fill in with the ordinary sand, ram it well home, and fill up the frame as before. Again lift off the mold, dust the new impression with charcoal, and replace the mold. With a knife loosen all the sand nearly down to the bottom of the upper flask, and again fill in and ram the mold completely full. The object of this is to incorporate the sand and the charcoal facing. If this be neglected the cast will be poor, because the charcoal by itself can not resist the flow of the metal. The latter carries away the fine edges and surfaces, and instead of a smooth cast you get a rough and ragged one. The mold is now complete save for the vents and the pour, if you intend to make a solid casting. If you wish it to be hollow you will need a core made thus:—

Piece-Molding

You will take a piece of iron wire, about $\frac{1}{8}$ inch diameter and 2 inches long, and place it in the mold against the upper part of the head of the bull in a little groove scratched in the surface as shown

Digitized by Microsoft®

Piece-Molding

in the figure. Now take a longer piece of thick wire, just long enough to reach nearly to the bottom of the case and to project 2 inches beyond the head of the bull. Wind it round with a length of thin copper wire to give the sand a better hold, and paint over the whole wire with stiff flour paste. This makes the sand adhere to the wire. Now open the mold, and, having removed the model, replace the false cores in their position, close the mold carefully, and turn it over. Lift off the upper half, and from the opening left between the false cores fill to half its depth with fine sand the place occupied by the model. Now lay the core wire in position, and carefully fill the remaining space with the sand, pressing it into its place against the sides of the mold with a modeling-tool. Take the sand up between your thumb and finger, and use it as if it were modeling-clay, pressing it carefully into place. Now pile on a little more sand to make up that portion of the model which projected above the false cores, and press down the other half of the mold on this, so that the complete model of the bull is built up in sand around the central wire (see fig. 160). This

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 160.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Piece-Molding

done, cut away the surface of this core to an even depth of nearly $\frac{1}{8}$ inch. The depth of the paring fixes the thickness of the metal in the cast, and that will depend

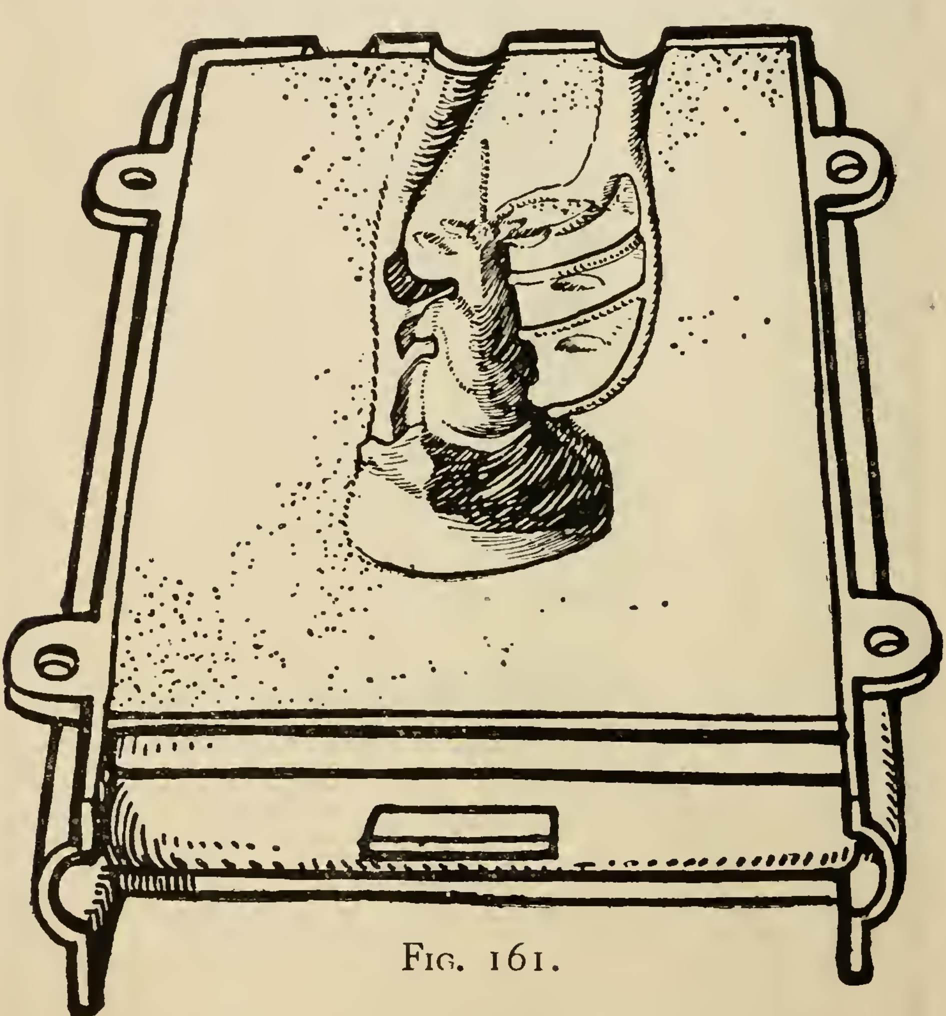


Fig. 161.

on the metal you use. For silver, it may, as above, be a little less than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch; for bronze or brass it should be rather more than $\frac{1}{8}$. It will now be necessary to

Digitized by Microsoft®

Piece-Molding

pare the other side of the core, and to do this you must turn the mold over carefully, open it, and remove the false cores with the lifting needles. When you have done this you must now make the gates, the vents, and the pour (see fig. 161). The pour is the principal funnel-shaped opening by which the metal enters the mold, the gates are the smaller openings from the pour to various parts of the mold, and the vents are openings or grooves arranged to let out the air when the metal fills up the mold. It is almost always best to arrange the pour so that the metal enters at the bottom of the mold, and fills it up gradually without risk to the angles and points of sand which project into the mould.

Scrape a deep groove in the surface of each half of the mold, beginning at one of the holes left for that purpose in the end of the flask. You can do this with an old teaspoon

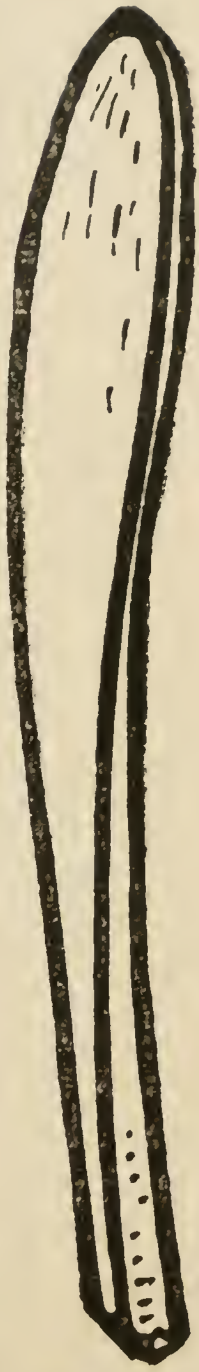


Fig. 162.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Piece-Molding

or a broad spatula with a rounded end. (See fig. 162.) The mold is now complete, and needs only to be thoroughly baked near the fire, so that all moisture is driven out.

CHAPTER XXXII

Casting by Waste-Wax Process—The Wax Model—The Sand—Casting the Mold—Bedding the Mold in the Flasks—Casting without Flasks—Hollow Castings—A Third Method of Casting

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

It is often necessary to cast objects which may be either too small or too complicated for the last process, or that may require a greater delicacy of finish in the cast.

Make your model in casting-wax. This is a composition of fine beeswax, resin, and Venice turpentine in the following proportions: 1 part best pure beeswax, $\frac{1}{12}$th part fine resin, $\frac{1}{6}$th part best Venice turpentine. Melt in an earthen pot, stir well, and add a little coloring matter according to wish or necessity—Venetian red, Prussian blue, or any color which stains well without having much body in itself.

If the result when cold is too sticky, re-

Digitized by Microsoft®

melt it, and add a little more pure wax, as there is an excess of turpentine. If it becomes flaky in working add more turpentine. When worked between the thumb and finger it should draw out into long threads. Another mixture is, two parts of best Japan wax and one part white resin. This gives excellent results, but is rather sticky to work. If the object required be very small you can model it in pure Japanese wax, which can be bought anywhere. Almost any wax, except paraffin wax, will do if on melting it runs away and leaves no solid residue.

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

Having made your model, roll up a slender rod of the wax, say $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch diameter, and, after warming the end of the rod, attach it to the back, bottom, or any part of the model which will not be seen ultimately. This is to make the funnel or pour. Take the finest casting-sand you can procure, mix it with a very little fine loam, and dry it thoroughly by the fire. Pound it well in a mortar with an iron pestle and roll it with a smooth wooden roller on a smooth hard board to crush out any uneven lumps. Sift it through a canvas bag, or rub it through a fine sieve. Put a small quantity of this finely powdered

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

sand into a cup, and add enough water to make it into a creamy liquid, and set it on one side to settle. When the sand has partly settled to the bottom, pour off the clearer water, and, taking a soft camel's-hair brush, paint the sand carefully over the whole surface of the model. Very little will stick on at first, but that does not matter; put the model on one side to dry, and when dry paint on another coat. Take care that the coats are laid on evenly, and avoid bubbles or holes. If these are left they produce lumps and blots which will be certain to come in awkward places on the cast. Fill in the hollows and crevices first, always leaving each coat to dry perfectly before laying on another. When you have covered the whole model very carefully with, say, seven or eight coats, the last one being thoroughly dry, take a flask of suitable size, and partly fill the eye half with sand, lay the model on its face, and press the sand well underneath it, so that the sand coating of the model is everywhere well supported, then ram the sand well in all around; lay the peg half in place, and fill that also with well-rammed sand as before described. Now lay a board on the back and face of

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

the mold, clamp all firmly together, and place by the furnace fire to dry. When dry run the wax out, and when it has all run away let the mold get thoroughly hot, so that the remainder of the wax in the mold disappears. Place the mold on the ground, mouth uppermost, so supported that you may pour in the metal previously melted either in a crucible in the furnace or with a gas blowpipe and foot-bellows on the forge, having first piled coke around the crucible. When cool the mold can now be taken apart, the sand broken away, and the casting finished by chasing.

Small work can be done without flasks. In this case the first process of painting on the sand must be continued until you have got a thickness of at least an inch of sand over every part of the model, except of course the top of the pour or gate for the metal. This mold, after being tied round for greater security with binding-wire, may be dried and used as before described.

The advantages of this method of casting over the ordinary process of lost wax are—1st, that it takes less time; 2d, the elaborate system of runners and risers to carry off the air in the mold is unneces-

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

sary, the air escapes naturally through the pores of the sand; 3d, there are fewer cracks or fissures in the mold; 4th, the mold has not to be made red-hot before pouring in the metal. By the method just described the work is cast solid. If you wish to have it hollow you must proceed differently. Paint one-half of the model only with the successive layers of the sand, and leave the back entirely uncovered. When the sand is fully dry dust a little French chalk over the wax, and take a pair of flasks, and fill the eye half as described for piece-molds. Lay the model so that there will be a sufficient length of pour above it, and excavate the sand so that the uncovered half of the model may rest in it. Pack fine sand well underneath this, and place the peg half of the flask in position. Having dusted brick-dust all over the face of the mold, ram fine sand all round the model, fill the mold, and strike off clean as before.

Reverse the mold, and lift off the eye half, shake out the sand, dust the model clean, and, taking pinches of fine sand, press them into the cracks and crannies of the latter. Then ram the sand well over the mold and into the sides of the flask,

Digitized by Microsoft®

and level the surface as before. Open the mold again, dust the impression with charcoal, close the mold, and again loosen the sand over the model. Ram in more sand until the frame is full. Now place the mold mouth downward near the furnace, set a small vessel underneath to catch the wax. When the mold is hot and all the wax has run away, open the mold, take a length of iron wire, just long enough to traverse the whole model lengthwise and project an inch at each end, and, having coiled fine copper or iron wire round it, rub a little flour paste over it, and make a core of sand round the wire; lay it in position so that as for as possible there may be an equal space all round it. When the core is dry you can fix it in position and pour in the metal.

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

There is yet another way of casting hollow figures by the lost wax process.

A matrix of the figure is made in gelatine (this part of the work is best done by a plaster molder), melted wax is painted in, and the mold is turned about every way, so that every part of the mold receives an even coating of wax. This coating should be a little more than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch thick. When the wax is quite cold

Digitized by Microsoft®

Casting by Waste-Wax Process

it is taken out of the mold. You will now have a hollow casting in wax, we will suppose, of the bull. Fix the rod of wax for the pour at the back of the model. Run a stout iron wire lengthwise through the model (see fig. 159). This is to carry the core. Coat the wax with the sand and water as before, and, when thick enough, bed the resulting mold in the flasks, ram the sand round the core wire, melt the wax out, and cast the figure. When cast the core can be removed bit by bit from the bottom. The iron rod, which will be firmly fixed in the cast, must also be removed, the hole left by it filled up with metal, and the head then chased to remove traces of the join.

CHAPTER XXXIII

On Old Work and Old Methods

On Old Work and Old Methods

WHAT most impresses the student of all old work of the best periods is the clear shining sincerity of the worker and his patient skill. The worker's hand traveled

Digitized by Microsoft®

lovingly over every part of the work, giving it a kindliness of aspect enduringly attractive. More than this, it bears a touching witness to the spirit of the worker.[1] What that spirit was, the preface by the eleventh-century monk, Theophilus, to his work on "Divers Arts," more clearly shows us:—

"Most dear brother, moved by sincere love I have not delayed to insinuate to thy mind how much honour and perfection there is in avoiding idleness, and in trampling down slackness and sloth; and how sweet and pleasant it is to be occupied in works of divers utility. In the words of a certain orator, 'To know aught is a merit, it is a fault not to desire to learn.' Nor let any one delay to learn of them of whom Solomon saith, 'Whoso increaseth knowledge increaseth work,' because the diligent in meditation can understand what growth of mind and body proceedeth thence.

"For it is clearer than light that whoso seeketh ease and levity giveth occasion to unprofitable stories, scurrile talk, curiosity,

[1] Cellini is not a case in point. Moreover his art has been greatly overrated. It is in most cases meretricious in the true sense of the word. At the same time, he was an amazing blackguard, which perhaps accounts for his immortality.

Digitized by Microsoft®

wine-bibbing, drunkenness, brawls, fights, homicide, bawdiness, theft, sacrilege and perjury, and the like, which things are pernicious in the eyes of God, who regardeth the humble and quiet man working in silence, in the fear of the Lord, obedient to the precept of the blessed Apostle Paul, 'But rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing that is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.'

"I, desiring to be an imitator of this man, drew near to the porch of Holy Wisdom, and beheld a little chapel full of divers colours of every variety displaying the use and nature of each. Having with unseen footsteps quickly entered therein, I filled up the aumbry of my heart with a sufficiency of all things, and having tried them one by one by diligent experiment, and having proved all by the eye and hand, I commend them without envy to thy study."

Again, in another place, Theophilus thus admonishes the worker:—"Whatsoever thou art able to learn, understand, or devise in the Arts is ministered to thee by the grace of the sevenfold spirit.

"By the Spirit of Wisdom thou knowest that all created things come of God, and

Digitized by Microsoft®

without Him there is nothing. By the Spirit of Understanding thou acquirest capacity of mind in what order, variety, and proportion thou mayest avail to apply thyself to the different work. By the Spirit of Counsel thou dost not conceal the talent conceded thee by God, but with humility, working and teaching openly, thou revealest faithfully to those earnestly desirous of knowledge. By the Spirit of Fortitude thou dost shake off the torpor of sloth, not beginning aught with slackness thou dost carry it through with all thy power to the end. By the Spirit of Knowledge conceded to thee thou dost dominate with thy genius by reason of the fullness of thy heart, and that of which thy mind is full thou dost utter boldly in public. By the Spirit of Piety thou dost govern what, for whom, why, how much, and in what manner thou workest, and through pious consideration, lest the vice of avarice or covetousness creep in, thou shalt moderate the price of thy reward. By the Spirit of the Fear of the Lord thou art mindful that thou canst do nothing of thyself, nor dost thou think to have, or to desire, aught but by the gift of God, but believing, confessing, and giving thanks

Digitized by Microsoft®

whatsoever thou knowest, whatsoever thou art or may be, thou dost ascribe to the Divine Mercy."

This most delightful person, moreover, was a thorough craftsman, and knew intimately what he wrote about. And he described his work as only a good workman could, who was at the same time skilled with his pen.

Here, for example, is his description of making casts of handles for a chalice by the lost wax process.

"Take wax and form handles thereof, and model on them dragons, or beasts, or birds, or leaves in whatsoever way thou wishest. On the top of each handle, however, place a little wax, rolled round like a slender candle, as long as the little finger, the upper end being somewhat larger. This is called the 'pour'; this thou wilt fix to the handle with a warm tool.

"Then take well-beaten clay and cover up each handle separately, so that all the hollows of the modelling may be filled up. When they are dry, again coat evenly over all, and in like manner a third time. Afterwards put these moulds near the coals, so that when they get hot thou mayest pour out the wax. The wax being

Digitized by Microsoft®

poured out, place them wholly in the fire, turning the mouth of the moulds by which the wax ran out downwards. When they glow like coals, then melt the silver, adding to it a little Spanish brass. If, for example, there be 4 ounces of silver, add a quarter of an ounce of brass, but if more or less, then in proportion to the weight. Taking the moulds out of the fire, stand them firmly up, and pour in the silver at those places where thou pouredst out the wax. When they shall have cooled, break away the clay, and with files and scorpers join them to the chalice."

There is no reason why this process should not be applied by any student to-day. The one thing needful to insure success is to get a loamy clay, which will not shrink or crack too much when the mold is fired. Otherwise the process is identical with modern practise.

Again, in his description of molds for stamped work:

"Iron stamps may be made of the thickness of one finger, the width of three or four fingers, and one finger long. They must be sound, and without flaw or fissure on the upper face. In this face thou wilt engrave with the scorpers in the same way

Digitized by Microsoft®

as for seals, broad and narrow borders of flowers (see fig. 164), beasts, and little birds, or dragons, with necks and tails coiled together. They must not be engraved too deeply, but moderately, and with care. Then thou thinnest out silver as long as thou needest; and much thinner than for repoussé work, and thou dost clean it with powdered charcoal, and with a cloth dost polish it with chalk scraped over the metal. This done fix thou the silver plate over any border, and having laid the iron upon the anvil with the sculptured side uppermost, and having laid the silver over the sculpture, place a thick piece of lead over the silver, strike strongly with the hammer, so that the lead may impinge on the thin silver and drive it so forcibly into the sculpture that every trace of it may be clearly seen.

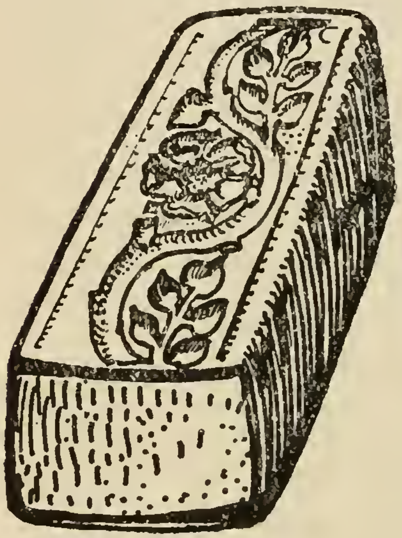


Fig. 163.

"If the plate be longer than the mould draw it from place to place, and hold it evenly on the iron with the pincers, so that when one part has been struck up

Digitized by Microsoft®

On Old Work and Old Methods

another may be struck, and so on, until the plate has been filled up. This work is useful enough when thou art making borders for altar tables, for pulpits, for shrines for the bodies of the saints, for the covers of books, and in whatever places the work may be needed. When the relief is suitable and slight it is easily done. Thou canst do likewise with copper similarly thinned, gilded, and polished. Being laid on the iron, gilt side downwards, the lead is laid over it, and hammered until the pattern is visible. The image of the crucified Lord is also engraved in iron, as described above, and being stamped on silver or gilt copper, they make therewith phylacteries or reliquaries and little shrines of the saints. The image of the Lamb of God is also carved in iron, and the figures of the four Evangelists. The impresses of these on gold or silver are used to decorate bowls of precious wood, the image of the Lamb standing in the midst of the vials, the four Evangelists ranged about in the shape of a cross. Images of little fishes, birds, and beasts are also made, which, being fixed on the rest of the ground of the bowl, give a very rich effect. An image

Digitized by Microsoft®

of the Majesty is made in like manner, and other images of any form or sex. These being stamped in gold or silver on gilt copper give the greatest seemliness to those places on which they are fixed by reason of their delicacy and elaboration. Images of kings and knights are made in the same way, with which, being stamped out of Spanish brass, basins whence water is poured on the hands are ornamented in the same manner as cups are ornamented with the stamped work in gold and silver. They may have borders in the same metal in which little beasts or birds or little flowers which are not fixed together but soldered with tin."

Nothing could be clearer or more practical than this. The result of the process can be seen in the shrine of the bell shown on Plate V. The delightful flower borders on the face of the shrine are all produced in the way described.

Again, the description by Theophilus of the cutting punches, their use, and the employment of the results produced, is a model of clearness :—

"Iron punches are made as long as the finger, thick at one end, and tapering to the other (see fig. 165). They may be filed

Digitized by Microsoft®

square, three-cornered, or round, and made of convenient bigness. The smaller ends are afterwards case-hardened. Then little flowers are engraved out of the smaller ends in such a way that a cutting edge is left round the border of the flower (fig. 166). Thin silver or gilded copper is polished on the upper face as described above, is thinly tinned on the lower with the soldering bit used for soldering windows, then, laying thick lead on the anvil, place thereon the silver or gilt copper, so that the gilding may be uppermost and the tinning underneath; having taken which punch thou pleasest, lay the carved end on the silver, and strike with the hammer so that the design may appear and be at the same time cut out by the sharp edge of the punch (see fig. 166).

Fig. 164.

"When thou hast stamped out all the silver keep the flowers by thee; they will be the heads of nails, the shanks of which thou wilt make thus: Mix two parts of tin and one of lead together, beat it out thin

Digitized by Microsoft®

and long, and draw it through the draw-plate, so that thou hast a very long wire not too slender. Afterwards make for thyself a slender iron, about 6 inches long, which is broadened out at one end and hollowed a little to receive the head of the nail. The other end is fixed in a wooden handle. Then sitting near the furnace suitable for this work, before which stands a little copper vessel full of melted wax,[1] holding the slender iron in the left hand, the broader part being heated, and in the right the tin wire rolled up like a ball, dip the end of the wire in the wax, and, placing it upon the tinned side of one of the little flowers so that it may stick, lift it up and lay it in the hollow of the heated iron; hold it there until the metal runs, and immediately remove it from the fire, and when cold snip off a length of wire according to the length thou desirest for the nail."

Fig. 165.

The beaded wire so beautiful in its slight irregularities, seen in Anglo-Saxon

[1] Resin would do just as well as wax.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

brooches as well as in many of the Greek ornaments, was produced by the beading-tool which Theophilus describes as follows:—

"There is an iron instrument called the beading-tool, which consists of two irons, one above and one below. The lower part is as broad and as thick as the middle

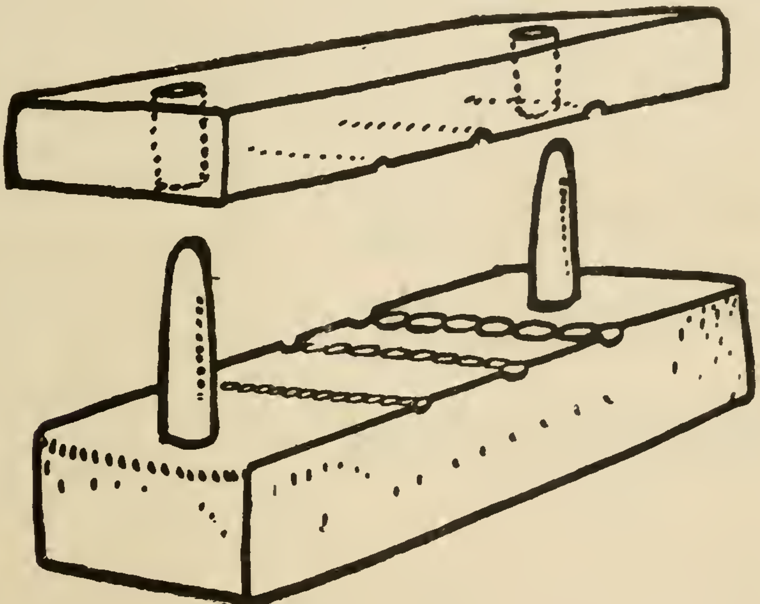


Fig. 166.

finger, and is somewhat thin. In it are two spikes by which it is fixed to wood below, and out of the upper face rise two thick pegs which fit into the upper part of the iron. And this upper iron is of the same size and length as the lower, and is pierced with two holes, one at each end, which receives the two pegs of the lower,

Digitized by Microsoft®

so that they can be joined together. They must be joined very closely with the file, and in both faces thou wilt groove out several rows of little pits in such a way that when the irons are joined together a hole may appear (see figs. 167, 168). In the large grooves place thou gold or silver rods beaten out long and smoothly round, and when the upper iron is smartly struck with the horn mallet while the gold or silver rod is turned round with the other hand, grains are formed as large as small beans; in the next grains as large as peas are formed; and in the third like lentils, and so on smaller."

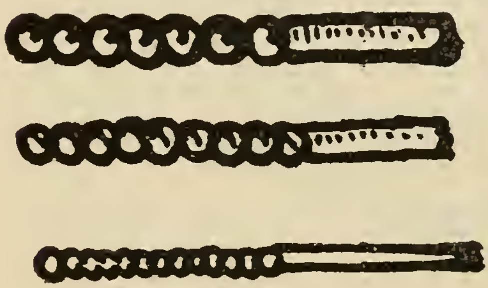


FIG. 167.

Let any student or worker try for himself any of the methods given by Theophilus, and he will find that he is brought into touch with sources of suggestion and ideas of the utmost value to him in his work. It is like stepping from the close atmosphere of a cramped workroom to the freer air of a new world. In fact, the more one compares the work of the past with the work of the present

Digitized by Microsoft ®

day, the more one is convinced that the design in the past was the outcome of work. To-day the cart is placed before the horse; work is the outcome of designs, hence its thin and meager aspect. This meagerness may not be remedied, as many think, by wild struggles after originality. They lead but to the eccentric and the morbid. Let the worker be faithful to himself, sincere in his craft, incessant in study, and, unconsciously but surely, his work will express that personal note which sooner or later will win him a place in the choir of artists.

Again, if we look at the work of the Japanese, with their patinæ, their inlays, and incrustations, their many kinds of groundwork, their alloys, inexpensive, but most beautiful, the rich effects they will produce with an incredibly small quantity of gold or silver, and, perhaps more astonishing than all, their beautiful cast work, one realizes that there is a whole world of new methods and new materials for study, any one of these worth a lifetime of study, yet not one of them is practised by us. The Japanese as a race are more sensitive than any other to the suggestive beauty of things called common

Digitized by Microsoft®

by the heedless Western. A water-worn pebble, a strangely marked stone, are wrought and polished and added to until it is difficult to say whether the work is entirely the result of human intention or is the product of some kind of natural magic, or is the work of some more than human artificer. In their metal work, each metal, native or alloyed, is allied with some other, at once its foil and quiet emphasis. The very names of their surfacings reveal an intensity of observation unknown to us: "pear-skin ground, millet seed, stone-dimpled, wood-grain ground, fish-roe ground, the toad's-back ground," and many others. They show a knowledge and a love of surface quality not even dreamed of by the Western workman wallowing in the trough of commercialism. Their alloys are made, not merely with an eye to beautiful color in the metal itself, but for the color and quality of the film of oxid produced by time or chemicals. Everything they do reveals that intimate inherited knowledge which comes of centuries of study of the nature and properties of the materials used. Their workmanship itself is no less perfect.

In Japan, as indeed everywhere, the su-

Digitized by Microsoft®

preme test of good workmanship was that every tool-stroke should be complete in itself and need no retouching. This holds good even when applied to art so widely different as Anglo-Saxon gold work. Whether we look at brooches, buckles, or necklaces, there is the same unhesitating skill, the same quiet perfection of work. Yet the design of any jewel resolves itself, in almost every instance, into the repetition of forms made up of variously twisted, ribbed, or beaded wires laid side by side, or little coils or shapes of wire soldered on the surface, and filled up with tiny grains almost in the Etruscan or Greek manner. The side view of the Elfred jewel (fig. 169) is one illustration of this, while the Anglo-Saxon

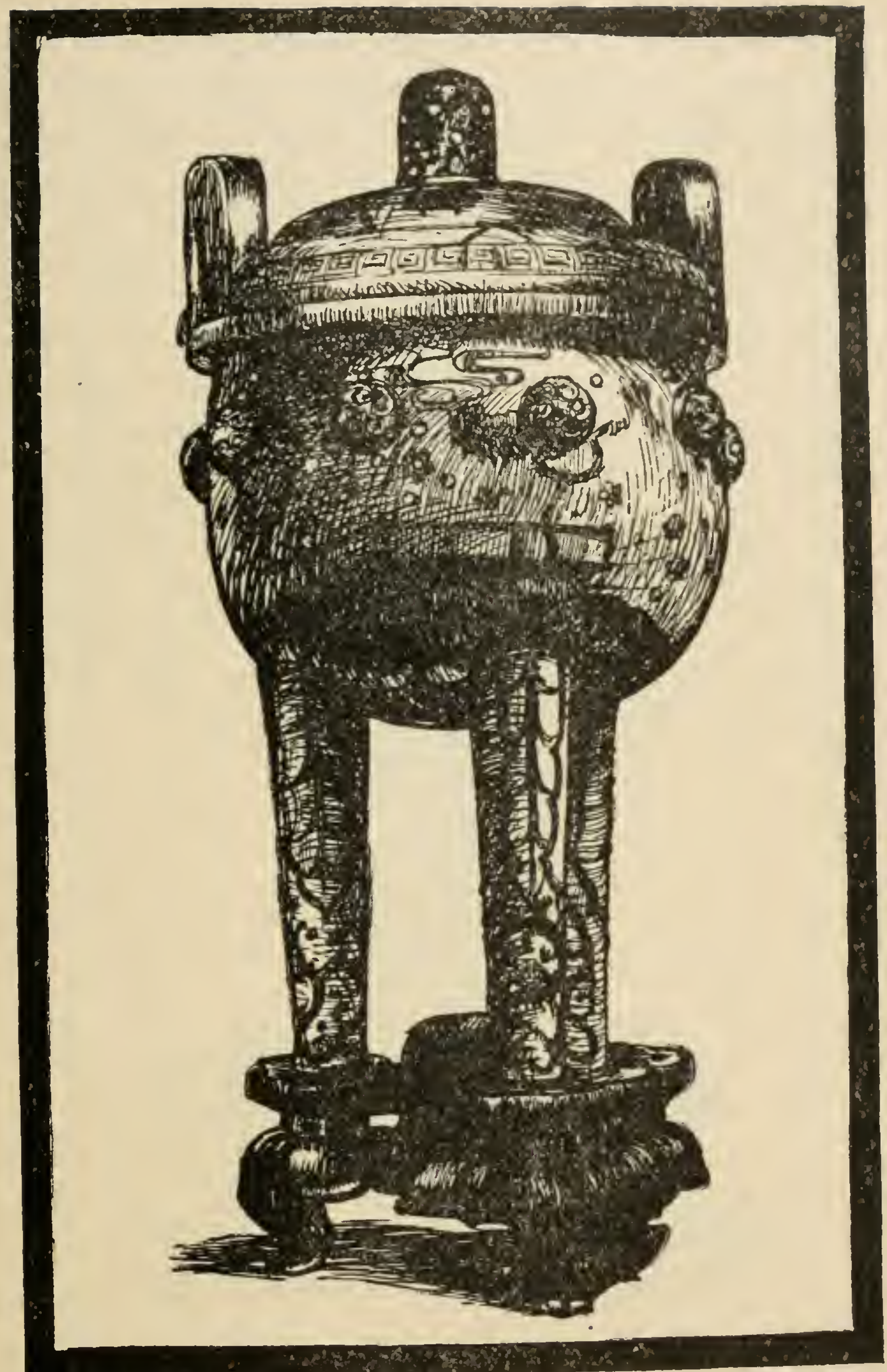
Fig. 168.

Digitized by Microsoft®

brooches and buckles in the collotype plates show other very beautiful examples of the rich results produced by simple means. Comparative study of the goldsmith's art shows, among other things, the extraordinary persistence of primitive methods of workmanship and design even down to the present day. The method of producing grains, discovered probably by the first gold worker, and described in a former chapter, is still used by every goldsmith in the world; so also the various patterns of twisted wire. The use of punches, molds, and dies are all primitive methods of enduring utility. They are, as it were, the terms in the artist's vocabulary, and it would be just as impossible to invent a new language as to discover new methods of work or a new art.

All through Etruscan, Roman, Italian art one can trace the methods perfected, if not invented, by Greek artificers, while the influence of Greek art can be seen even to-day in the work of the Persian and Indian goldsmith as well as in those of early Ireland and Anglo-Saxon England. Again, in early French art, some beautiful examples of

Digitized by Microsoft®



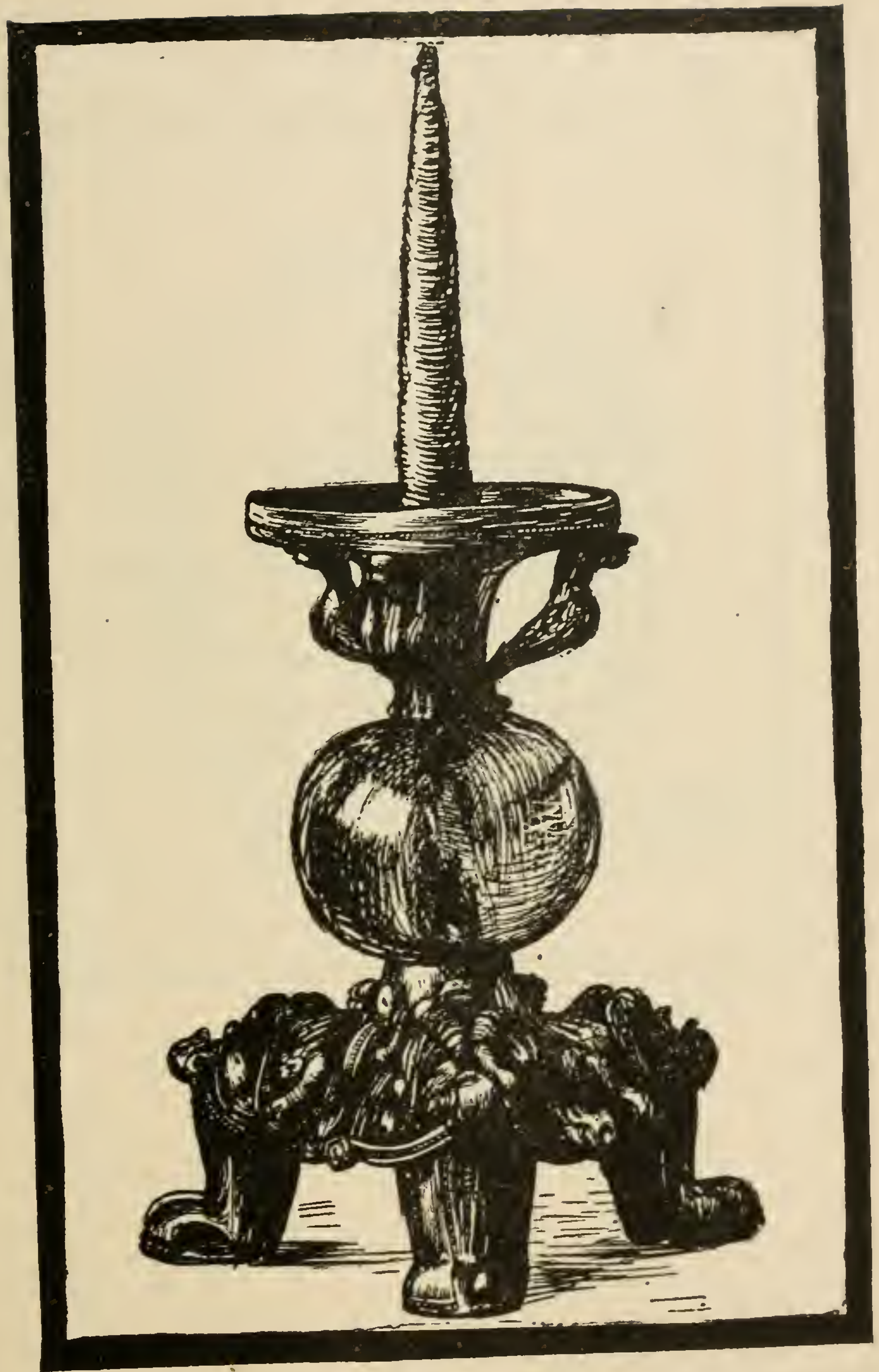
Chinese Bowl and Cover in Cloisonné Enamel.

This sample from the Victoria and Albert Museum shows how admirably the Chinese artist has overcome the difficulty of mounting the enamel bowl and cover by providing in each case a broad rim of plain metal. The junction between the fold of enamel and the broad band is managed by raising the cloisons near the rim, so that the metal structure is felt to be carried into the enamel ground.

Digitized by Microsoft®

which are given in Plate VIII, there is the Greek love of clearness, of firm outline, and spirited form. The work is so clean, so airy and bright, that it seems rather the handiwork of angels than of men. It is a spiritual refreshment even to look at such things, and the student cannot spend too much time in the study of them. He will always find suggestion, not of new forms, but of untried methods; not new design, but hints of new expressions; he will learn what is indeed the sum of the whole matter, that the right use of material leads to right ideas.

Digitized by Microsoft ®



Thirteenth-Century French Pricket Candlestick, from the British Museum.

The romantic beauty of this master work and the romantic use of crystal and gilt bronze will be sufficiently obvious to those who have studied the original to make further description unnecessary.

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE new section which follows contains chapters on Japanese metal work and processes of metal coloring, which are based on demonstrations privately given by Professor Unno Bisei to the author and his pupils.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXIV

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

FIRST measure the distance from A to D (fig. 169), and take that as the radius of the circle of metal which will be required. The thickness should be about 12 gauge. To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

Digitized by Microsoft®

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

The metal disc is next annealed and cleaned by being dipped in the sulfuric pickle. Mark with compasses the bottom

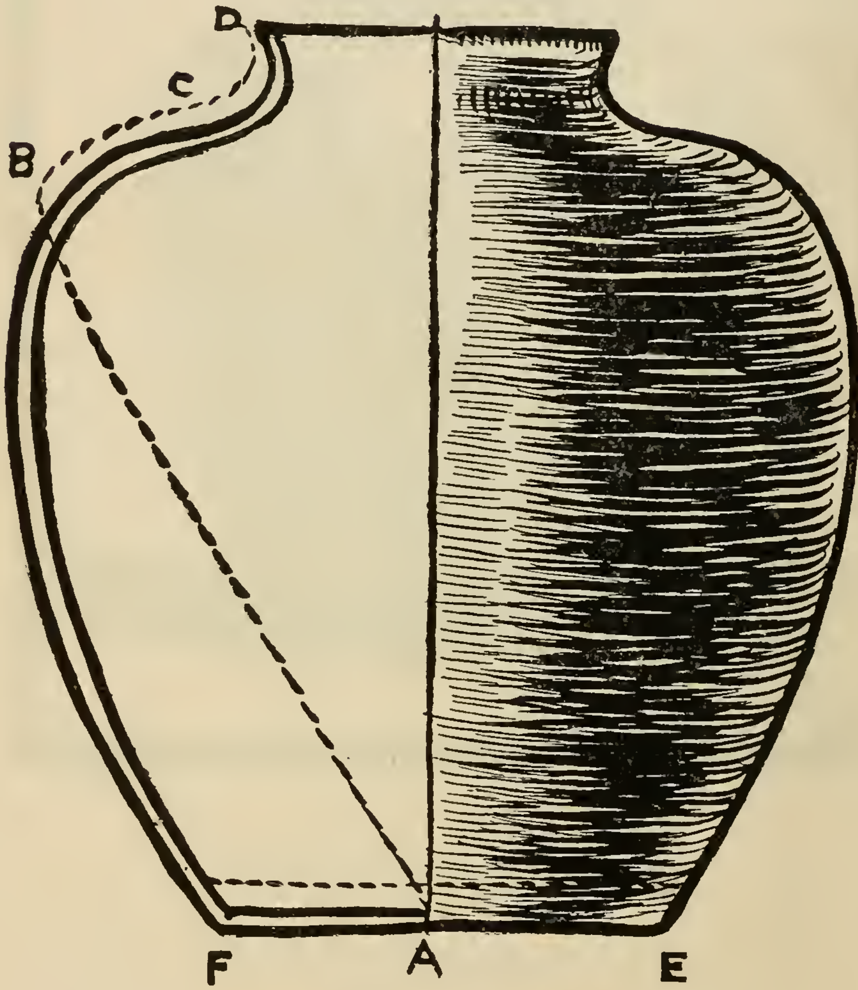


FIG. 169.

circle EF. Then take the metal and a wedge-shaped boxwood mallet, and having a stake the shape of fig. 170, set the metal against the tip of the stake, so that

Digitized by Microsoft®

the edge of the stake just comes to the edge of the circle (fig. 170), and begin to beat the metal away from you round the circle,

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

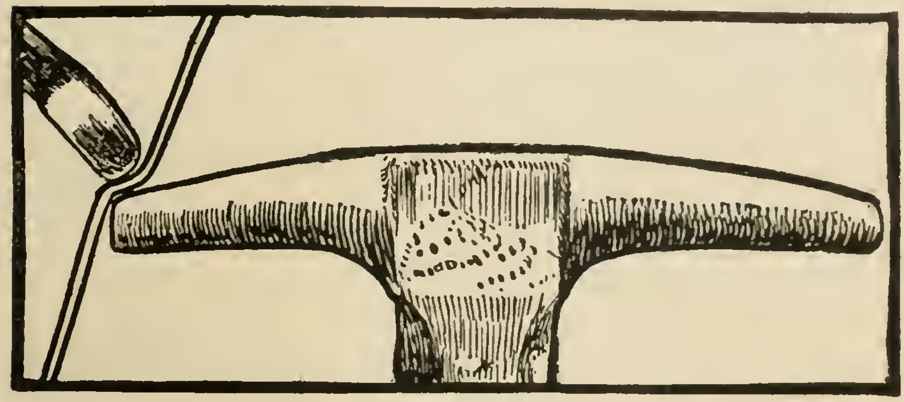


Fig. 170.

being very careful to keep to the line. Having completed the circle, repeat the process a little higher up, and follow round always in circles, until the top or outer edge is reached. The metal should now be reannealed, and the process

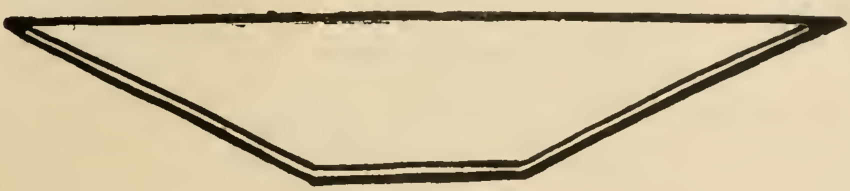


Fig. 170a.

repeated from the beginning until the work looks in section like fig. 170a. At this stage continue the work on a stake

Digitized by Microsoft®

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

like fig. 171, taking care always not to let the tip of the stake jar on the bottom of the vase, as that will stretch and split the metal at this point.

The use of the last stake will enable you to bring the metal up to the shape shown in fig. 172. This done, mark a circle on the metal A and B (fig. 169), taking a stake shaped as fig. 173A, and begin to draw the

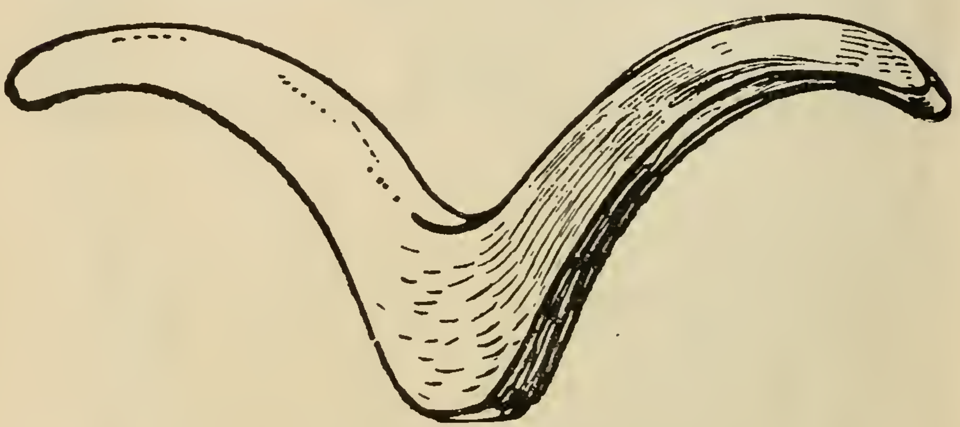


FIG. 171 (on page 54).

metal in to form the neck. At this stage the work must be annealed more frequently and great care exercised, as the metal is more likely to split. By beating from BC the rest of the curve CD will take its own shape with very little beating.

Before beginning to beat on the stake (fig. 173), it will be advisable to make a template of the section. A hammer

Digitized by Microsoft ®

like fig. 174 should be substituted for the mallet, as the metal requires heavier beating in order to compress it into

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

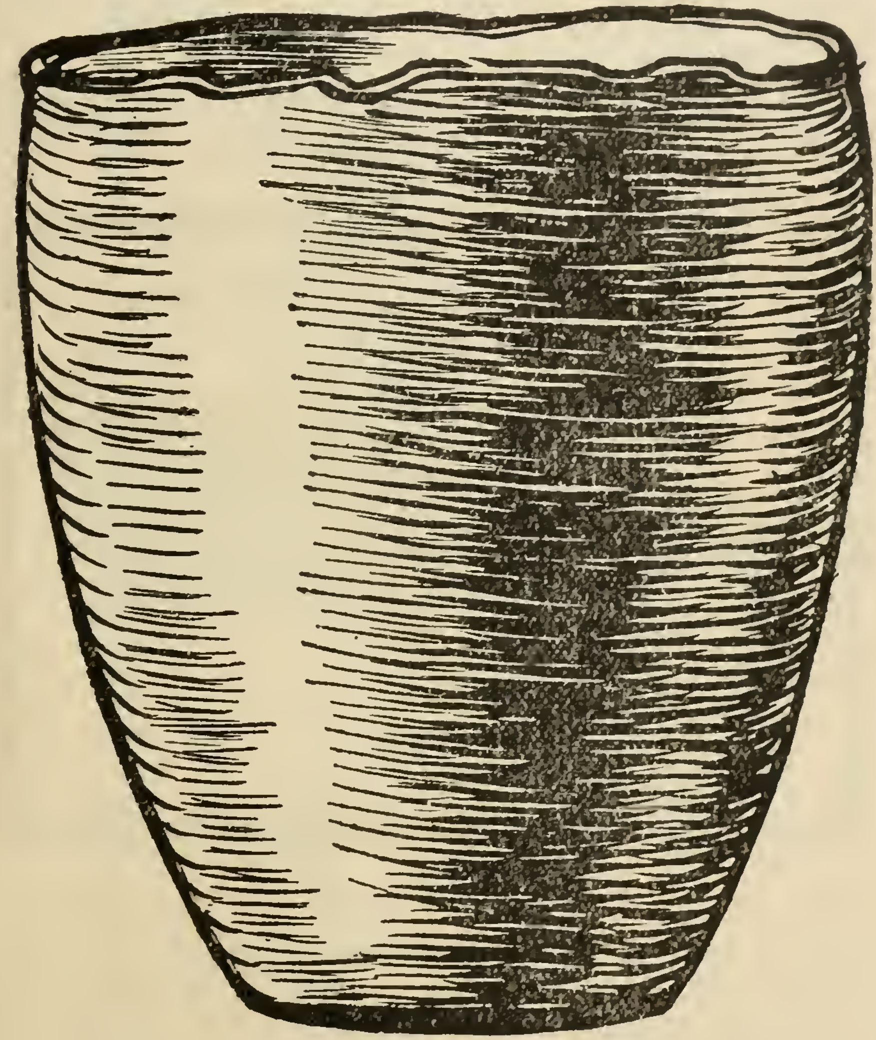


FIG. 172.

shape, and then to stretch it again to form the neck.

When the required shape has been

19

Digitized by Microsoft®

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

obtained, the work must be planished smooth all over, beginning at the base with a flat, round stake like fig. 175, using a flat, round-faced hammer like fig. 175A.

The angle of the base is to be planished true on a stake shown in fig. 170, and

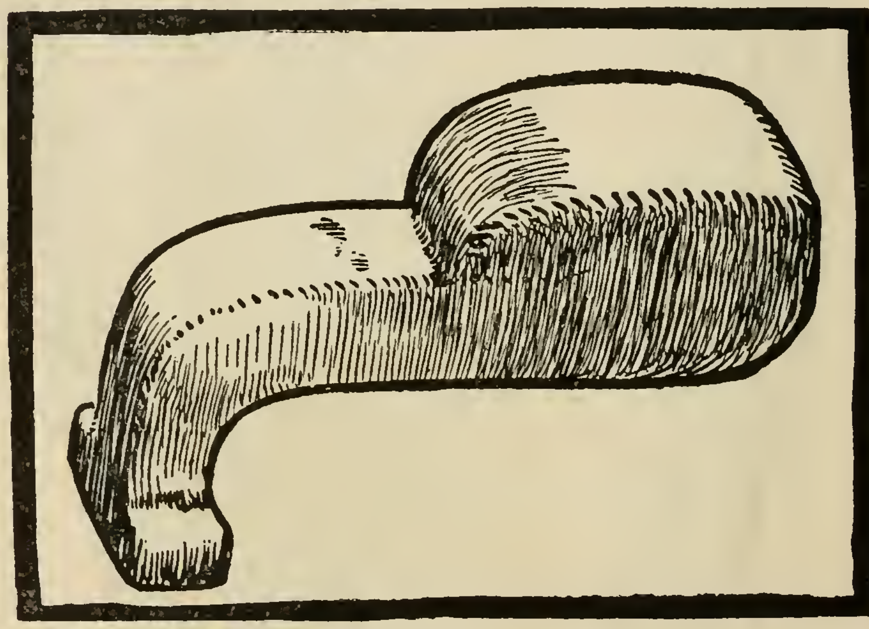


Fig. 173.

from the angle "F" to the dotted line "B" use a stake (fig. 177) crooked like a hammer as in fig. 173A or 176, fixed into a long straight arm. The neck is next planished with a cushion-faced hammer (fig. 177) on hollow stakes (figs. 178–9), fixed as the previous one was in the long arm.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

The use of the cushion-faced hammer is to enable you to get into the quick curve of the neck of the vase.

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

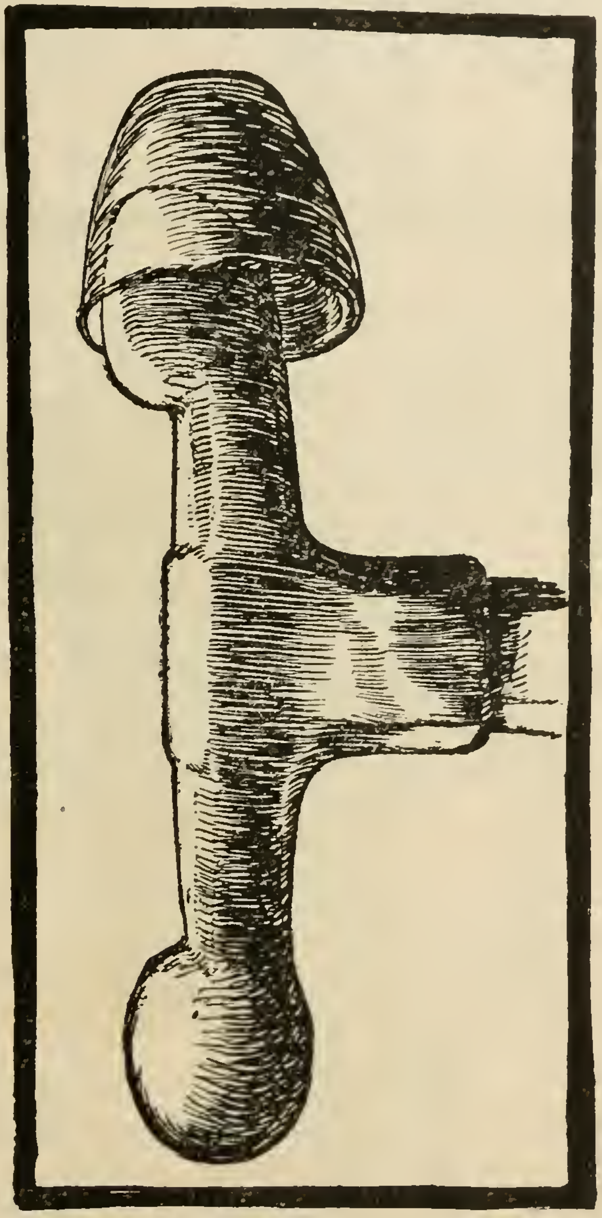


Fig. 173a.

To get a smooth, even surface the

Digitized by Microsoft®

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

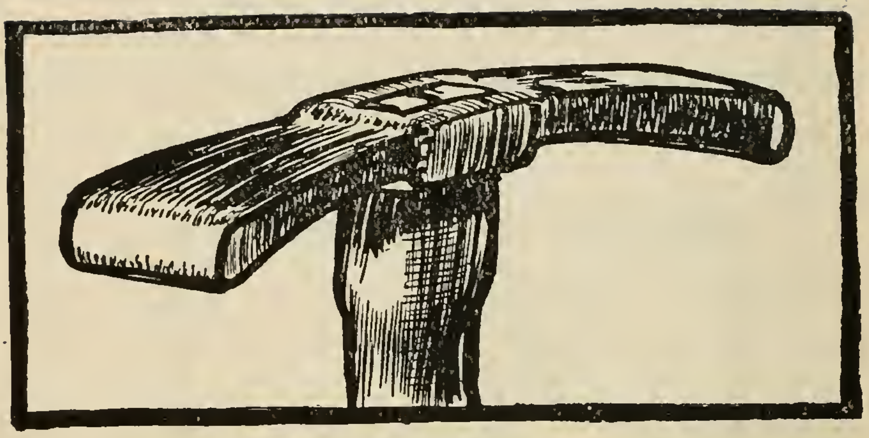


FIG. 174.

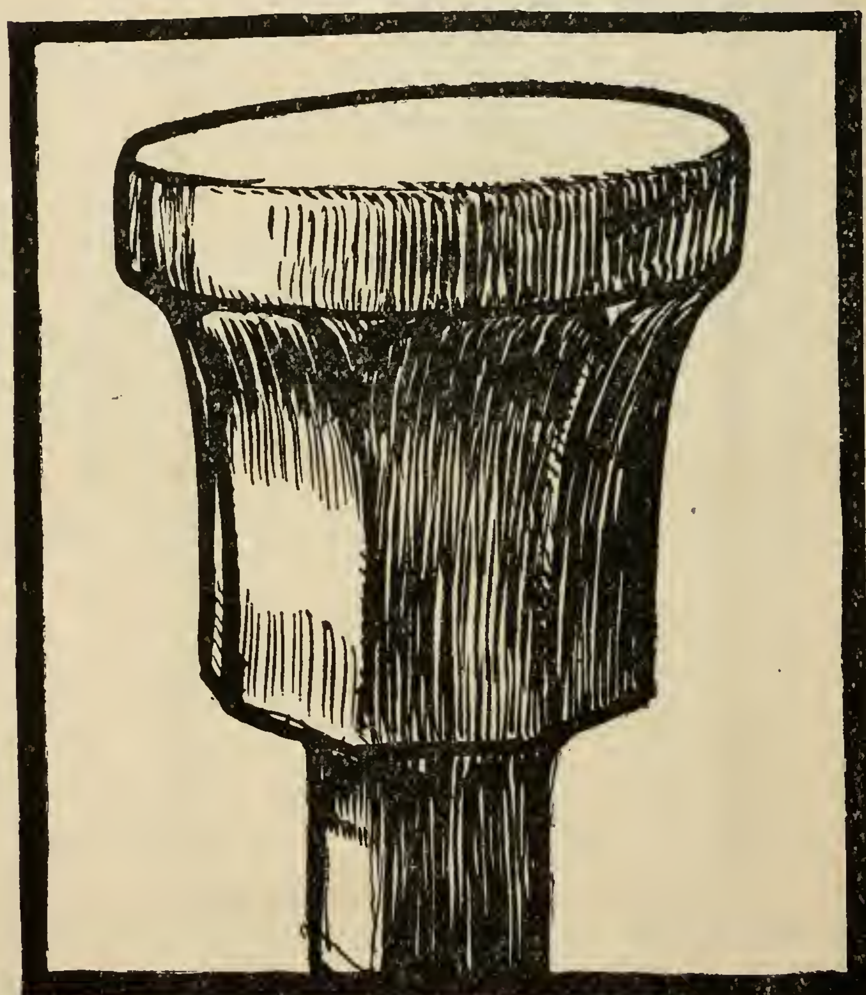


FIG. 175.

Digitized by Microsoft®

metal must be planished three or four times, annealing after each planishing.

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

When hammering, keep the blows in circles round the vase. This can be done by marking a few faint lines on the surface with the compasses. The lines must be very faint, as if they are at all

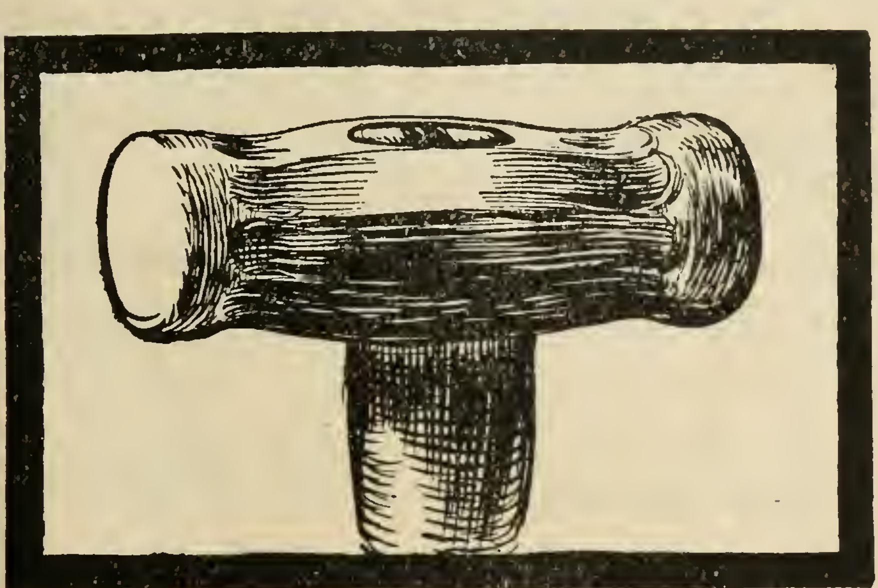


FIG. 175A.

deep, it will be difficult to planish them out.

When the vase is smooth and shapely, polish it with fine sand-paper, then brush it on the lathe with pumice and oil, and proceed to crocus and rouge if the vase is of silver. If it is of copper, finish off with whiting.

Digitized by Microsoft®

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

In this, as in all craft work, more will be learnt from a few lessons from

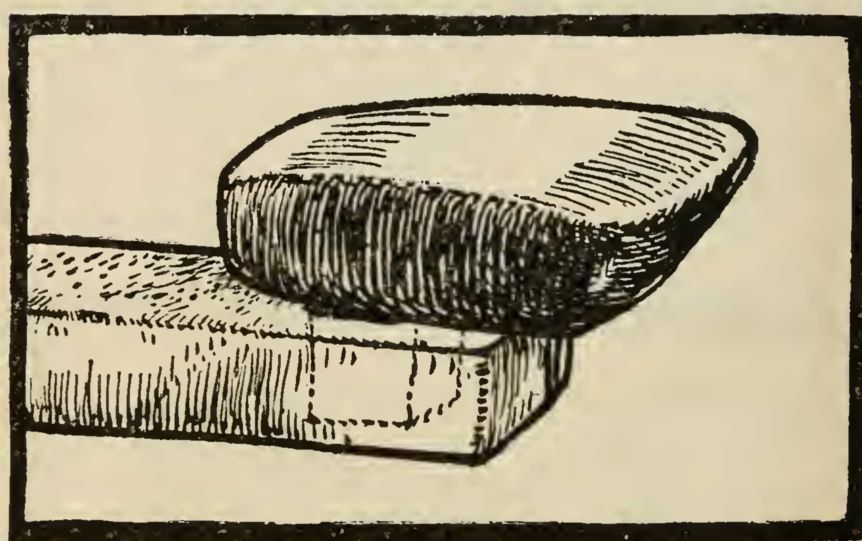


Fig. 176.

a first-rate hammerman than from many pages of description. The student is

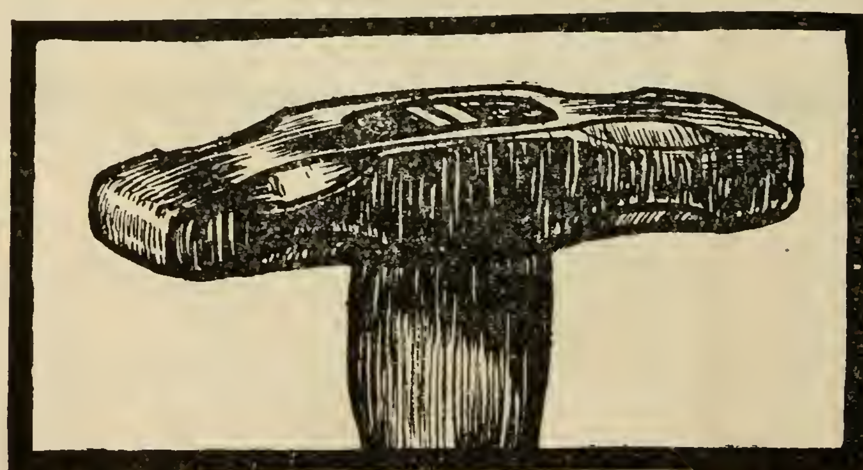


Fig. 177.

advised, therefore, to take the earliest opportunity of getting a practical de-

Digitized by Microsoft®

monstration of the process from a skilled workman.

To beat up a Vase out of a Sheet of Metal

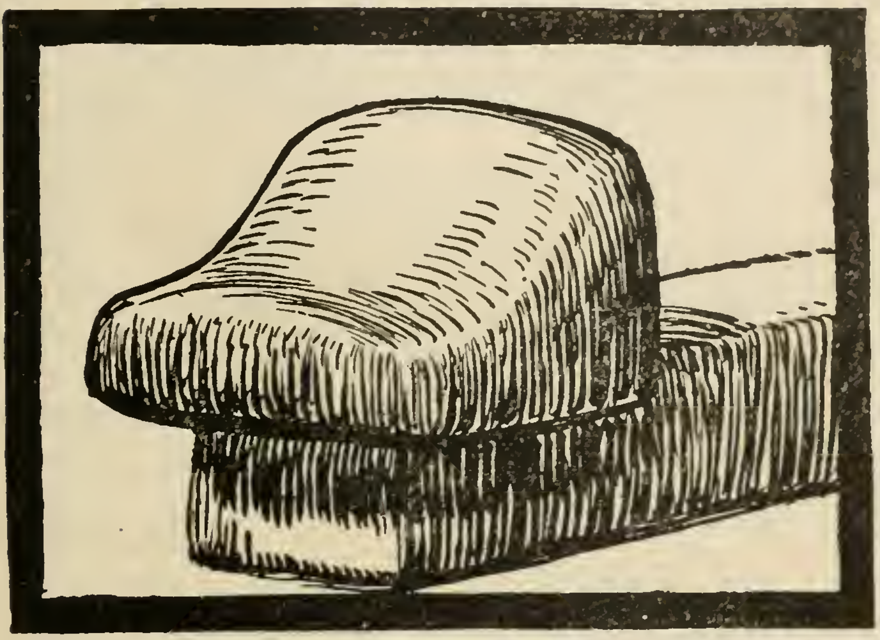


Fig. 178.

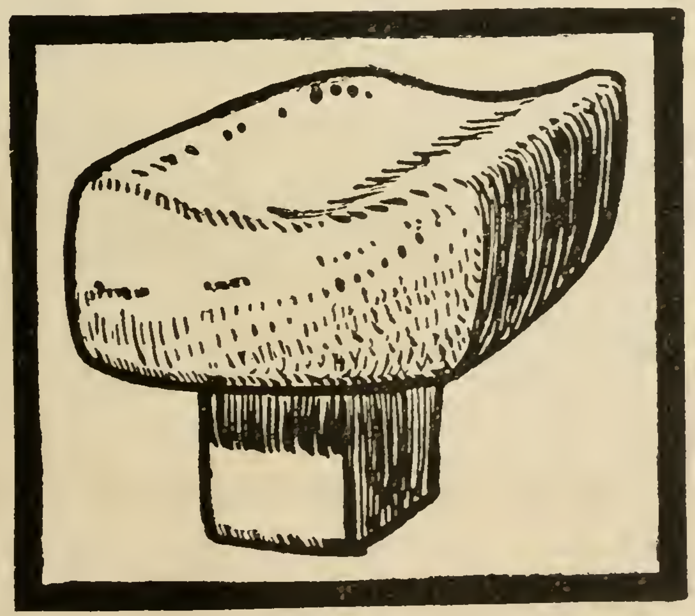


Fig. 179.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXV

To make a Card Case

To make a Card Case

A Card Case may be made thus:—

Procure an iron die of the size and shape required.

File up the top surface to the shape of one half of the box. (See A, fig. 180.)

This is the punch from which the blanks are to be stamped. Make a mold by pouring molten tin into an iron shape not less than 1 inch larger all round than the top of the iron die and not less than 1 inch deep; lay this on a flat sheet of iron and lute the joints all round with whiting. Lead and pewter are often used, but tin is better because it is harder. While the tin is cooling but still molten, press the iron die therein, so that it may make an impression $\frac{1}{4}$ inch deep. When cool, the die can be hammered in to make the impression clean and smooth. (See B, fig. 180.)

The shell should now be cut out of sheet silver, squared up, the corners cut

Digitized by Microsoft®

off, annealed, then tapped into shape over the iron block with a mallet. When re-annealed, it may be driven into the tin

To make a Card Case

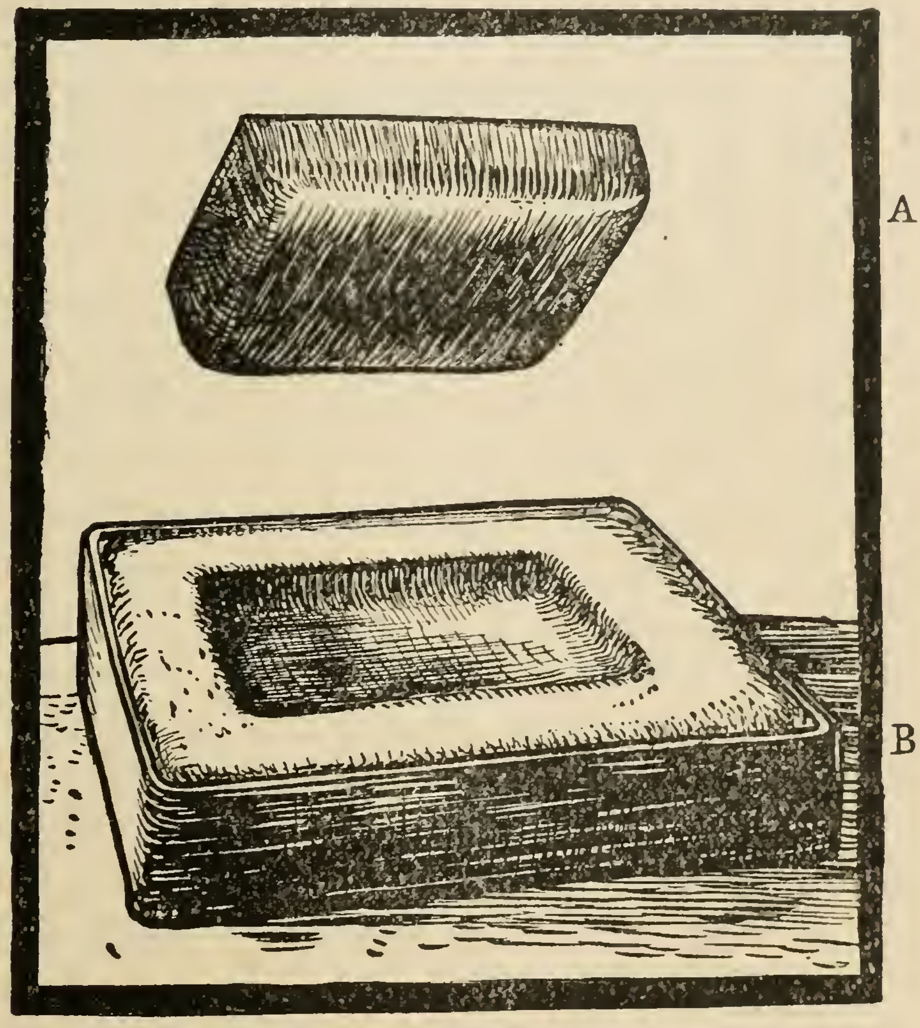


Fig. 180.

block with the iron die, using a heavy hammer.

Both sides of the case are treated in this way and, being stamped up from the

Digitized by Microsoft®

To make a Card Case

same die, can be made to fit together without difficulty.

After stamping, the shells should be annealed and cut to size. To prevent warping during the process of annealing, iron plates should be prepared $\frac{1}{16}$ inch thick, cut to size and tapped into shape over the iron die, one to fit outside the shell and one inside.

The inside plate must be gapped along one side so as to leave spaces where the joints of the hinge will come. The shell must now be clamped securely at each corner between these two iron plates with screw clamps, which can be procured at any hardware store.

This done, the shells can be annealed, then restamped, reannealed, and the edges filed true so that the two halves will fit together.

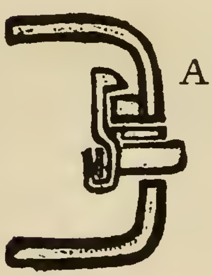


FIG. 181.

The facings to each half may now be fixed.

These are stiffening pieces of one-eighth square silver wire soldered to the inner edge of the shell all round. (See A, fig. 181.)

When soldered the edges must be filed true and ground perfectly flat on the stone

Digitized by Microsoft ®

until the two halves fit together so that the joint is hardly perceptible.

To make a Card Case

The chenier for the hinge should now be made.

Take a strip of silver, gauge 4, a little more than three times the outside diameter of the tube you require (in this case three thirty-seconds of an inch); file the two edges parallel and cut off two long corners to form a point. Then with the thin pane of a riveting hammer tap the strip into a small groove in the swage block; it will then form a long half-tube. Reanneal, gently close the two edges with a hammer, thus forming a complete tube, and anneal again. It is now ready to draw down to the size required, care being taken that the chenier is drawn perfectly straight and that the line of the joint is not allowed to become spiral. The thin line of the join should then be carefully nicked with a fine three-square file along its length, that being the side to solder down on the case. You must now cut this up into an equal number of parts, 4, 6, or 8, and carefully file the ends in a joint tool, leaving the pieces you intend for the ends of the hinge rather longer than the rest.

Digitized by Microsoft®

To make a Card Case

This done, graver's cement should be melted into each of the two halves and the two cemented together so that the back edge may be filed out with the joint file. This may be done very carefully by hand, or begun by hand and finished off by fixing a long joint file of the proper size in the chuck of a lathe and then running the case to and fro along it lengthwise as the lathe revolves, so that the groove is deepened evenly and truly along its whole length.

When it is deep enough to receive the joint, which should not be let in too deeply or the case may not open as widely as you would wish, take the case apart, and clean off the cement.

Take the case, and holding it firmly in the left hand, place the joints in position along the groove, and with a fine pencil-point mark on the shells the position of each joint, then remove the top half of case, leaving all the cheniers resting in the groove. Take a piece of fine binding-wire and tie the first joint in position; do the same with each alternate one. If the number of joints is six there will be three on each half, the two end cheniers being on opposite sides.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Having boraxed the joints to be soldered, knock out very carefully those you have not tied, place your thin paillons of solder and apply a gentle heat so that the borax may dry without disturbing the various sections of the joint. This done, using a soft flame all over the body of the case, continue blowing until the solder flushes along the length of the joint.

To make a Card Case

It should then be pickled before arranging the joints on the other side. When you have the second lot of cheniers in place, before soldering gently try them to see if they fit opposite to those in the soldered half. If they are quite right solder as before. It is important to bear in mind that the joint of the chenier must be soldered downward in the groove.

The whole work may now be whitened, stoned, and polished, but before doing this any fittings required for springs, catches, attachments for elastic bands, card holders, &c., must be prepared and fixed.

The spring for the joint should now be made.

Procure from any of the shops for silversmiths a few lengths of fine watch-spring of such a size that three will go inside

Digitized by Microsoft®

To make a Card Case

the joint (see fig. 182). If the joint is very small one spring will do, but three are better. Put the case together, pass the springs down through the joint, and plug firmly at the end with small silver wedges.

Fig. 182.

Then holding the case firmly in one hand, having the hinge edge away from you, grip the springs with the pliers and turn them toward you for at least half a turn, then get the boy or assistant to plug the free end with another wedge of silver and file off the ends clean. The springs can be fixed single-handed if a piece of smooth, flat wood made securely to fit inside the case be procured. Having placed this inside and put a thin board or thick card on each side of the case, it can be held in the vice and the springs can be twisted and plugged without assistance. The whole can now be cleaned and polished as you may desire.

The shape may be engraved or inlaid or damascened, or decorated with niello, or treated in any way you may please, only of course all this must be done before running the pin or springs through the hinge. If desired the case may be made

Digitized by Microsoft®

to open with a catch. In this instance the spring in the joint must be twisted the opposite way, so that the lid may fly open when the catch is released. To make a Card Case

The spring catch may be simply a piece of watch-spring as long as the case, with a thumb-piece fixed to the center. A circular hole should be filed in the lower half just beneath the facing, encroaching somewhat upon its thickness. This hole may be $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in diameter. The thumb-piece would be slightly less in diameter and about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch long. The ends of the spring are retained by small slotted wing-pieces soldered to the inside of the box beneath the edge of the facing. The thumb-piece has a small plate soldered to it. This plate has a projection soldered on the front, and a portion of the plate is turned up at the back just large enough to retain the spring. (See figs. 183, 184, 185.) The thumb-piece is pushed through the hole from the inside and the spring slipped into the slot at the back. The projection on the front of the thumb-plate is so adjusted that it may

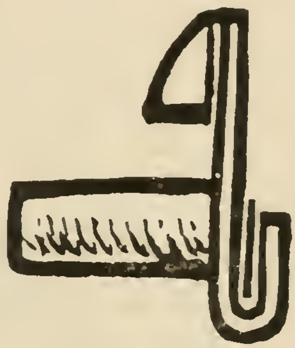


Fig. 183.

Digitized by Microsoft®

To make a Card Case

catch over a prepared projection on the corresponding facing of the other half.

There are many ways in which spring catches may be made, and many other suggestions will present themselves as the work proceeds. If desired, slotted pieces of silver may be soldered to each side of one or other of the halves in which elastic bands to hold the cards

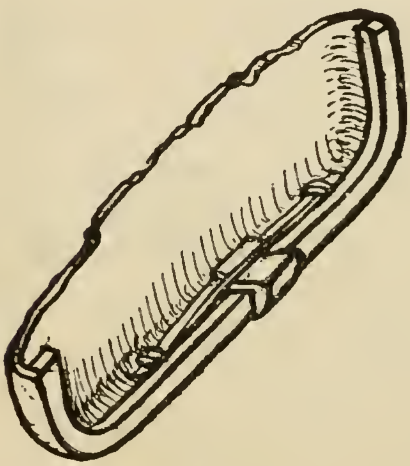


Fig. 184.

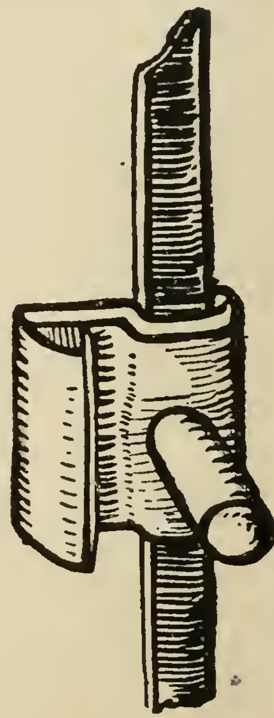


Fig. 185.

in place may be fixed, or a shell of thin silver may be soldered just within the edge of the facing as may be desired.

This method of case-making has many applications, and the process is described fully because of its applicability in other directions.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXVI

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

(1) A, FIG. 186, shows the blank before being whetted. This blank is always too long for ordinary use, so that a portion of the "tang" or reverse end has to be removed before inserting in the handle. This is accomplished in the following manner: Place the blank in a vice with the tang you wish to break off projecting, then take a small hammer and strike the tang sharply. It will be found to break away quite cleanly.

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

The tool must now be tempered. Pass the graver through and through the blue flame of a small gas jet, until it is a pale straw color, then plunge into oil. The graver is now ready for whetting.

(2) B in fig. 186 gives an illustration of the most useful whet for general work on metal, pearl, or ivory.

(3) C in fig. 187 shows the whet for engraving very fine line work on flat or convex shapes.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

(4) D in the same figure shows the whet for engraving on concave surfaces.

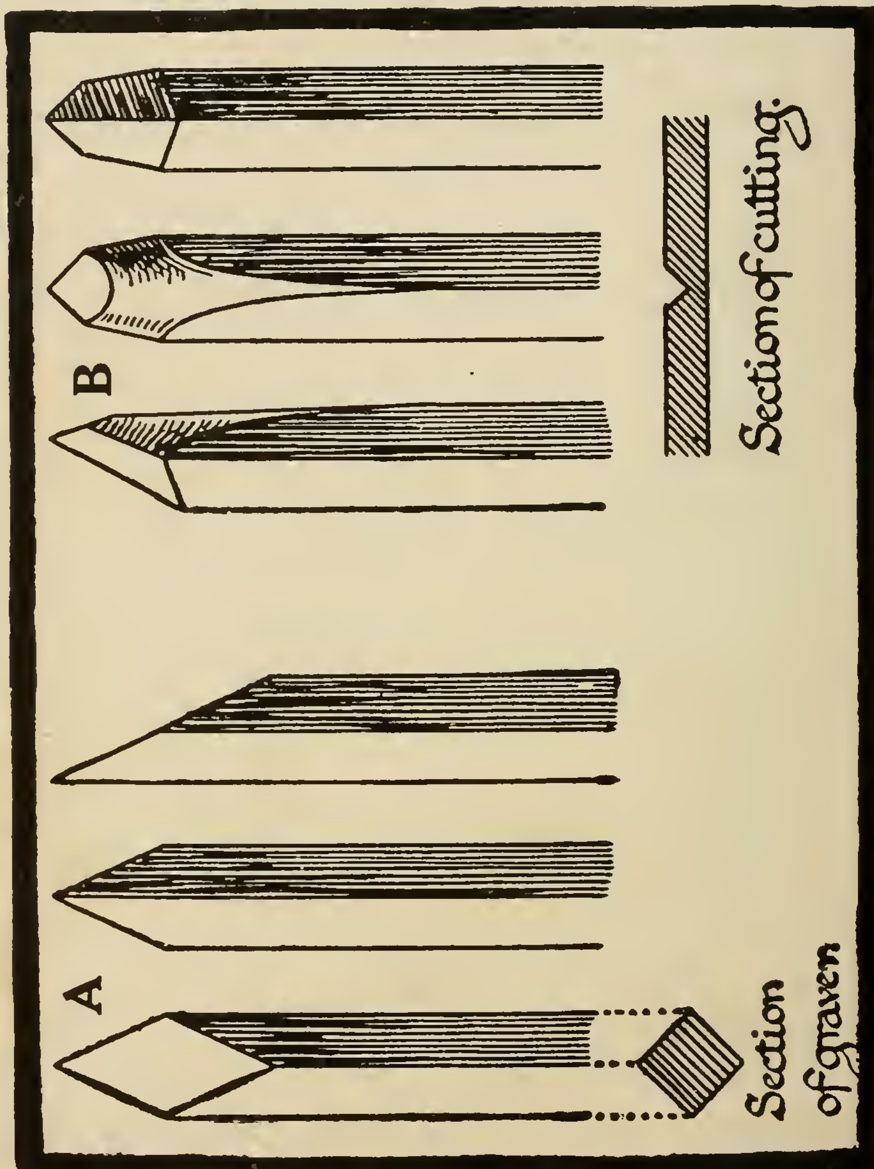


Fig. 186.

This graver should be much shorter than any other—not more than 4 inches long including handle, so that the crafts-

Digitized by Microsoft®

man may be able to exercise more control over the tool.

(5) E in fig. 188 shows a form of whet

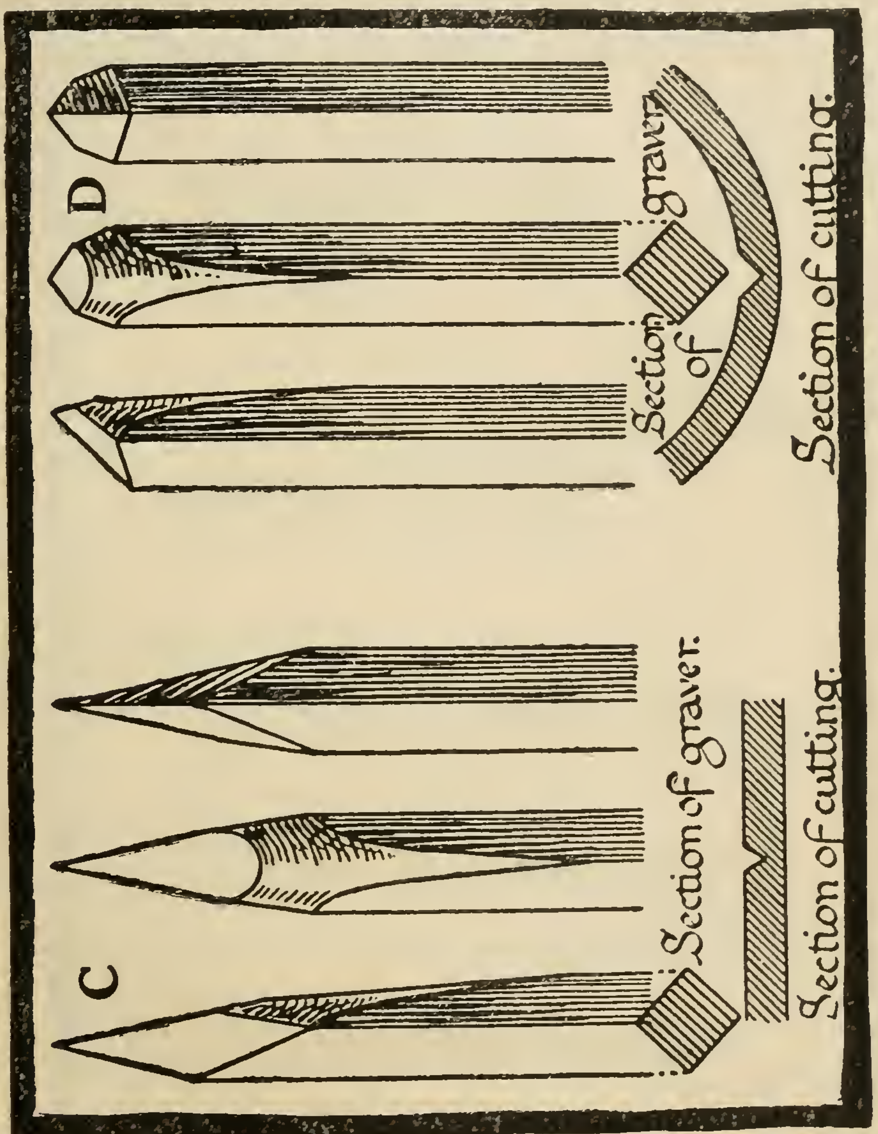


FIG. 187.

used for engraving any long curve on account of the sides of the whet not being of equal inclination. This allows the hand to fall into its natural position

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

while cutting, viz., slightly to the outside. Also the top of the whet is slightly inclined to the inside. This directs the

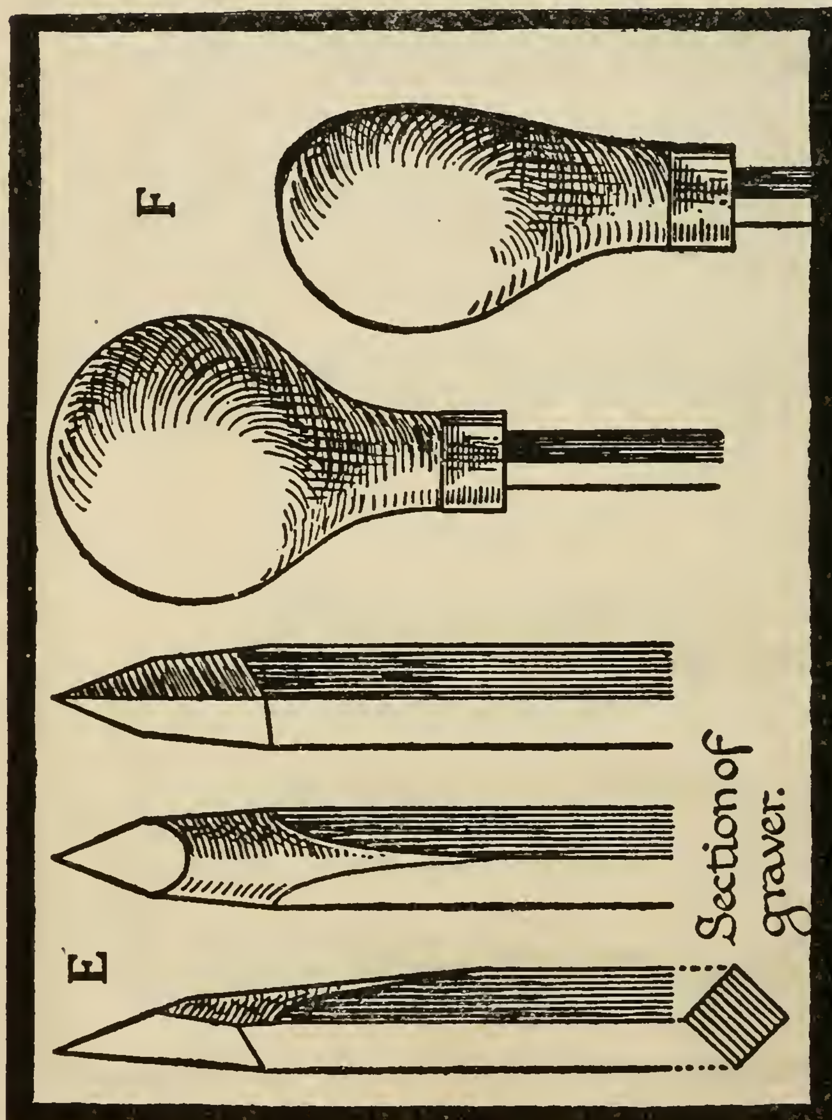


Fig. 188.

spiral chip of metal to the inside of the curve. This is a very important point. Unless this is done the chip will turn im-

Digitized by Microsoft ®

mediately in front of the graver and thus hide from view the line you are following.

(6) F in fig. 188 illustrates the most

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

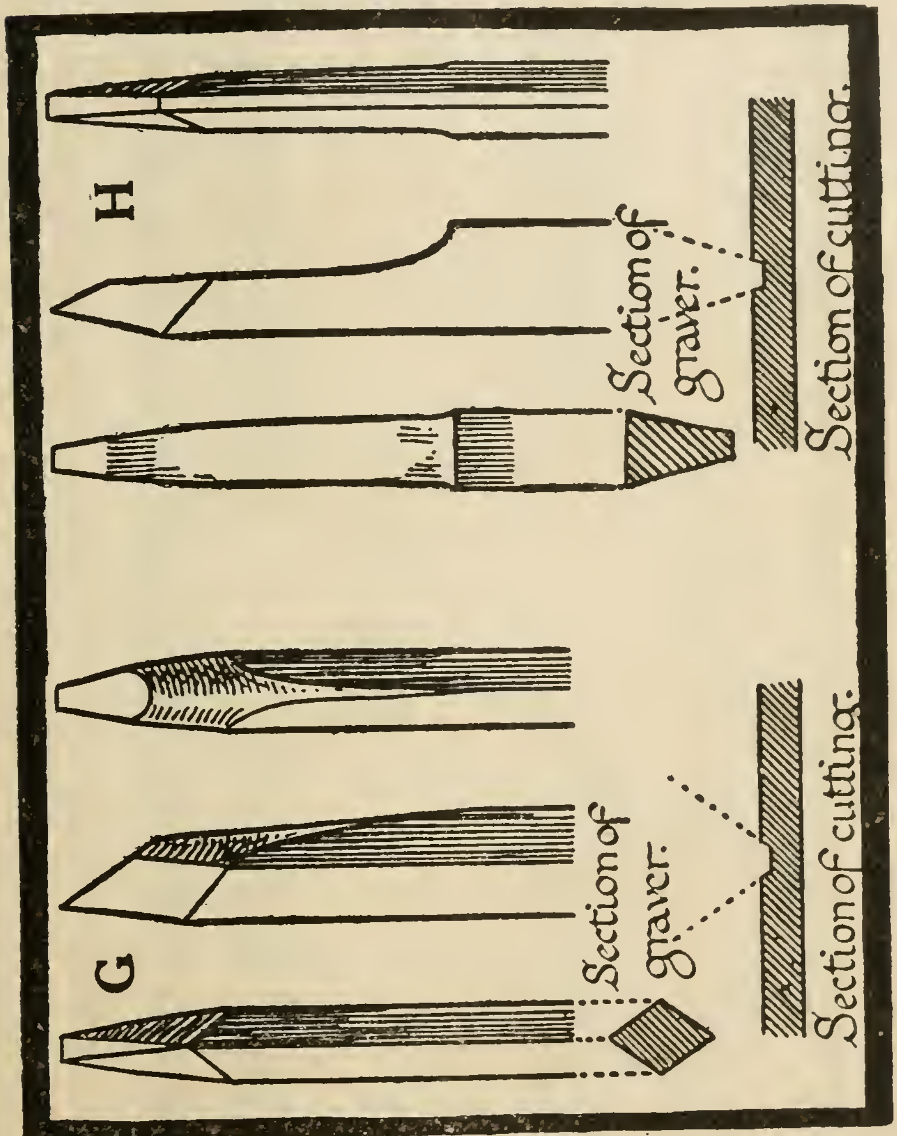


Fig. 189.

useful handle for decorative engraving. It is the ordinary pear-shaped handle, and must be filed to the requisite shape.

Digitized by Microsoft®

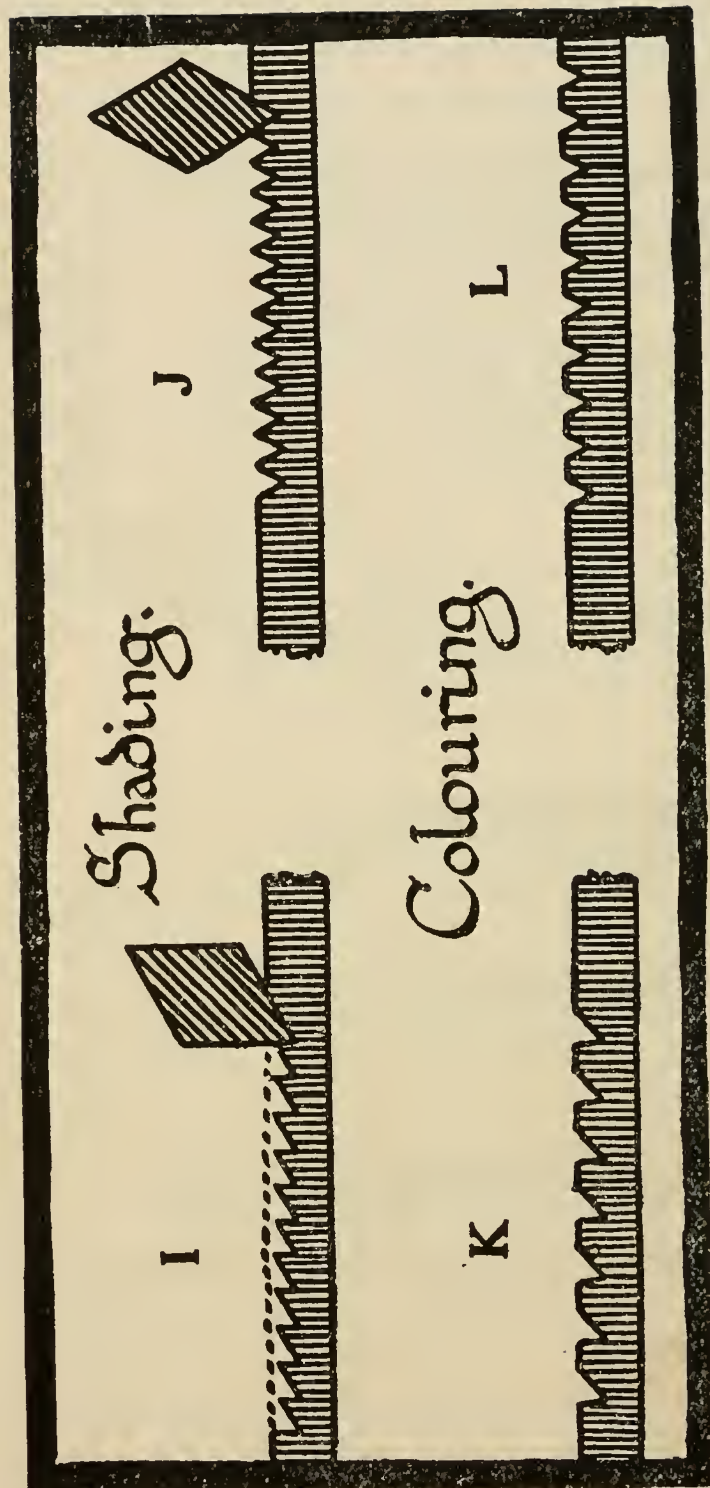


Fig. 190.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Possessing no sharp edges or angles, this handle can be easily manipulated by the third and fourth fingers, which is often necessary in fine shading.

Notes on the Whetting and Use of Gravers and Scorpers

(7) G in fig. 189 gives the scorper generally used for inscription work, and can be made out of an ordinary graver blank but of lozenge section. In whetting, the same rules apply as for the graver, except that a flat surface is added in place of the cutting edge of the graver.

(8) H shows a blank made especially for scorper work which can be bought. It has almost perpendicular sides, but for our purpose the lozenge graver blank is the best, because the inclined sides of the resulting cut give additional richness to the effect.

I and J, fig. 190, illustrate methods of shading a ground by means of parallel lines. Each stroke should be, as it were, cut into or against the stroke which preceded it, the graver being held at a slightly inclined angle (see I, fig. 190). This method produces a contrast of color in the cutting, whereas the method illustrated at J is more difficult and produces merely a monotonous effect. The same rule applies in coloring. (See illustrations K and L.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXVII

Box-Making

Box-making

To make a silver box somewhat similar methods are required to those outlined in the last chapter on the card case. A shape for the lid in iron, a little deeper than required, should be filed up true. This may be square, oblong, oval, circular, or any combination of these shapes, but if any elaborate pattern is necessary, the iron die should be as deep as the box and made so that it can be used as a stake round which the metal can be tapped to shape.

Assuming, however, that a simple oblong box is required, and that you have filed up the iron to the desired form for the lid, take a sheet of silver, gauge from 10 to 14 according to the subsequent treatment decided upon—10 for plain work or repoussé, 14 for champlevé, enamel, or niello—mark on it the shape of the lid, leaving enough metal all round to form the total height of the sides, including the lid, and a little to spare to allow for waste. Cut out the rectangles at

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®

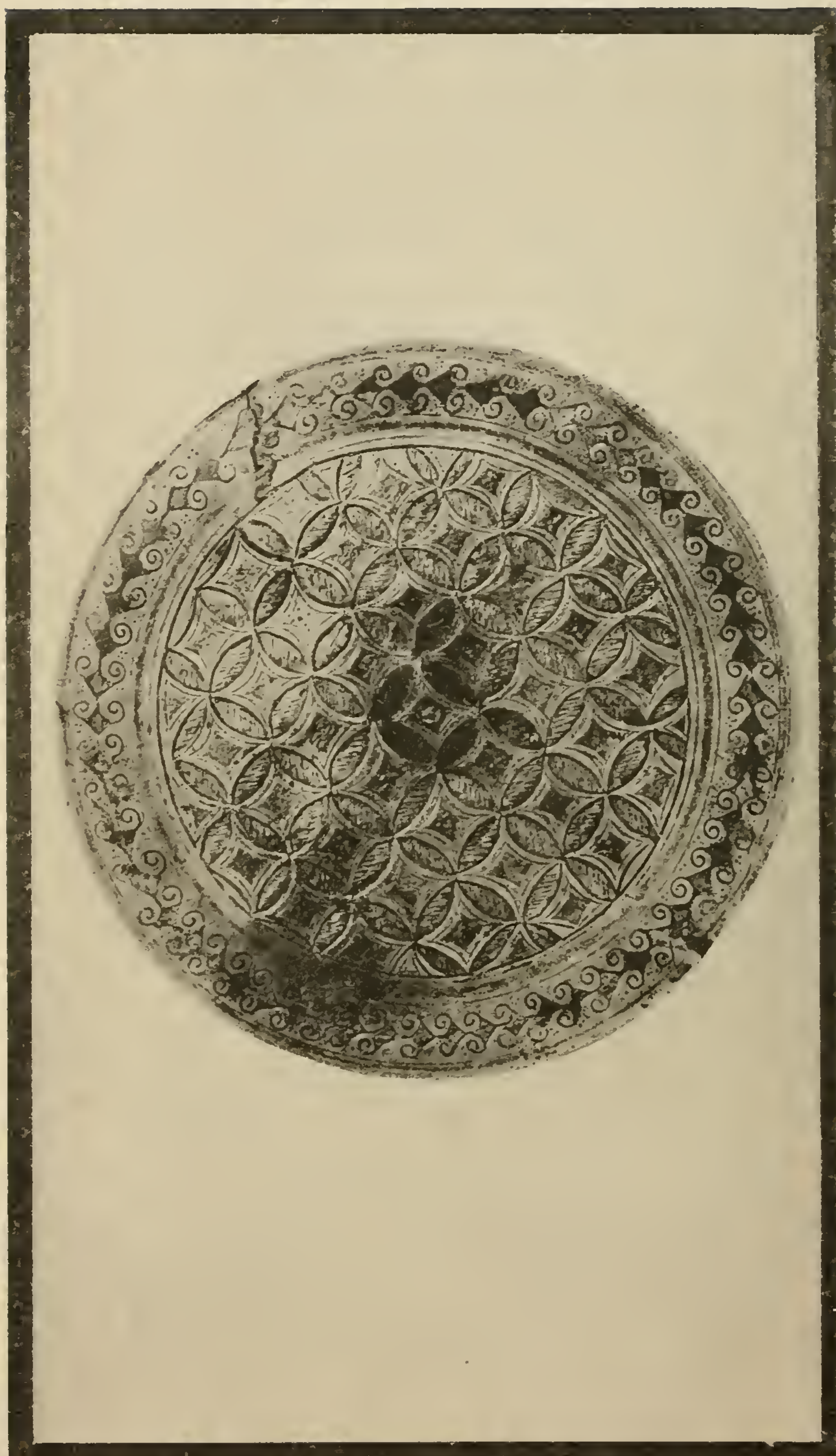


Fig. 197a.—Boss from a Roman Scabbard, showing decoration in Niello.

From the Museum of Historical Antiquities at Mainz.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

See page 315.

(To face page 311.)

the corners so that the metal can be bent down over the iron shape and meet at the angles to form the box. (See figs. 191 and 195.) If it be desired that the box should have a rounded or slightly domed top, the angles of the inner rectangle must be gapped with a knife-edged needle-file as shown

Box-making

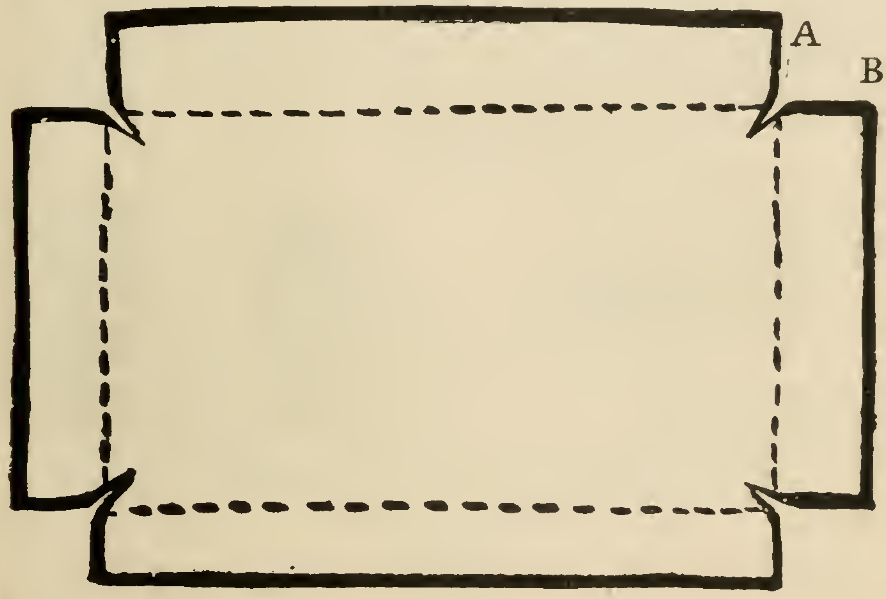


Fig. 191.

on the drawing. (See fig. 191.) The sides of the rectangles at A and B (see fig. 191) must now be chamfered, so that when the box is bent into shape the edges of the metal will meet in a clean miter. The lines forming the rectangle of the top of the box must now be cut deeply into the metal on the wrong side with a sharp

Digitized by Microsoft®

Box-making

router made of a lozenge graver bent at an angle. (See fig. 192.) This done, lay the metal on the iron stamp and tap the edges down all round until the silver has taken the required shape. Then take a short stake made just the length of the box inside and having a beveled edge like fig. 193, and if it be square-edged, on this tap the edge of the lid true all round. Use a similar short stake with a rounded edge as

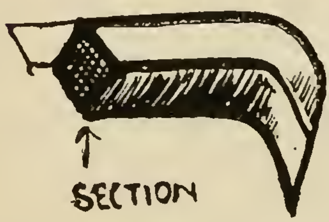


Fig. 192.

Fig. 193.

Fig. 194.

in fig. 194 if the box should have a rounded top. Next tie the box round with binding-wire and solder the angles cleanly and soundly, without using too much solder and taking care to cut the solder up in neat paillons of even size, setting them along the inside of each angle. This done, remove the binding-wire and true up the shape in case it may have got distorted in the flame. Prepare a sheet of silver for the bottom, of the same

Digitized by Microsoft®

gauge as that for the sides, and a little larger all round than the box. The size of this projection will depend on the treatment of the box, but a slight projection is always necessary for successful soldering and clean finish. You will now mark the position of the joint between the lid and the body of the box, and with a saw cut through two angles of the box a little Box-making

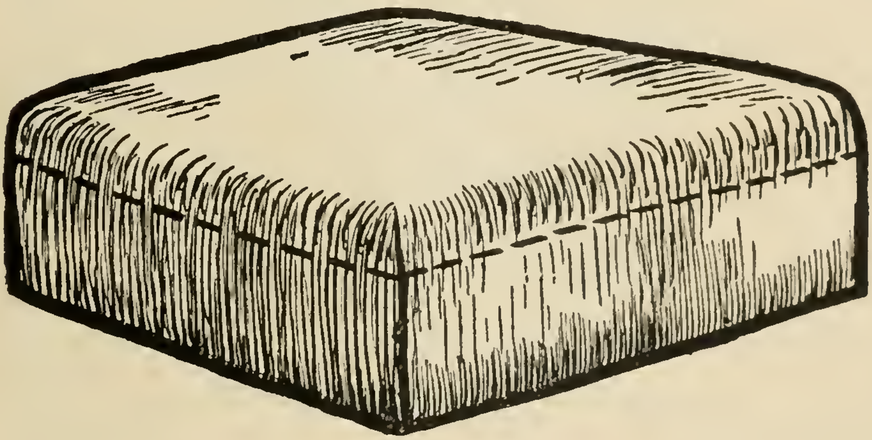


Fig. 195.

way along this line. (See fig. 195.) This is to allow the air to escape when soldering. Scrape the bottom plate all round where the sides touch it, and tie it and the box securely together with strong but not too stout binding-wire. If the wire be too stout it will bend the box, and damage may be done in a few seconds that may take hours to repair. If the wire be

Digitized by Microsoft®

 too thin it will burn away with the heat required to run the solder. When soldered securely all round, the box and lid may be sawn apart, the meeting edges filed and rubbed down on the flatting-stone until they meet truly all round. The edges of the box must now be thickened. This is done by taking a length of silver wire $\frac{1}{8} \times \frac{1}{16}$ ins. in cross section and fitting a frame of this exactly inside the lid and the box all round, each clamped and soldered securely into its place. (See fig. 196.)

Fig. 196.

This done, the edge of box and lid must be trued on the face plate, and when both fit together perfectly, the facing or bezel or shutting edge should be prepared. The bezel or facing is simply a strip of thin metal about size 8, fitted to the inside of the facing of the box on three sides, and projecting above it about $\frac{3}{16}$ of an inch, so that the lid fits tightly over it. (See fig. 197.) The back requires no facing because of the hinge. The bezel must be made just to fit down to the bottom edge of the facing so that it may make a neat finish inside.

Fig. 197.

Digitized by Microsoft®

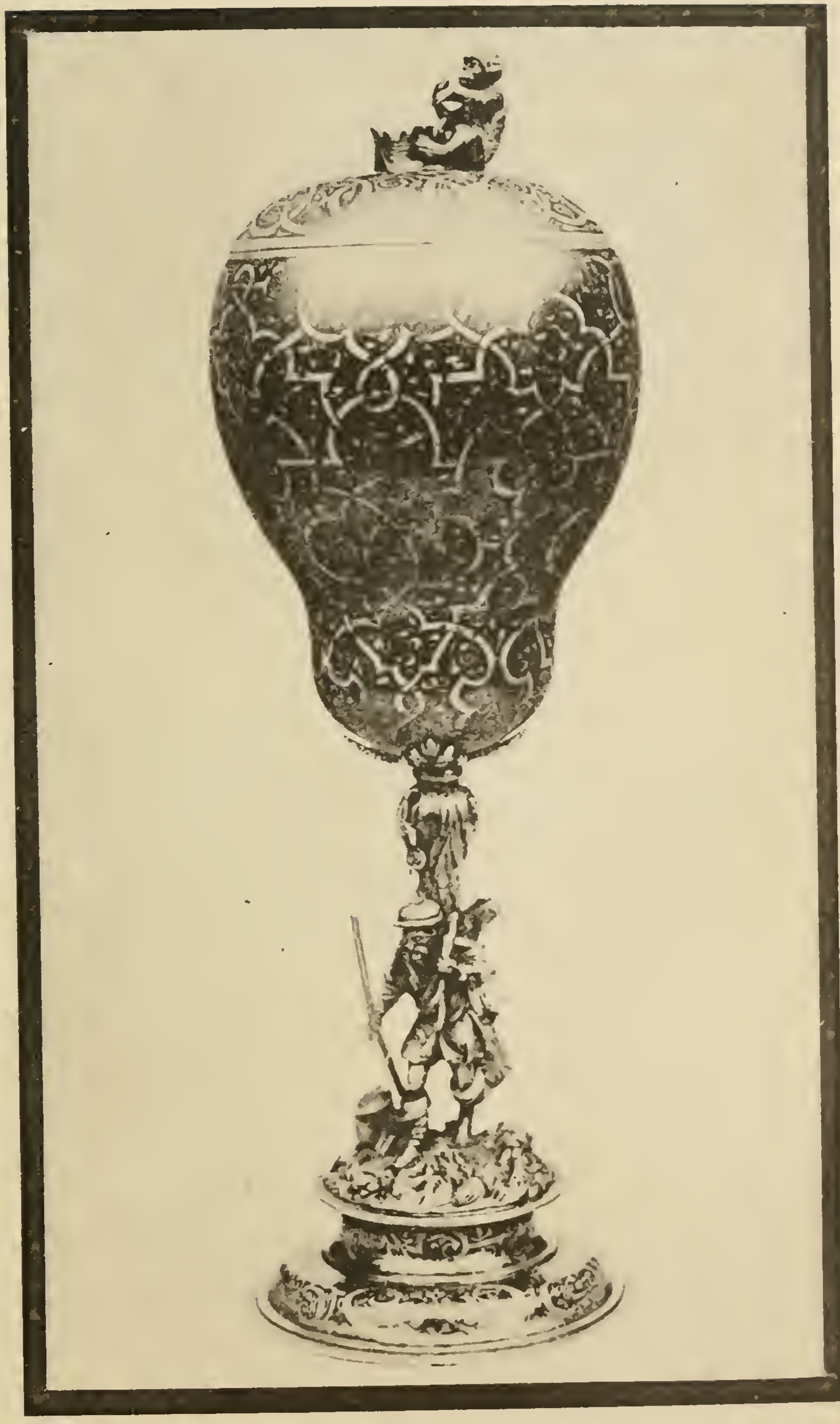


Fig. 198.—Beaten Cup and Cover in Silver and Niello.
From the Museum at Nuremburg.
See page 315.

(To face page 314.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

The joint or hinge can now be prepared. In this, the procedure described for the hinge of the card case may be followed, but hinges similar to those on mediæval caskets are easy to make and give opportunities of rich decoration. The subsequent decoration, whether inlay, champlevé, cloisonné, or engraving, is a matter for each to decide for himself. Box-making

CHAPTER XXXVIII

Niello Work

Niello work is a method of enriching the surface of gold or other work by first engraving it and then filling the channels left by the graver (see figs. 197 A and 198) with a lustrous, black, easily fusible alloy of silver, lead, copper, and sulfur (see figs. 197 A —199). Niello Work

The process is one of very great antiquity. Of its origin and development nothing is really known save that it is first found in Egyptian tombs, and has always been largely used in the East. The process of manufacture is described by Pliny and Theophilus and Cellini, and is

Digitized by Microsoft®

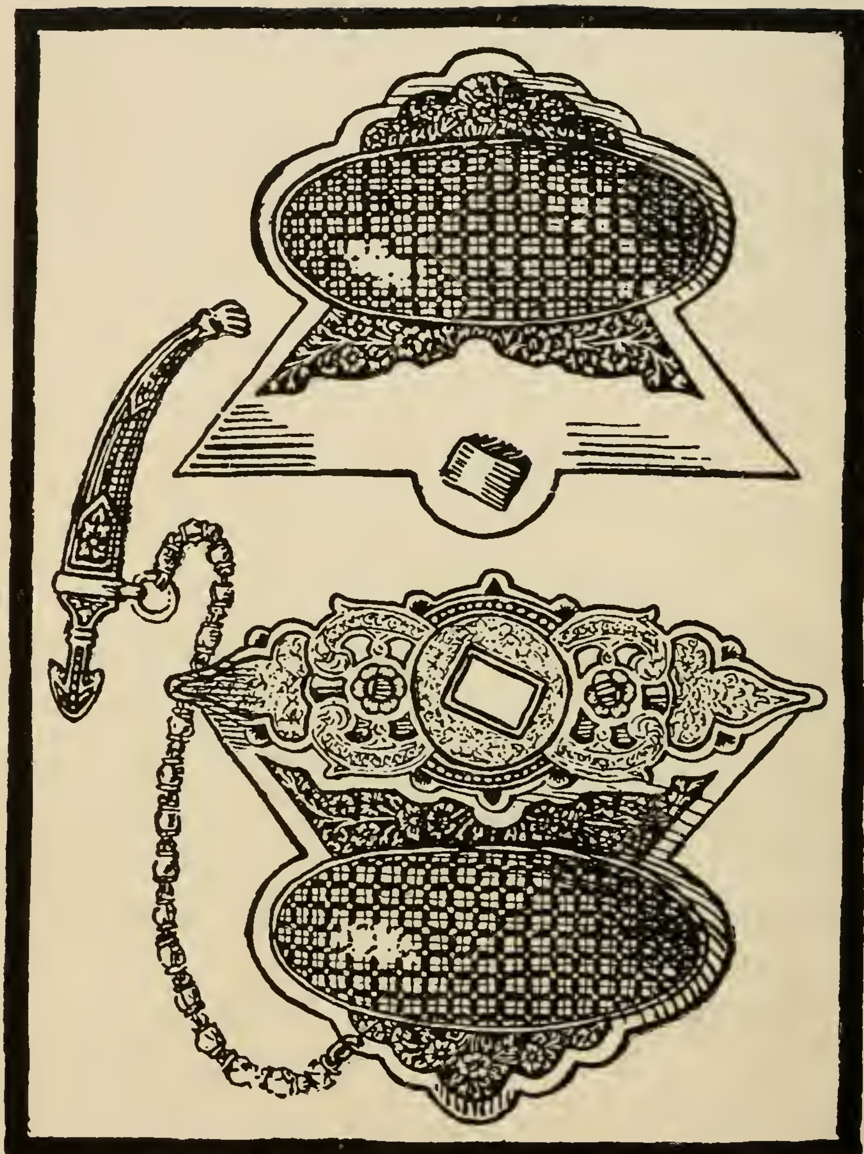


Fig. 199.

Digitized by Microsoft®

found in many books of receipts for gold- and silver-smith's work. Niello Work

The following formulæ may be found useful. They are taken by kind permission from the admirable and beautifully illustrated treatise on "Niello" by Herr Marc. Rosenberg, which should be in the hands of every worker:—

Pliny, *Nat. Hist.*, xxxiii. 46.	Silver	3 parts
	Sulfur	2 ,,
	Copper	1 part
Cellini.	Silver	1 ,,
	Sulfur	half a handful
	Copper	2 parts
	Lead	3 ,,
Augsburg recipe, No. 1.	Silver	1 part
	Copper	1 ,,
	Lead	2 parts
Augsburg recipe, No. 2.	Sulfur	1 part
	Lead	1 ,,
	Quicksilver	1 ,,
Rucklin, *Schmuckbuch*, No. 1.	Silver	3 parts
	Sulfur	6 ,,
	Copper	5 ,,
	Lead	7 ,,
	Sal-ammoniac	2 ,,
	Borax	24 ,,
Rucklin, *Schmuckbuch*, No. 2.	Silver	1 part
	Sulfur	5 parts
	Copper	2 ,,
	Lead	4 ,,

Digitized by Microsoft®

Niello Work

M. E. Vernier in his most inspiring book on "Egyptian Jewellery" gives the following recipes:—

Persian Niello.	Silver	15.30 grms.
	Copper	76.00 ,,
	Lead	106.00 ,,
	Flowers of sulfur	367.00 ,,
	Sal-ammoniac	76.00 ,,
Modern French Recipe.	Silver	30 parts
	Copper	72 ,,
	Lead	50 ,,
	Borax	36 ,,
	Sulfur	384 ,,

An alloy which I find most useful is prepared as follows:—

Take of fine silver	6 dwts.	.300
" " copper	2 ,,	.100
" " lead	1 dwt	.050
" " flowers of sulfur	½ oz.	.500

Melt the silver and copper together with a little borax. When well fused, add the lead well covered with sulfur in a screw of tissue paper. Mix the whole thoroughly by stirring with a piece of dry stick. Quickly pour the mixture into a small crucible in which the ½ oz. of sulfur has been placed. The size of the

Digitized by Microsoft®

crucible should be what is known as "½" size.

Remelt the alloy and pour it out on an iron or steel slab, and while still hot beat it out thin with a hammer. Should it cool before it is thin enough, warm it again with the blow-pipe, and beat it out until it is about 8 in gauge.

I have experimented on all the recipes given above, but only the Persian and modern French recipes gave results which were entirely satisfactory. That given by Cellini is workable but extremely hard.

The work to be decorated should have the parts to be black cleanly cut away with the scorper or graver, as for champlevé work, but the depth of the cutting need not be quite so great.

Should there be, however, any such spaces of black, care must be taken that the ground of these spaces is cut away neatly and evenly. Should this precaution be neglected, portions of the ground will appear through the niello during the finishing processes, and spoil the work. When all is ready, grind up a portion of the prepared niello in an agate mortar, until it is of the fineness of fine

Digitized by Microsoft®

Niello Work sand. Then paint all the portions to be decorated with a weak solution of borax and water,[1] and afterward, with a spatula, fill the spaces with the ground niello, mixing it with a very little of the borax solution. This done, remove the surplus water with a piece of blotting paper and gently heat the work in a muffle furnace or with the blow-pipe until the niello melts and runs into the spaces prepared for it. If a blow-pipe be used, the flame must not be allowed to play directly on the niello, as this will cause it to burn and produce cavities and defects in the surface when the work is polished. When the spaces are well filled, and the work is cool, take a sand-paper stick and gently rub the work with it until the silver background everywhere appears. Continue polishing with water of Ayr stone and water, and finish off with the pumice buff. The final polish can be given with crocus and rouge.

Small engraved panels can be done in this way, and when the lines are filled with niello and the whole surface polished they look very beautiful.

---

[1] Sal-ammoniac may be used instead of borax.

Digitized by Microsoft®

CHAPTER XXXIX

Japanese Methods—Incrustation and Inlay—Of Inlaying—Simple Inlay: Another Method

Japanese Methods

Incrustation and Inlay

All who have seen Japanese gold- and silver-smiths at work must have been deeply impressed not only by the simplicity of the tools and methods but by the miraculous skill with which these tools and methods are employed.

I have had the privilege of being instructed by Professor Unno Bisei of the Tokio Fine Art College, and the following chapters are based on notes made from his demonstrations. They have in addition been entirely revised by Professor Unno himself. The illustrations are from his own diagrams.

The tools required are (1) a light chasing-hammer (see fig. 205); (2) a number of chisels of varying widths sharpened as shown in figs. 202 and 215.

The whetting of these chisels must be done with the greatest nicety, as the

Digitized by Microsoft®

success of this work is largely dependent on the perfection of the cutting-edge. In no case should a tool be used when it is blunt.

Of Inlaying

A simple piece of inlay such as the running border A (fig. 200) would be done in this way.

Set the work to be ornamented on a pitch-block as if for repoussé. Carefully scratch or draw the pattern upon the metal. Place the work in front of you so that the line of ornament is perpendicular to yourself; then holding the chisel between the thumb and first two fingers (see fig. 201), with the head of the chisel slanting away from you, drive it along the line toward you, taking care that the cut be not too deep or too shallow. Remove the resulting curved chip of metal, and then continue the cut until you have carried the line as far as necessary (see figs. 202 and 203).

On examining the cut you will find that the line is burred upon both sides.

The leaves should be cut by somewhat broader chisels with edges slightly on the slant.

Digitized by Microsoft®

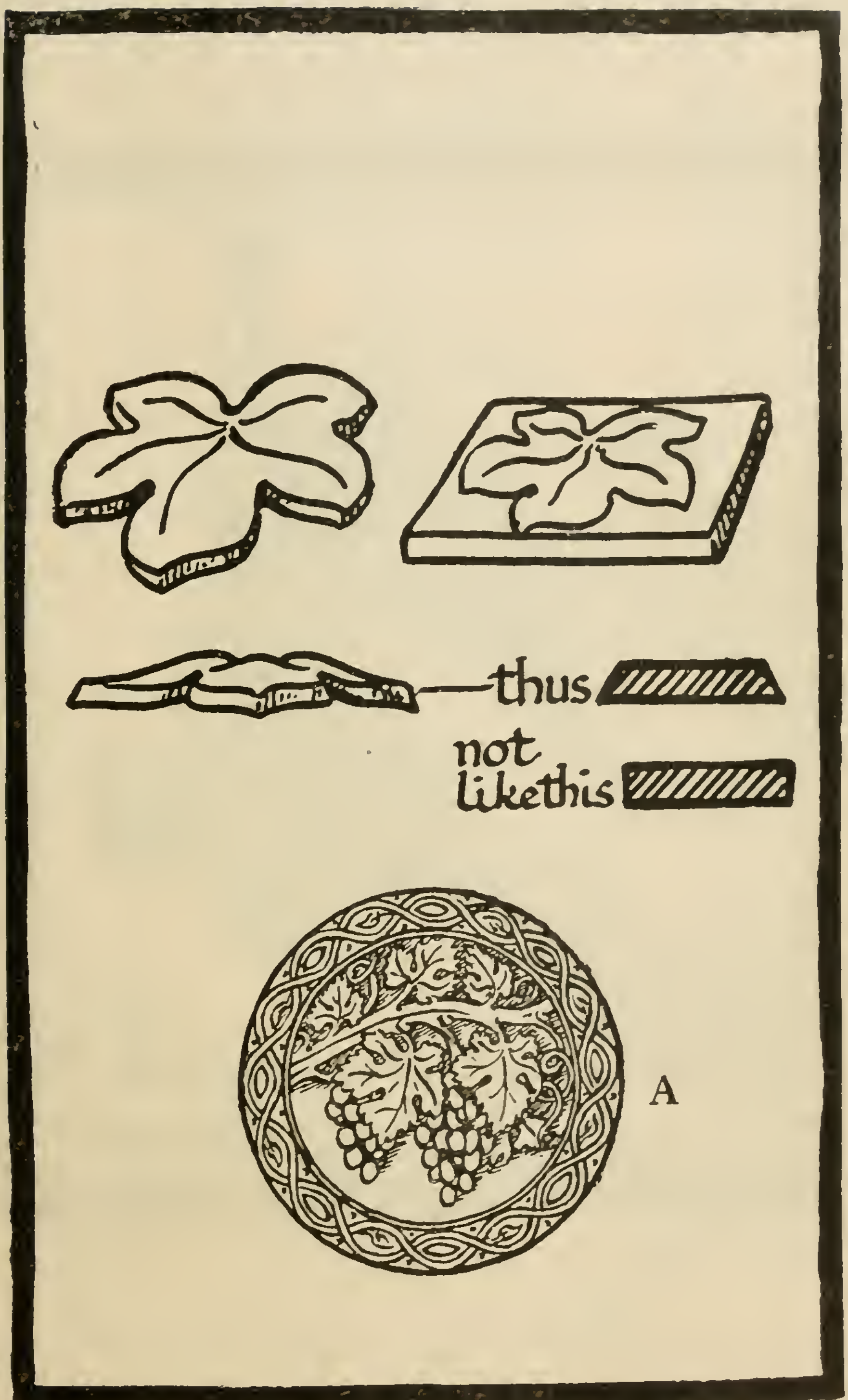


Fig. 200.

Digitized by Microsoft®

This slant enables the worker not only to vary the depth and slope of the cut

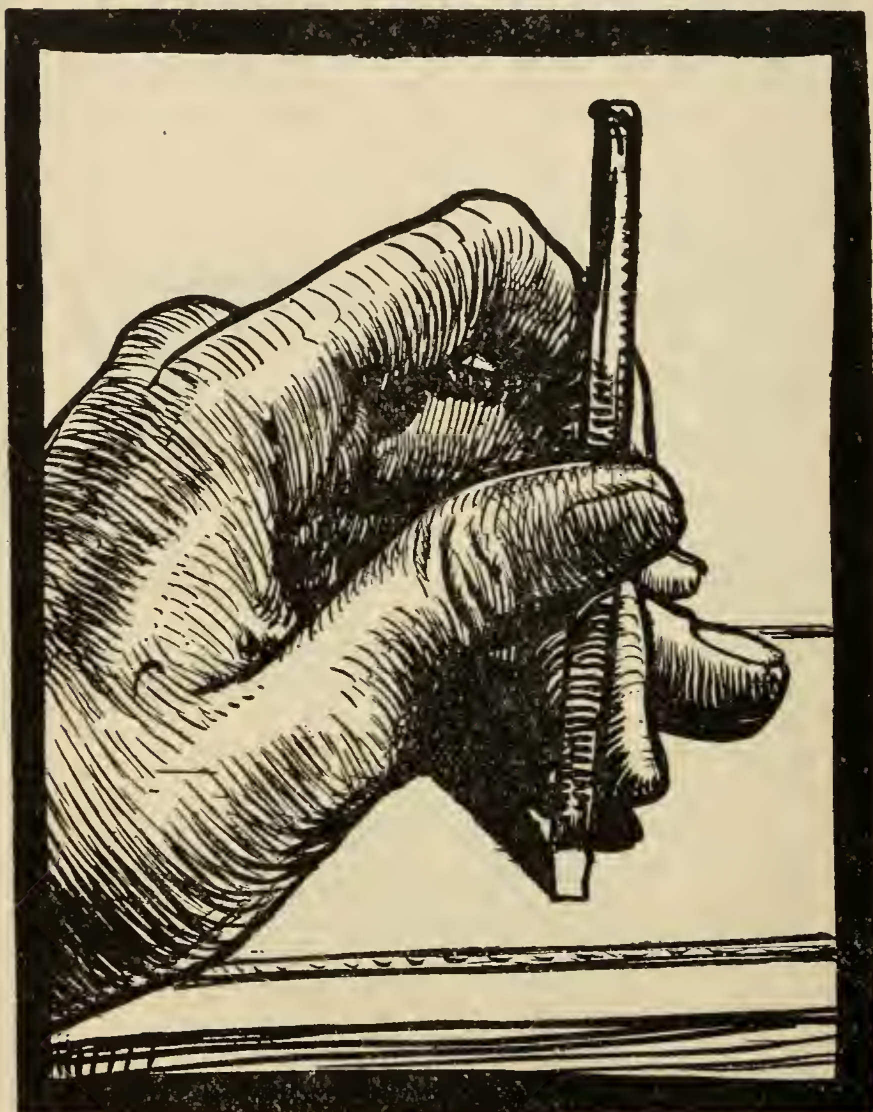


Fig. 201.—How to hold the Punch for Inlaying.

at will; it enables him also to keep the outline edge of the cut always the deepest. This is necessary for the proper retention

Digitized by Microsoft®

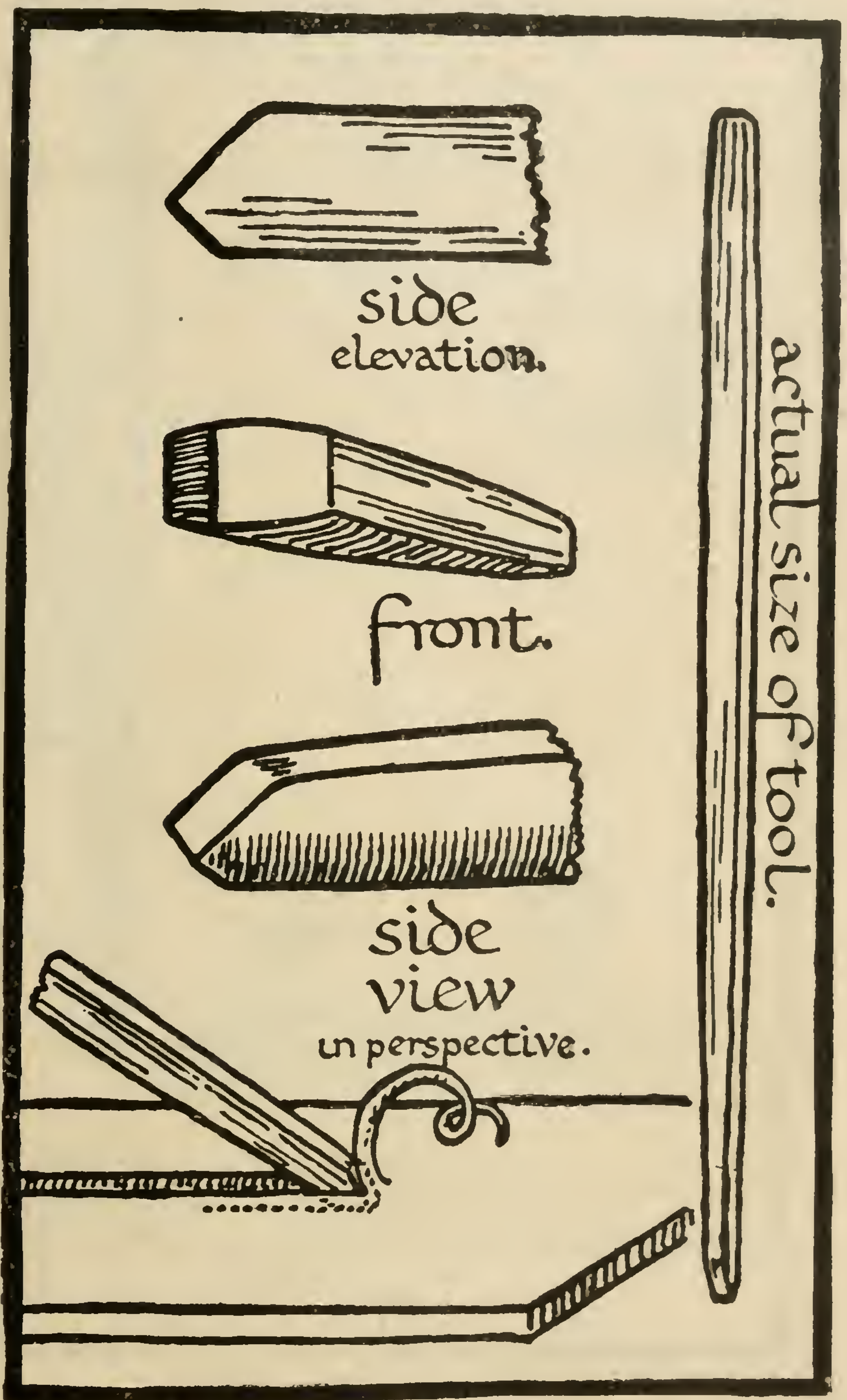


Fig. 202.

Digitized by Microsoft®

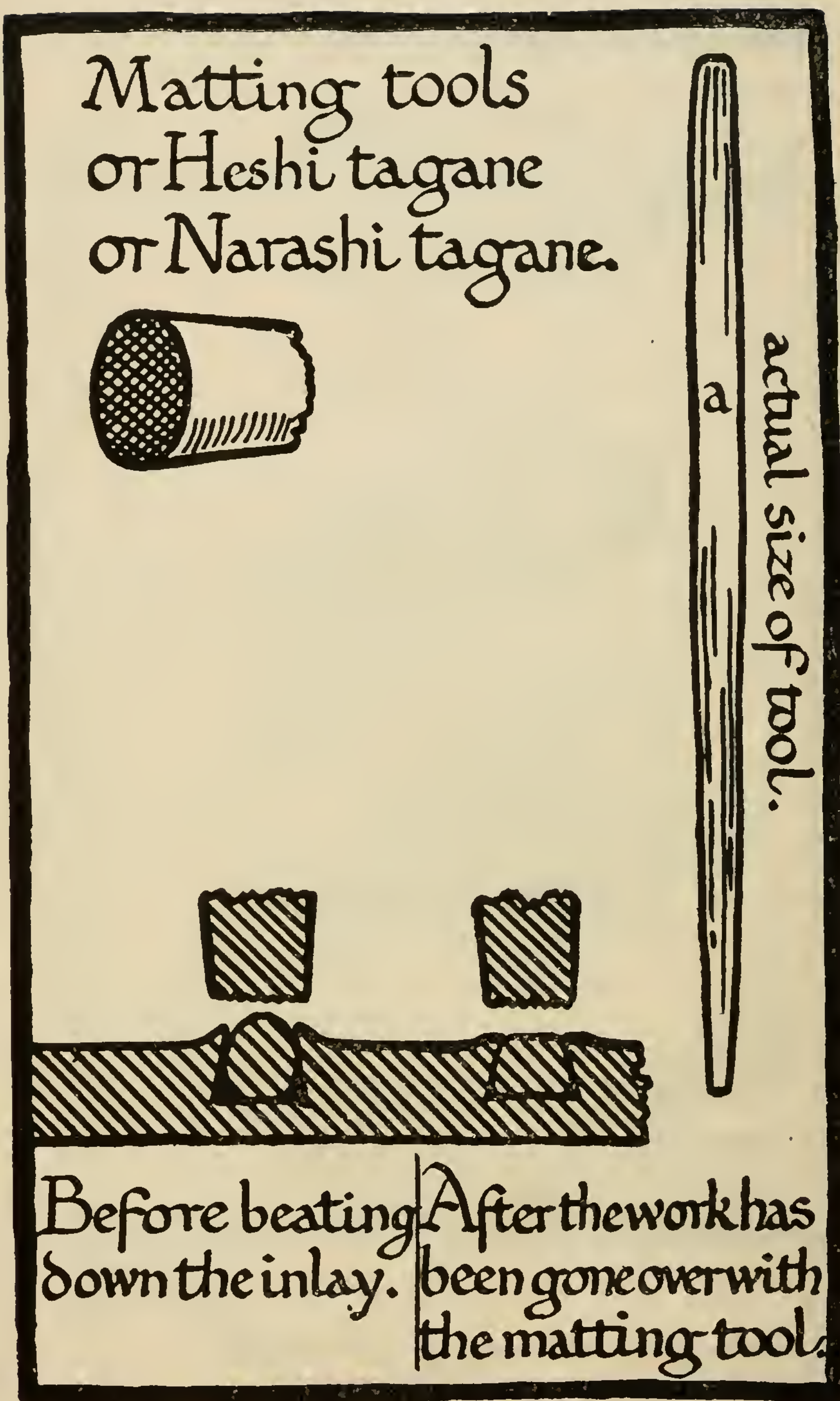


Fig. 203.

Digitized by Microsoft®

of the inlaid metal. For larger spaces the ground within the outline is cut away and the floor of the recess leveled so as to have more room for the required thickness of metal.

When the pattern has in this way been completely outlined, get gold or silver wire of the exact width of the cut for the stem; anneal it, take a flat matting-tool (see fig. 203), insert the end of the wire in the channel, and give it a tap with the punch so as to fix it firmly in place. Then lay the wire in place along the cut and press it into position with the matting-tool along the sides of the cut without touching the wire. This drives down the burr raised up in the process of cutting, and produces the undercut necessary to hold the wire in place.

When inlaying broader wire it is well to have it oblong in section. One edge of the wire is then rubbed with the burnisher until a slight burr is produced on each side  thus.

The wire thus prepared is laid in the channel and fixed with the matting-tool as before.

Digitized by Microsoft®

A

B

FIG. 204.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Then with the same punch planish the wire down and make it even with the whole surface. The leaves are done in a similar way. The shapes are first of all cut from sheet-metal of the necessary thickness, and then filed to fit the excavation in the ground. Each leaf is then laid on a lead-block or on pitch and slightly bent (see A and B, fig. 204) or domed up with a tap by a rounded punch. Thus prepared it is dropped hollow side downward into the excavation and tapped lightly with the small hammer. This spreads the metal out and at once makes it fit into the excavation, and when the burred edge of the latter is brought over by the matting and planishing punches it is held firmly in place.

The process is repeated until the pattern is complete. The surface is then cleaned with fine emery or sand paper, and stoned and polished in the usual way.

Simple Inlay—Another Method

The tools required for this are short, chisel-shaped tracers, curved and flat and square edged, of various sizes, a few

Digitized by Microsoft®

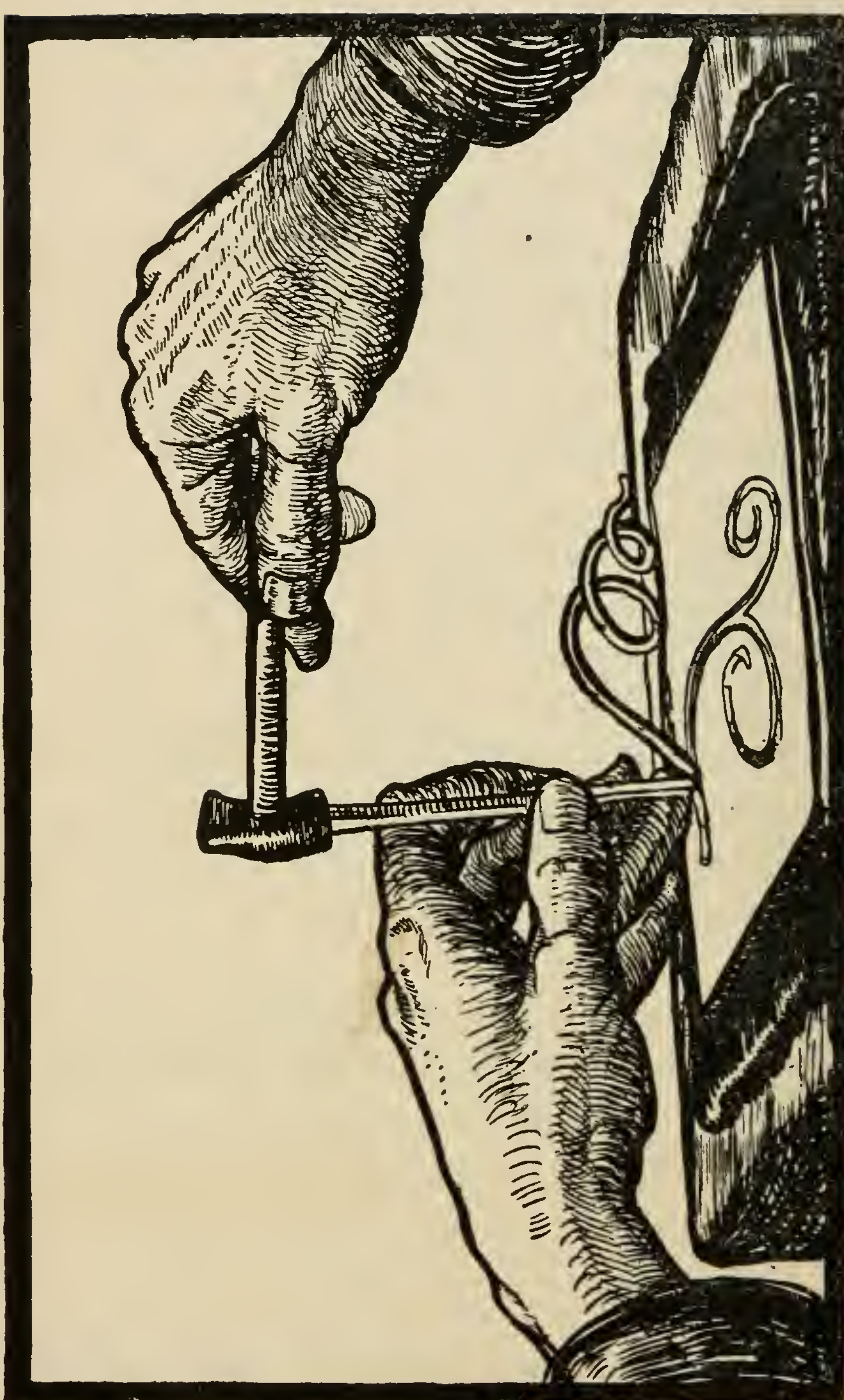


Fig. 205.—Method of Inlaying Wire.

Digitized by Microsoft®

matting-tools, and a few sharp cutting-chisels.

Suppose the pattern to be inlaid is something like that shown in the border of A, fig. 200, or in fig. 205. Having made the tracing from your drawing, transfer it with the pricker to the surface of the metal which you have previously stoned and polished and fixed on the pitch-block. Take the fine wire you propose to inlay, anneal it carefully, and select a beveled tracing-tool with an edge like fig. 206 in side elevation, and trace the outline carefully, driving the punch in deeply. This done, take a flat-edged tracer (see fig. 207), the width of which is exactly the diameter of the wire to be inlaid, and go over the line already traced, beating down the ground to the required depth to receive the wire. The section of the metal will now be as in fig. 208; that is, the last tracing will have left the ridges formed by the first tracer, while deepening and widening the channel.

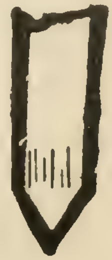


Fig. 206.

Fig. 207.

Fig. 208.

Digitized by Microsoft®

At this point it is well to try if the wire will lie comfortably in the groove. If it does not, then go over the work with a very slightly broader tracer. Insert the wire, fix the end with a tap with the hammer or the matting-tool, bend the wire into its place with the fingers, drive it home with a boxwood punch, and trace lightly on either side of it with the matting-punch, so that the raised burr is driven down against the sides of the wire. Next beat down the wire itself into the under-cut channel which the matting-tool has made (see fig. 209) by driving over the burred edges.

Fig. 209.

The inlay is now secure, and the metal can be filed or made smooth with the emery-cloth, and then stoned and polished (see fig. 203).

Should the wire at any stage become springy after you have hammered it into its place, cut the springy portion out, re-anneal it, and repeat the process above described, deepening the channel if necessary.

Should you wish to have the wire inlay appear as if slightly raised above the

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Incrustation and Inlay

surface, you can do so by making a tool like a planisher but having a shallow groove filed on the top surface. The section of this groove (see fig. 210) should be a quarter of the circumference of the wire before inlaying. The edges of the groove and the tool should be nicely rounded and made smooth to the touch with fine emery-cloth before being used. You can now go over the inlaid wire and drive down the metal on either side, using the tool as you would a tracer. The outer edges of the slight grooves resulting from this can be removed with a planisher, or they can be scraped off with the chisel edge of the burnisher, or the ground can be matted, pearled, or tooled in any way you may select.

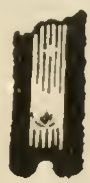


Fig. 210.

CHAPTER XL

Raised Inlay

Raised Inlay

Raised inlay is done as follows:—

Having made a perfectly clean drawing of what you propose to make—let us suppose a circular silver panel for a buckle, as in figs. 200, 204 and 212 C—take your silver,

Digitized by Microsoft®

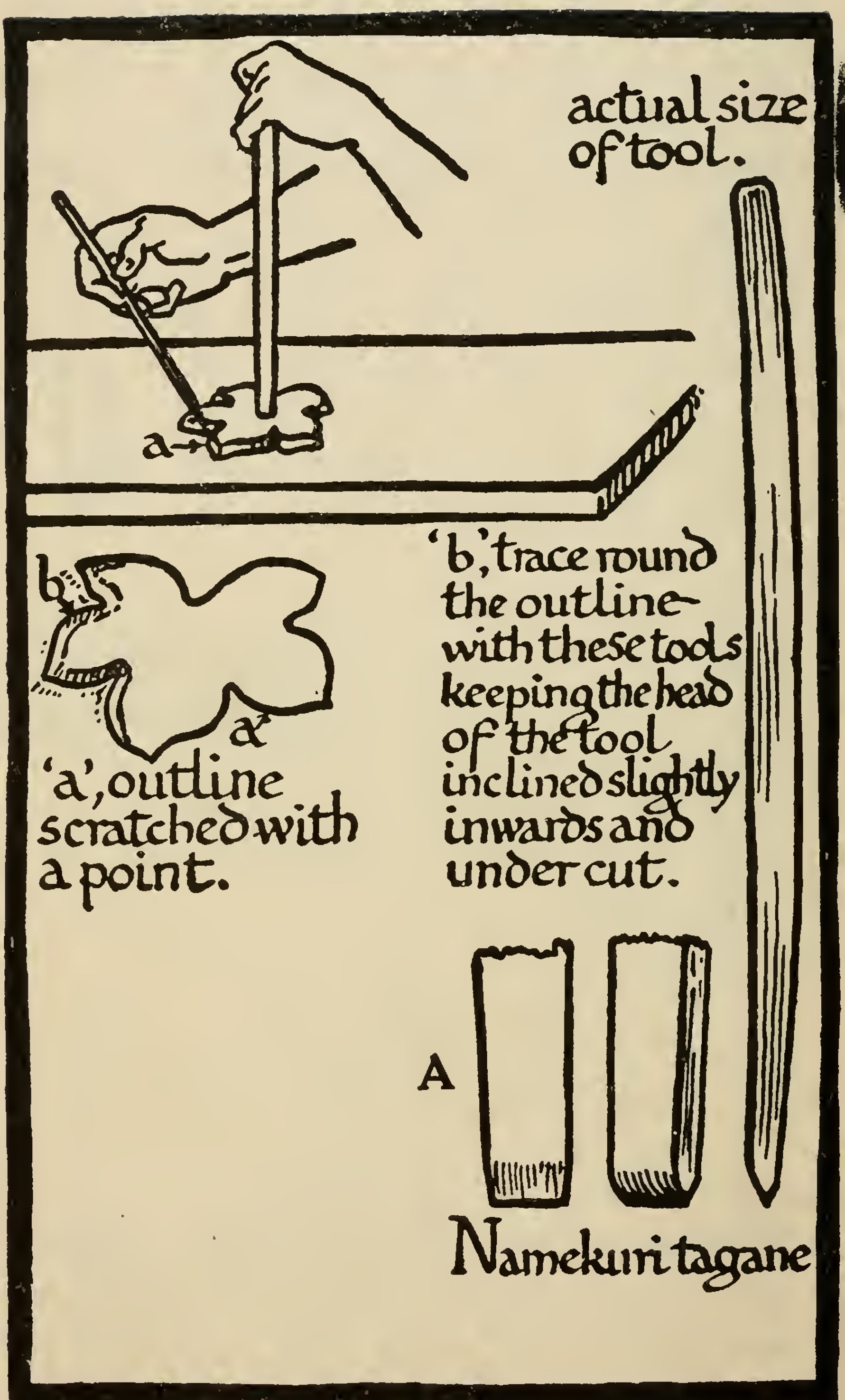


Fig. 211.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

which should not be less than size 14, cut out and dome up the shape, file the edge clean and stone the surface until smooth.

Fix it on a pitch-block, taking special care that the pitch shall be neither too hard nor too soft, but so that it can be easily indented with the nail when cold. The composition used by Japanese artists, and made from pine resin and plaster, is better than the ordinary pitch and plaster compound used in repoussé work.

Fix the panel on the pitch, and having made a tracing of the design, transfer it by pricking round the outlines with a fine point. This done, take your gold—fine gold, twenty-two carat and sixteen carat gold, the last two alloyed with fine silver only for the leaves, the stems, and the grapes—roll it out to about size 8, and transfer carefully the drawings of the leaves and grapes and stems to their respective alloys, and cut round the outline carefully with a fine chisel on a steel bench-stake or anvil.

File the shapes true with a fine needle-file, giving each leaf a slight bevel (see fig. 200), slightly dome each piece, and bend it so that it will lie comfortably in

Digitized by Microsoft®

A

B

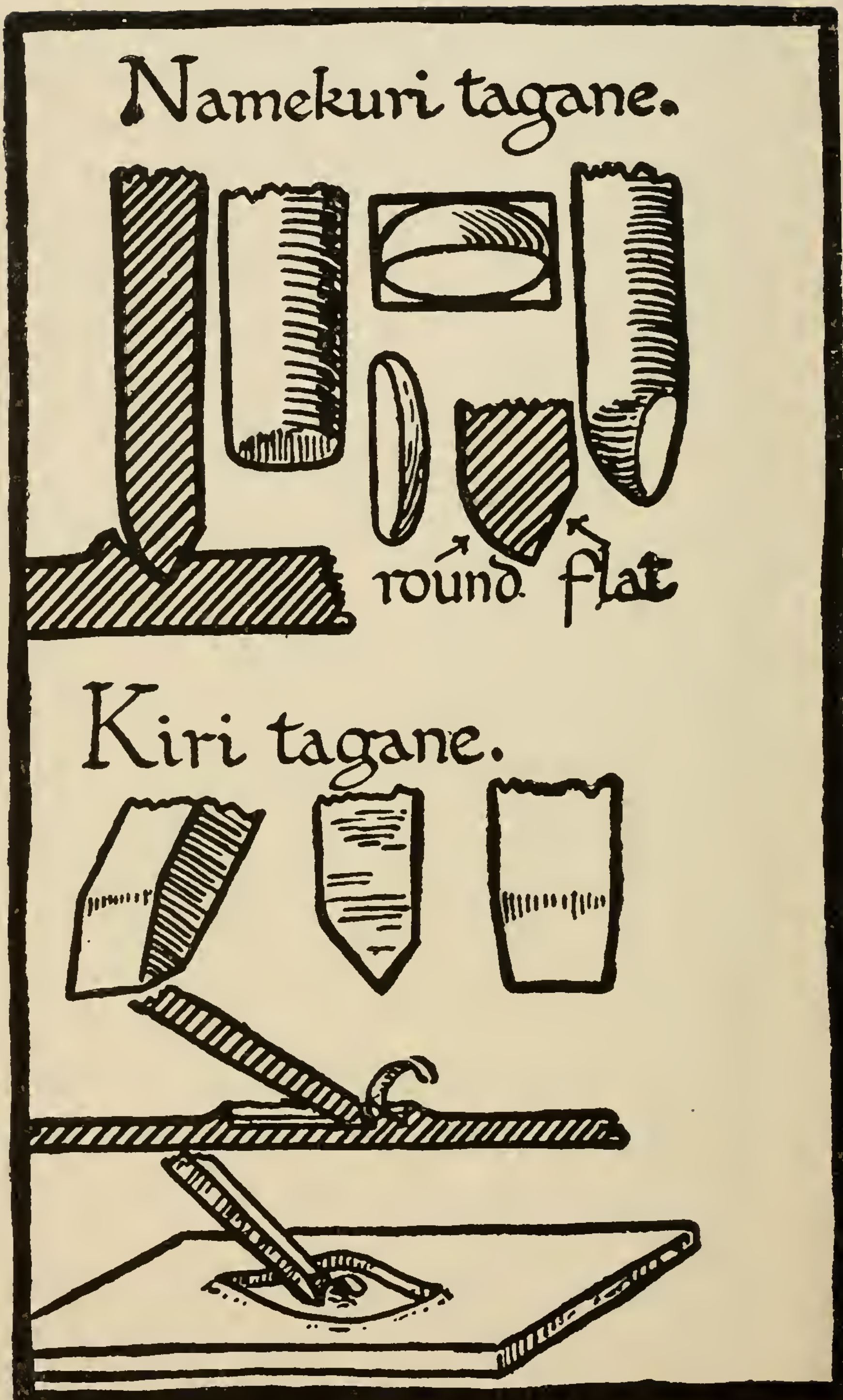


FIG. 212.

Digitized by Microsoft®

its place on the ground prepared. Then with a point scratch the outline of that leaf which is lowest in relief upon the silver exactly in its place (see fig. 211). Raised Inlay

This done, take a sharp tracer with beveled edge, like the enlarged drawing (A, fig. 211), and trace round the outline, keeping the head of the tool inclined slightly inward, so that the outline is slightly undercut, and at the same time a sharp edge or burr is raised all round.

This burr is a very important point, as a great deal of the success of the work depends upon it. When the outline is clear, take the leaf or portion of a leaf and lay it in the place to see if it fit the outline (see fig. 212 C). Correct it wherever necessary with great care. When the leaf appears to fit, take a small chisel, Kiritagane (see fig. 212, B), and first go round the outline, cutting away the inner burr all round, and then remove the ground to a depth just sufficient to allow the leaf its proper projection. Fix the leaf in place, and if it should not exactly fit in every place, then take the tracer and go round the outline, correcting it where necessary and driving back the metal, keeping always the burr and the

Digitized by Microsoft®

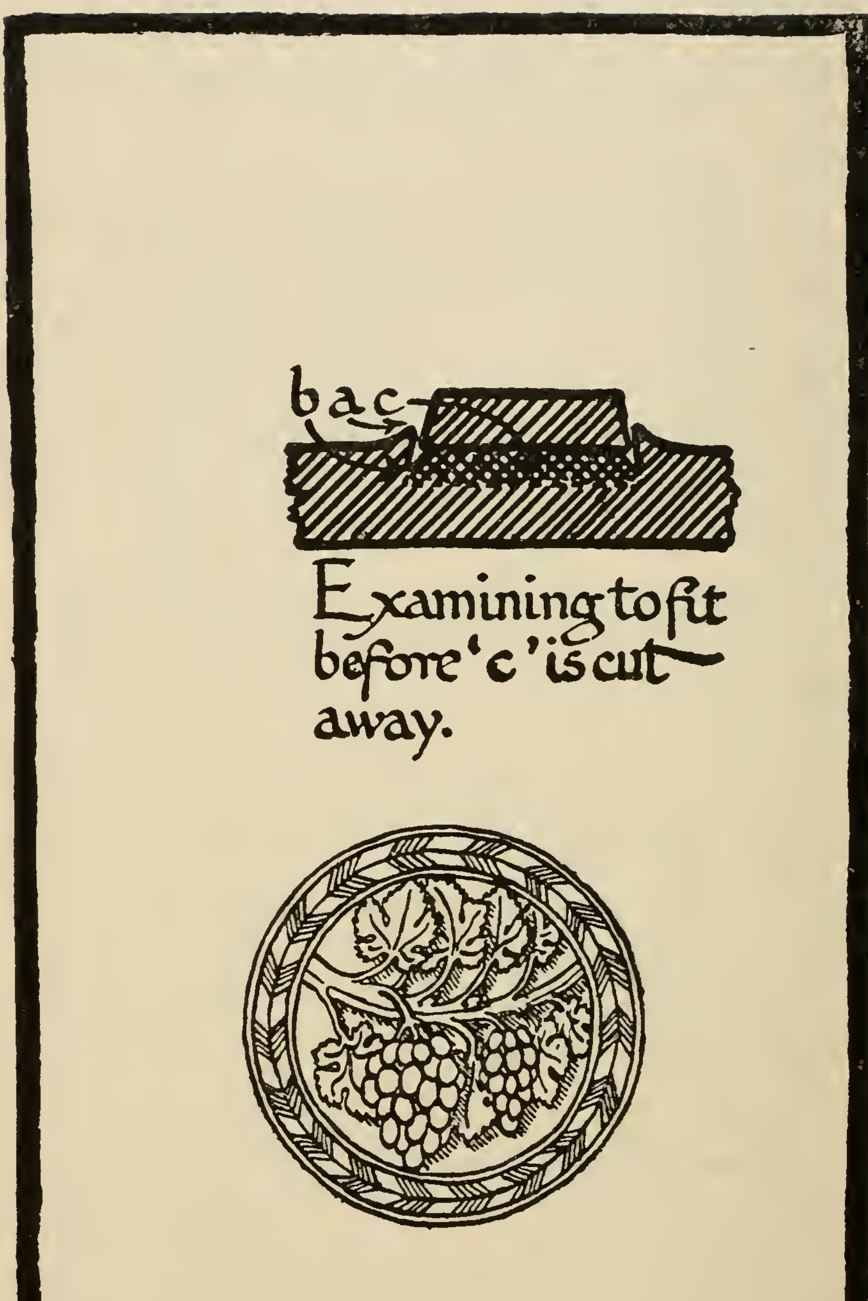


Fig. 212 C.

Digitized by Microsoft®

under-cutting clean and sharp. When the leaf will just drop in and exactly fit, lay it in place and give it a few taps with the hammer to fix it. Take next a small fine matting-tool and go carefully round the outline, driving down the raised burr against the edge of the leaf. You will naturally fix the tips of the leaf and the eyes of it first, then follow round the contour in an orderly way. Raised Inlay

This done completely, take fine chasing-tools and model the surface and put in the veins. This is best done by drawing them first on the leaf with a fine brush and Indian ink. This prevents any mistakes, and makes you more careful in your modeling. Finish by going round the outline with a fine beveled tracer, and then scrape the ground clean and bright all round the leaf.

Having now got the first leaf firmly fixed, take the form which comes next to it. We will suppose this to be the lower bunch of grapes (see figs. 200 and 212 C). Cut them out in the same way as the leaf, and mark the outline clearly with the point as before. This time you will have one side of the form to be inlaid abutting on the leaf just finished. In order to avoid

Digitized by Microsoft®

any injury to your leaf, you must take great care in outlining and cut cleanly, so as to get your form with as little disturbance as possible of the inlaid metal.

Cut out the ground within the outline as before, try the prepared shape frequently in place so that it may fit exactly, and inlay the grapes. When the metal is firmly fixed, outline the separate grapes with a beveled tracer, model each one with a small planisher until you have the effect you desire.

Proceed in this way, never beginning any new leaf or form until the last is perfect, clean, clearly outlined and modeled, and the ground scraped clean and bright after each operation.

The remaining leaves and twigs will be done as above described. Always be mindful of the importance of testing the shapes in their places, making each fit exactly before beating down the burr.

The tendrils may require a somewhat different treatment. Outline the form with a single tracer line, and then take a flat, square-edged tracer like a narrow curved punch, and follow the curves, driving the metal down to form a flat-bottomed groove for the curve. Inlay the curved wire, which must be of the exact

Digitized by Microsoft®

width of the groove as before, driving the burr down against the curve with the fine matting-tool. Where the tendril passes over leaves or other forms, great care must be taken not to disturb them in the process, but if the work has been done well it will not be an easy matter to displace any portion of it.

Having carefully modeled the whole surface to your satisfaction, take a long scraper, one end of which is shaped as a chisel, the other as a beveled scraper, and scrape down any irregularities which may be left in the modeling, refining where necessary with the graver, and finally stone and polish the ground with the scratch-brush, and burnish the grapes. The work may now be treated with sulfide of ammonia to darken it, or it may be subjected to any of the processes given in a subsequent chapter.

It will be obvious that the method of inlay will apply to almost any metals or alloys. A very wide range of colored effects can be produced by the use of carefully chosen alloys, and these can be still further added to by using such alloys as take on brilliantly colored patinas when pickled in an acid solution.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Raised Inlay

Where there is a large amount of inlaid gold, fine silver may be plated with a thin sheet of gold, and used as if it were solid metal. The same may be done with the various alloys.

CHAPTER XLI

Damascene Work

Damascene Work

THE Japanese method of damascene work is, like all the work of that people, one of exquisite simplicity.

It, no less than incrustration work, depends for its success on two things. (1) On the careful preparation and whetting of the chisels used; (2) on the careful use of them when made.

The tools required are—1. A small, light, well-balanced tapping-hammer. 2. A chisel whetted for outlining. 3. Two or three chisels of varying sizes for hatching or roughing the ground of those portions to which the gold or silver leaf is to be applied. 4. A long, leaf-shaped burnisher with one end ground to a cutting chisel edge. 5. Small corn-tongs. 6. A fine, long-haired brush and Indian ink for outlining the ornament upon the steel.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

7. Thick gold-foil such as is used for enameling. If this is not procurable, fine gold may be rolled down or hammered out to the required degree of thinness without very great difficulty.

In any case, fine gold or silver are the best for use. If, however, the gold be alloyed with only a very small quantity of silver, it is possible to make it serve, but the gain in gold is not compensated by the loss of time in making it stick to the ground.

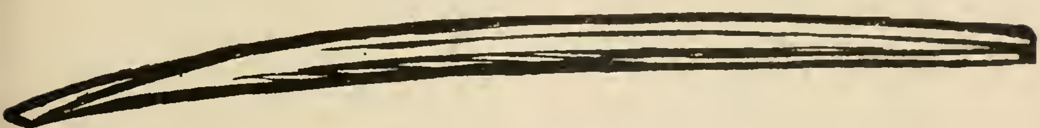


FIG. 213.

Alloys should therefore only be used where contrast of color is indispensable.

To prepare the tools, take some fine tool steel a little more than one-eighth square in section, and cut it into three-inch lengths. For the outlining chisel file up the blank as for a narrow planisher or a drill blank. There should, however, be a flat on one side only. This is to form the upper surface of the chisel. Bend the chisel slightly in the direction of the flatted surface (see figs. 211 and 213), and set the tool on one side for hardening and

Digitized by Microsoft®

tempering. The chisels are filed up as for tracing-tools and the taper made curved on two sides (see Kiri tagane, figs. 213 and 215). They must now be hardened and tempered. The whole success or failure of the work largely depends on the care with which this is done. Take one of the chisels, heat the end red-hot, have ready beneath the flame a pot of cold water; when the metal glows, dip the cutting end of the tool $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch into the water for an instant only. Withdraw quickly and watch closely until the heat from the unchilled portion of the tool invades the chilled portion and turns the gray-white of the latter to a very pale straw-color, then instantly chill the whole tool, and it is ready for whetting. The outlining chisel must now be whetted on a fine-grained Washita stone to the shape shown in figs. 213 and 215. Great care must be taken to get the end of the tool absolutely true and symmetrical, or it will not be possible to cut a clean line with it. If the bevels on either side incline too much to right or left, the tool will err in the opposite direction. If the triangular bevel on the front face is too steep the tool will not cut properly, while if it is not steep

Digitized by Microsoft®

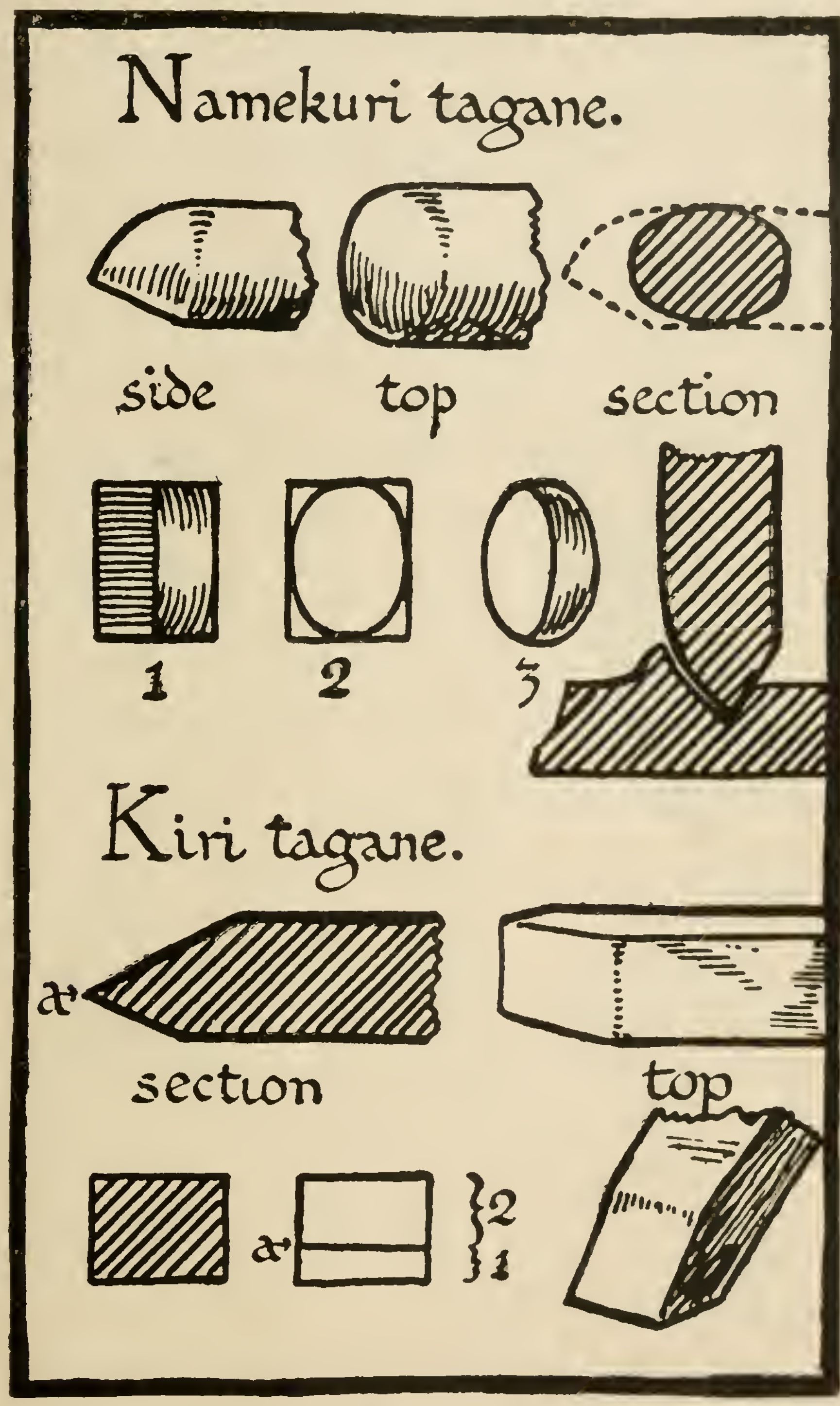


Fig. 214.

Digitized by Microsoft®

enough it will break off or bury its nose in the steel, or both of these things at the same instant (figs. 213 and 214).

The enlarged drawings will, however, give a good idea of the nature of this simple but invaluable instrument. The whetting of the chisels is a much simpler matter. Whet each to a keen edge, then holding the chisel almost upright, but slightly inclined toward you, draw it sharply along the stone. Reverse the tool and repeat the operation, but so as to produce a shorter bevel, *i.e.*, the stroke must be shorter and the pressure less. A glance at the diagram will make this clear.

FIG. 215.

In using, this broad bevel is kept uppermost. If it be desired to decorate a steel buckle with a pattern such as that shown in figs. 200 and 204, proceed as follows. Take a piece of mild sheet-steel, gauge 14 or 16, dome it slightly, remove the crust of oxide either by hand or in the lathe by cementing it to a chuck and grinding down the surface with emery-cloth.

Digitized by Microsoft®

The surface should be quite smooth and bright.

Fix the metal on a pitch-block or on a mass of pitch fixed on a stout piece of plank cut to a convenient size to handle, planed clean and smooth, and the angles taken off so that it is pleasant to touch. The pitch should be poured to form in the center of this board a mass large enough to hold the metal firmly and also to raise it sufficiently high for convenience in working. Everything at this stage should be clear, bright, neat and attractive-looking. Much depends on this. Transfer your pattern or sketch it on the steel with the fine brush and Indian ink. A little ammonia spirit or methylated spirit in a rag on a bit of cotton-waste will remove all grease and make work with the brush more easy. Should the ink still refuse to lie, add a little oxgall, or rub a very little soap into the ink. Now take the outlining chisel, and holding it as described for inlay work, go all round the outline of the pattern chosen, holding the chisel in your left hand and driving it toward you.

When all is clearly and cleanly outlined, take the hammer and smaller-sized chisel,

Digitized by Microsoft®

and holding the head of it inclined slightly away from you (see fig. 201), cover the whole surface of the leaf with a close-set series of cuts like those on a file. This done, see that there is no inequality of cutting anywhere on the surface, and repeat the operation with a series of cuts at an angle of about 45° with the last. The slope of the cuts themselves must be in the same direction as the first. If this work has been properly done, the ground within the leaf will be slightly higher than that outside. Take a piece of gold-foil just large enough to cover the leaf, lay it in place, and having wetted the burnisher, hold the latter between the thumb and finger of the right hand with the end-half of it resting against the palm of that hand and pressing down on the burnishing portion with the thumb of the left hand; go smoothly with a slight rocking motion over the surface of the gold, stroking it with firm pressure from side to side rather in the direction of the cuts, so that the tiny points of steel may enter the thickness of the gold, and then, being further pressed down, may hold it firmly. The gold itself being plastic is also by the same operation

Digitized by Microsoft®

forced into the interstices of the steel and forms a key giving additional security. The superfluity of gold beyond the leaf outline is removed by using the chisel-edge of the burnisher as a knife, cutting the gold and at the same time pressing it down into the groove formed by the outline.

The same procedure is followed for the remainder of the ornament.

Damascening can be done without outline, in which case the ground is roughened all over and the leaves and ornament cut to shape with graver or chisel. Theophilus gives a method by which this can be done mechanically on the lathe. The student might find it interesting to refer to this.

When all is done, you can either cover the ground with a grain pattern by using a fine pearl-tool or various mats formed by different matting-tools. The surface can be colored or darkened to varying tones of gray, from the pale color of the steel to intense purple-black, by the use of strong or weak infusions of ordinary tea, and leaving the work in the infusion a time proportionate to the depth of color you wish to obtain. This color,

Digitized by Microsoft®

Damascene Work

when the work is dry, can be intensified by the use of a little wax rubbed in with a hard brush.

This method of damascening has many applications. It can be used to decorate repoussé work or carved work in iron or steel, and is capable of producing the most enchanting effects of richness with a very little comparative labor; but that labor must be applied with the greatest concentration. To be effectual, all work must be done with the edge of the mind a little in advance of the tool.

CHAPTER XLII

Japanese Casting—How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

Japanese Casting

In essentials the Japanese method is the same as that described fully by Theophilus, but the former includes so many refinements in application and improvements in material, that some account of them may be useful. For all the information in this and most of that in the succeeding chapter on Japanese metal-coloring, I am indebted to Professor T. Kobayashi of Tokio.

Digitized by Microsoft®

First have ready to hand the following materials:—

Wax.—Prepare a sufficient quantity of modeling wax, made by melting one pound of Japanese pitch, or best Burgundy pitch, and one pound of best beeswax. Boil the pitch and then add the wax, and stir the mixture until the ingredients have become incorporated. It can be colored by adding a little coloring matter if so desired. When required for use it should be kept in a bowl of warm water.

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

Clays for the Mold and the Core.—Special kinds of clay mixture will be required. The first is kami tsuchi, or paper clay. This is made of fine casting sand, Japanese paper, and ordinary potter's clay.

The paper used must be such as has a long fiber. Newspaper, or indeed any wood-pulp paper, is useless. Waste Japanese packing-paper can be obtained at any of the Japanese stores.

The casting sand must be well burnt to rid it of all organic impurities. The paper must be well soaked in water or boiled. If casting sand cannot be pro-

Digitized by Microsoft®

cured, finely powdered brick or burnt clay may be used instead.

In very fine work powdered graphite or powdered charcoal may be added to the sand.

Mix the sand with the clay and then add the Japanese paper, well soaked. Knead the mixture well with the hands until all the materials are so thoroughly incorporated that, on pulling a piece of the clay apart, the separated surfaces appear as if covered with a very fine down or mold.

Test a piece by firing. If, after it has been baked to redness, it should crack in the furnace, there is too much clay. If the paper is in excess it will be too brittle.

Tama tsuchi, a grade coarser than the above, is made of chopped tow, sand, and wet clay. The sand should be passed through a sieve with meshes one-third of a millimeter square, and the whole should, as before, be thoroughly well mixed by hand.

Tsuta tsuchi (chopped straw clay), the coarsest grade, is made of straw chopped into lengths, wet clay, and casting sand, sifted through a sieve with half millimeter meshes, and is mixed as before described.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Shigata tsuchi (or core clay).—Next the core clay will be required. This will be needed in two grades—shiage tsuchi, or finishing clay, a mixture of casting sand made pasty with clay alone; and shigata tsuchi, or core clay, made with clay, sand, and chopped straw.

Have all these ready in suitable boxes or receptacles so as to be ready at any instant.

The alloy of bronze should now be prepared. The mixture commonly used is—

Copper,	75 per cent.	to 80 per cent.	} 8 lbs.
Lead	25 ,,	to 28 ,,	
Shirome			3 ozs.

Shirome, which may be omitted, is a natural alloy, chiefly composed of antimony.

The above alloy must be very carefully prepared, as it is very difficult to make a eutectic alloy of copper and lead.

Melt the copper first, and when it is liquid add a little of the lead. Stir carefully with a dry stick, then add a little more, stirring continually. Then pour out into ingots, and when cool remelt and pour into ingots at least three times.

Digitized by Microsoft®

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

Making the Core for the Vase.—We may now make the core. Take an iron rod about one-eighth to one-quarter of an inch in diameter, longer than the vase by about two or three inches, and wind some tightly twisted straw- or hay-rope tightly round it. Dab the rope with clay water, and then apply shigata tsuchi, or the core clay, until you have a rough approximation to the shape of the vase. Next cut a templet of sheet-iron to the profile of the vase, turn the core against the templet either by resting the projecting ends of the iron rod on two wooden uprights prepared for it, or by fixing the vase upright on a board and making a revolving trammel, such as plasterers use. When the rough core shape is dry apply a thin coat of finishing clay; turn it into shape with the templet, and repeat the process until the contour is perfect all over.

When this is dry the wax should be applied. Roll out the wax, previously softened in hot water, on a smooth board kept wetted. The wax should be rolled out to the desired thickness of the metal for the future vase.

With a warmed knife, cut it into strips from half an inch to one inch wide,

Digitized by Microsoft®

according to the shape of the vase, narrow strips for quick curves and broader strips for flatter curves (see fig. 216), and cover the core with them. Smooth the wax all over with a warmed steel modeling tool, making good deficiencies wherever necessary.

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

Any decoration desired, incised or modeled, may now be added, always using the same kind of wax, and being careful to see that any applied modeling adheres well to the ground and that the junction between it and the ground is well filled up. If this precaution be neglected it may easily happen that a carefully modeled figure or dragon or plant may fail to come out in the metal because the points of attachment to the vase—which form the gates of access to the matrix of the applied modeling—have not been large enough to let the metal through them freely.

The bottom moldings, or foot of the vase, should be carefully made, and when the whole model is complete, two or more wax rods, according to the size of the vase, four inches long by three-eighths of an inch diameter, or about as thick as the little finger, must be prepared and attached to the bottom of the vase (see fig. 216).

Digitized by Microsoft®

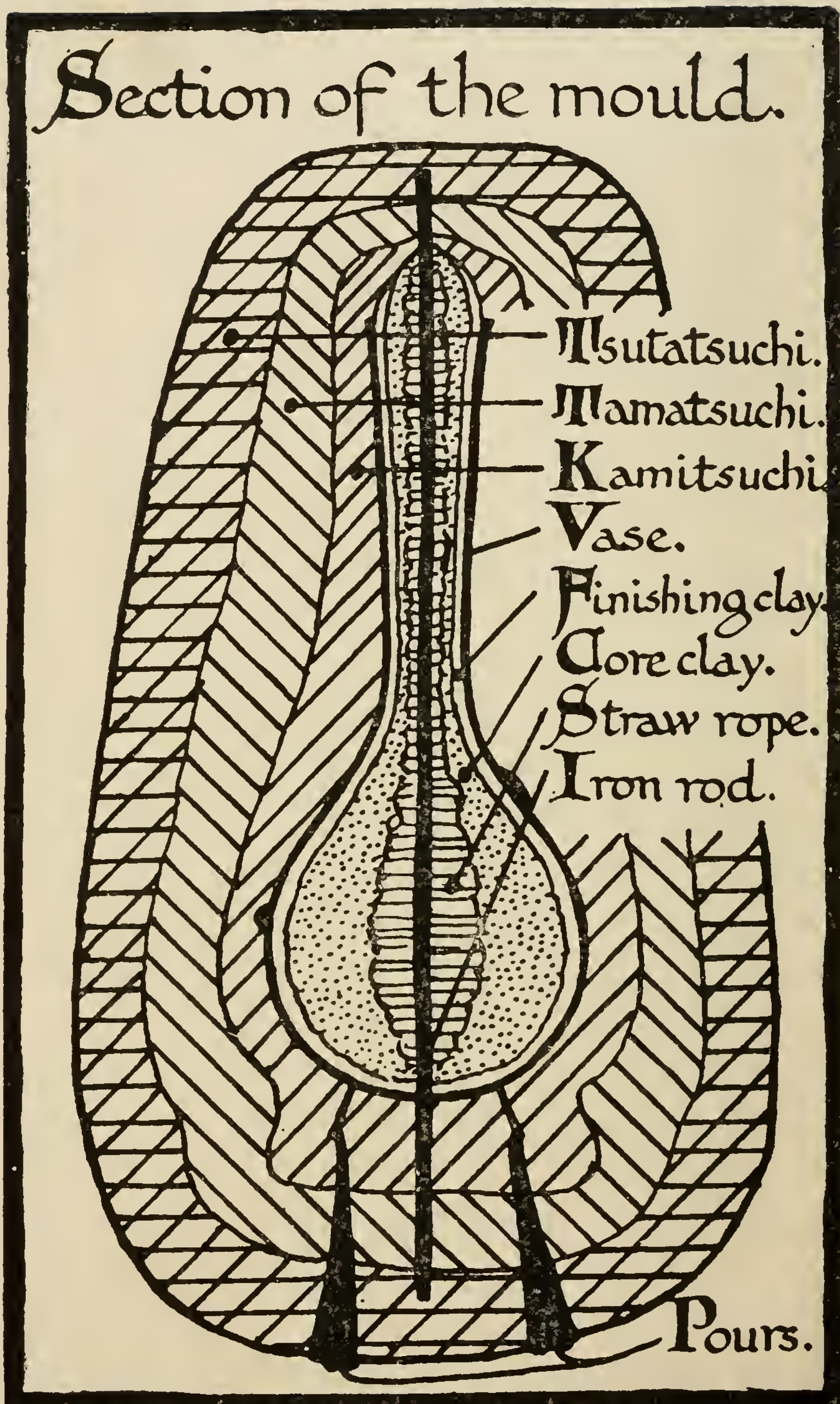


Fig. 216.

Digitized by Microsoft®

It is well to make these a little thicker at the upper end, so that a funnel-shape is left in the mold when the wax has melted. Should there be any projections in the modeling, or any part which is detached at any point from the vase, slender rods of wax rolled out on the wetted board should be attached to these portions and led to, and beyond, the bottom of the vase, so that the air may be able to escape from the matrix as the metal enters it.

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

The mold should now be covered as thinly as possible with kami tsuchi (paper clay), the first clay mixture. The greatest care must be taken to insure that this coat enters all the crevices, fills up all the hollows in the modeling, and is even in thickness all over.

When this coating has dried in the air, a second coating of the tamai tsuchi (or tow clay) must be applied more thickly, but still evenly, and allowed to dry. A third coating of tsuta tsuchi must then be added and the mold shaped up into a form that may easily be handled. The whole mold should now be allowed to dry for three or four days in the air, setting it in a place through which the wind can blow freely.

Digitized by Microsoft®

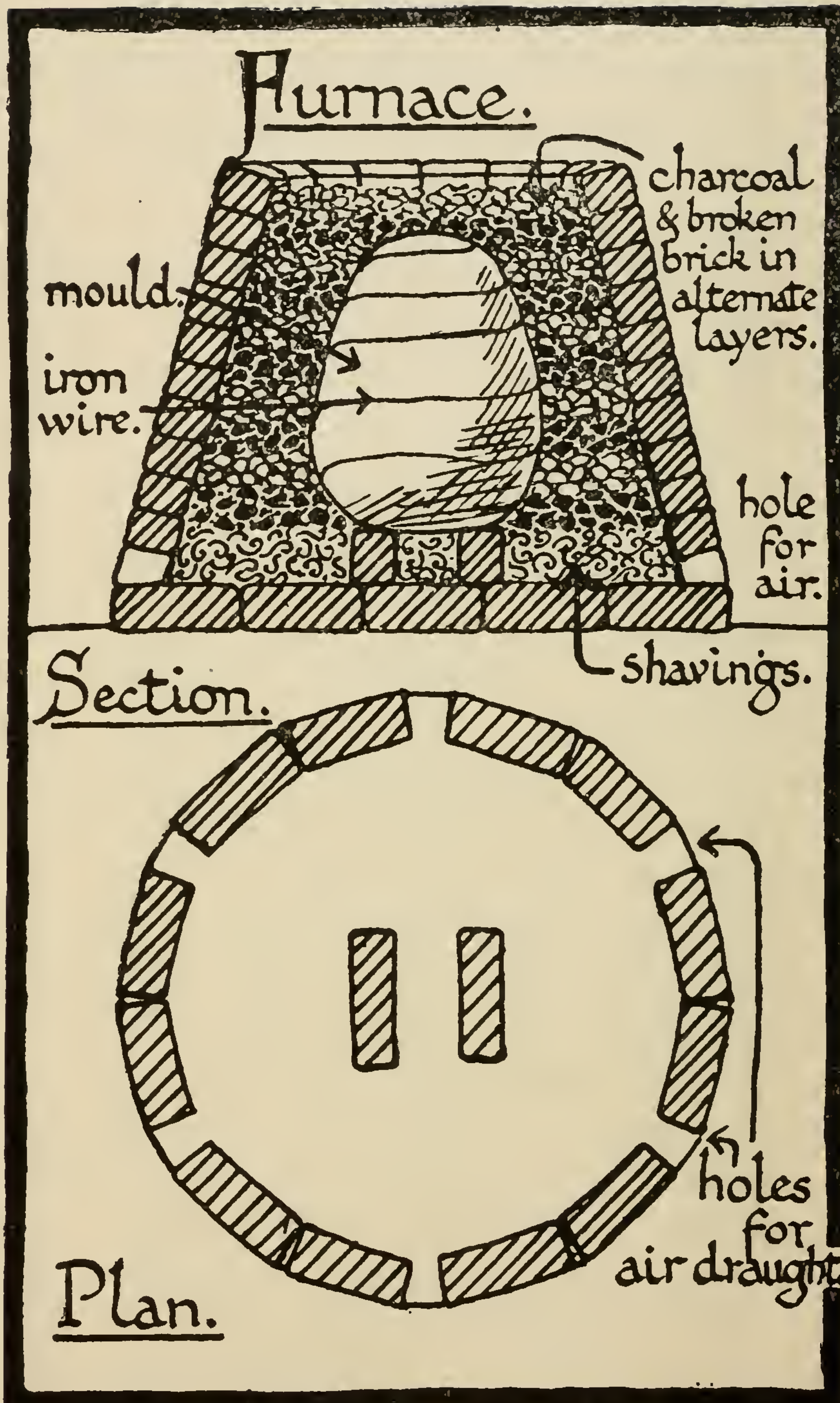


Fig. 217.

Digitized by Microsoft®

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

While the mold is drying you may prepare the furnace.

On a foundation of fire-bricks, laid side by side upon the ground, make a circle of brick, not less than six inches larger than the mold all round. From this circle omit four or five bricks to make air-inlets. In the center of this, set two or three bricks on edge, to form a stand for the mold. On these, well bound round with stout iron wire, the mold is set, bottom upward. Continue the enclosing wall above the top of the mold, taking care that the bricks break joint with each other and that the walls incline inward (see fig. 217).

Set a layer of shavings on the floor of the furnace, then a layer of charcoal, or finely broken coke, after that a layer of bricks broken small. Layers of charcoal and brick follow one another in succession until the furnace is full to the top. Arranged in this way, the furnace burns smoothly, gradually, and evenly, and the mold is less likely to crack through the uneven distribution of heat.

When all is ready light the shavings at the bottom. In about twenty minutes steam will begin to issue from the mold,

Digitized by Microsoft®

and in about an hour the mold should be red hot.

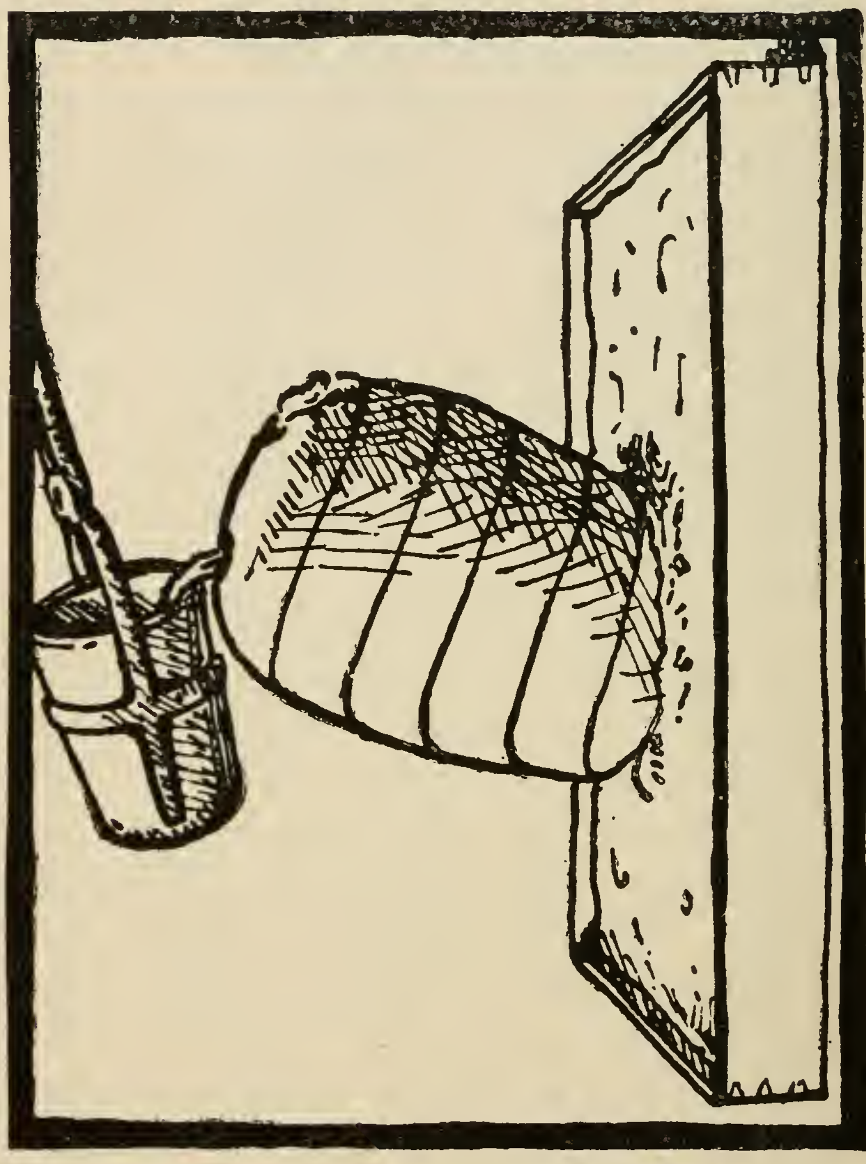


Fig. 218.

The temperature required is about 1100° Fahr., not more.

It will now be necessary to stop up the air-inlets and allow the fire to cool

Digitized by Microsoft®

gradually. While the mold is cooling it will be well to melt the bronze in a large crucible, which can be done either in a gas furnace or in a similar furnace to that made for baking the mold. Keep a layer of crushed charcoal on the top of the molten metal to prevent undue oxidation. When the fire has cooled somewhat, but the mold is still at a red heat inside, remove it carefully with large tongs, and set it, mouths uppermost, on the ground, or on a bed of dry sand. The mold should now be made to incline slightly to one side, so that one pour, or gate, is at a lower level than the other, yet not so much that the mold will be likely to fall over (see fig. 218).

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

Take the crucible in the tongs, remove the scoria and charcoal from the surface of the molten metal, stir it to insure complete mixture of the metals, and holding with other tongs a cloth thickly folded over and over to the lip of the crucible, pour the metal into the uppermost opening of the mold. Do this steadily, listening the while for any sounds of bubbling or disturbance within the mold. If noises are heard it means that air cannot escape quickly enough. If this

Digitized by Microsoft®

How to Cast a Modeled Vase in Metal

should happen, cease pouring for an instant. This may diminish the evil, but in any case the cast is likely to be defective, or at the best porous. When the mold is full, the bronze will run out at the lower pour or gate.

The mold may be left to cool for a while, but the cast must be removed before it is quite cold, or it may, by shrinking within the mold, become cracked or portions of the modeling may detach themselves from the body of the vase.

When quite cool it can be pickled to remove the crust of oxide, and is then ready for chasing and finishing.

CHAPTER XLIII

A Method of Casting Natural Objects in any Metal

A Method of Casting Natural Objects in any Metal

Natural objects, such as fir cones, buds, beetles, lizards, snakes, or shellfish, anything which will resist pressure and is reducible to ash by heat, can be cast by the following method, which is an adaptation of that first described.

Take a quantity of tsuta tsuchi (chopped hay and clay) and make a foundation with it large enough to give a bearing surface

Digitized by Microsoft®

not less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide all round the object. On this foundation lay a thin layer of kami tsuchi (paper clay) after moistening the foundation layer, and press well down into the latter so that the two become incorporated.

A Method of Casting Natural Objects in any Metal

Into this press the object to be cast. It should be embedded in the clay for a little more than half its thickness. Attach to the object two wax pours or runners for the ingress of the metal, and dust the foundation and the object with finely scraped bath-brick or fine molding-sand or French chalk, so that the mold may separate easily into two halves when it is necessary to remove the remains of the object to be cast.

Remove all dust, sand, or parting powder from the object with a camel-hair brush, then cover all with a very thin layer of kami tsuchi (paper clay) well pressed down so that all the interstices of the model are filled up. Insert on either side wooden or plaster of Paris wedges as shown on the sketch (fig. 219). When the mold is nearly dry these can be removed, and when quite dry the resulting holes afford a means of prising the mold apart without damaging it unduly. Moisten with clay-water and

Digitized by Microsoft®

apply a layer of tsuta tsuchi. Dry the mold in the air as before described, tie up the mold with some iron binding-wire, and heat it as before, but this time so that the heat is above 1200°. The carapace of crustacea, such as crabs, crayfish, and lobsters, does not change its composition until this heat is reached. The mold when cool can be opened. The ashes of the object forming the pattern can be dusted out, unreduced portions being picked out with a needle, and when clean the mold may be tied together with iron binding-wire, heated red-hot again in the furnace and the molten bronze poured in.

Should the object be so large that it becomes necessary to cast it hollow, this can be done after the mold has been opened. Take core clay, press it in small quantities at a time into the two halves of the mold, so that the latter is not injured by undue pressure. It will not be necessary to do more than fill the larger masses. The smaller portions can be left solid. Join the two half impressions carefully with thick clay-water or slip. Dry in the air, and then scrape from this core a thickness of clay equiv-

Digitized by Microsoft ®

alent to the thickness desired for the metal; lay it in place, support it with little pieces of bronze of the required thickness, and lay little pieces also on the top of the core. Set the upper half of the mold in place and tie the two together with binding-wire, and proceed as above described for the casting of the vase.

A Method of Casting Natural Objects in any Metal

CHAPTER XLIV

Japanese "Woodgrain" Metal

VERY beautiful effects are produced by a method akin to that used in producing damascened steel.

Japanese "Woodgrain" Metal

To do this, several sheets of copper will be required—one of pure copper, the others having varying amounts of tin alloy—a sheet of silver, and one of an alloy of copper containing a slight percentage of gold.

Lay the sheets together, having first sprinkled each with fine silver solder filings and borax; tie them together securely with binding-wire, and heat on the forge with the blow-pipe until the solder flushes everywhere. Then take the re-

Digitized by Microsoft®

Japanese "Wood-grain" Metal

sulting slab of metal, hammer it well on a smooth anvil with a heavy planishing-hammer, and reheat with the blow-pipe until you see that the plates have all united into a solid mass. Then with a chisel gouge out circular pits or deep markings in the upper surface of the metal, so that you cut through two or three layers of the metal. Then take the planishing-hammer and beat the slab out or put it through the flatting-rolls until these pits disappear.

Featherings, mottlings, grainings of great variety can be produced in this way, or by bumping or beating out the metal from the back, and then grinding flat on the face. By use of the rolls you can of course reduce the composite sheets of metal to any desired thickness.

When the work made of these composite sheets of metal has been completed and polished, the various processes for producing patina act differently on the different metals, giving a mottled or grained effect.

A little thought will suggest many variations and applications of this fascinating method of surface decoration.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

CHAPTER XLV

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring — Patina — Bronzing by the Boiling Process—The Smoking Process—The Painting Process—The Heating Process—Other Recipes and Coloring Methods for Bronze Work

Patinas.—The art of artificially and yet permanently coloring the surfaces of metals has been brought by the Japanese to a very high pitch of perfection.

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring

The following recipes can be relied on to produce beautiful results if ordinary care is exercised and the following precautions are taken.

First: All the ingredients must be very perfectly mixed.

Second: All the instruments used in handling the objects to be colored must be of copper or wood. Iron or steel must never be used. Galvanic action ensues immediately and entirely changes the result.

Third: The objects to be colored must be chemically clean and in some cases highly polished beforehand.

Fourth: If the solutions are used hot,

Digitized by Microsoft®

different results are produced from those which come when used cold.

Generally it may be observed that the best and richest colors are produced on cast metal. Being porous, the metal is more readily acted upon by the solution. In all hammered or chased work the color comes more slowly.

When heating any bronze work, care should be taken not to overheat it. The result of overheating is to sweat the tin to the surface of the metal.[1] This not only makes the skin of the metal harder and more impenetrable, but it produces a whitish bloom upon it, which can only be removed with great difficulty. In addition to this inconvenience, the ordinary pickles for the production of patina will not act where there is an excess of tin. Inequality in the distribution of the alloy is one of the many causes of failure to obtain the expected color.

---

[1] It may be mentioned that this peculiarity of bronze alloys was known and utilized in Egypt from the earliest times. Bronze tools which required an edge or a surface of hardened metal were regularly case-hardened by heating the implement until the tin sweated to and hardened the surface, leaving the interior more ductile and tenacious. When the work has been well done, even a steel file will hardly touch it.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Bronzing by the Boiling Process — The Foundation Color.—The ingredients required for the foundation color are to be mixed in the following proportions:

Copper sulfate . . .	5 ozs.
Japanese verdigris . . .	5 ozs.
Water	one gallon

This solution can be applied to copper, bronze, brass, and silver.

It gives to copper or brass a warm brown color and to bronze a dark brown color. The greater the proportion of lead in the alloy, the darker will be the resulting color.

This solution once made keeps indefinitely. The older it is the better.

It has the further advantage that by slight changes in the proportions of the ingredients or by the addition of other chemicals different results can be obtained. A little excess of copper sulfate produces a deeper color, which can be made still deeper by the smoking process to be described later. The addition of copper acetate or of vinegar gives the patina a bluish tinge if the surface of the metal has been roughened. Green color is produced by the addition of copper carbonate.

Digitized by Microsoft®

The mixture chosen should be applied thus:

Clean the object well with a solution of cyanide of potassium, and attach a copper wire for convenience in handling. Put it in the solution, which should be cold. Heat the vessel on the charcoal for several minutes. Take it from the fire, allow it to cool, and then reboil several times. The first boilings never give good results.

Should you wish to produce the bluish patina above described, the surface of the object must be roughened by the use of a strong solution of sal-ammoniac, oxalic acid, copper sulfate, and calcium chloride in about equal proportions. To get a uniform patina of this color takes much time and patience. After the object has been boiled several times, it should be put on one side, and wiped with a wet cotton cloth once a week for a long time, until you have succeeded in producing the effect you seek. The process may be extended over many weeks, months, or even years.

A reddish patina can be given to iron and bronze objects by boiling them in tea, to which iron filings have been added.

Digitized by Microsoft

Any kind of tea will do; the stronger the better. The color of the patina may afterward be darkened by wiping the object with a rag, on which a little oil has been placed. Any excess of oil simply makes dark blots of color difficult to remove.

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring

A grayish color can be given to bronze by the use of a dipping or washing mixture, composed of the following ingredients:

Copper sulfate	1 oz.
Common salt	$\frac{1}{20}$th of an oz.
Water	$\frac{1}{4}$ oz.

The metal must be chemically clean, and after each application should be allowed to dry, then well washed with warm water. This routine should be followed until the color is satisfactory.

A dark green patina for bronze is produced as follows:

Copper nitrate	48 grains
Sal-ammoniac	48 grains
Calcium chloride . . .	20 grains
Copper sulfate . . .	10 grains
Oxalic acid	10 grains
Water	4 fluid ozs.

More sal-ammoniac and copper sulfate make the color darker.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring

If a bright green patina be desired, omit the copper sulfate and the oxalic acid.

Having carefully cleaned the object, apply several coats at intervals of a day. When the color seems even and pleasant brush the surface with a dry brush. Do this several times, day after day, until you have the color you desire. The patina may then be fixed by brushing with a little beeswax, rubbed on with a hard brush. This, however, makes the color many shades darker; and should any change be desired, the wax can only be removed with great difficulty by petrol or spirit of wine. A gray color on silver is obtained by using:

Platinum chloride . . .	10 grains
Tincture of iron . . .	1 fluid oz.

Clean the metal perfectly from grease and dirt. (Carbon bisulfide, applied with a soft brush, will give a bright clean surface to silver.) Apply the solution with a soft camel-hair brush, and when dry brush it over with a dry camel-hair brush. This gives a beautiful gray patina which is useful for medals and small objects in silver, whether beaten up or chased or produced in a die.

Digitized by Microsoft®

A dark blue color on silver is produced by a mixture of:

Quicklime	2 ozs.
Flowers of sulfur	$\frac{1}{4}$ oz.
Water	6 ozs.

The work should be cleaned, warmed, and dipped in the mixture. The hotter the water, the quicker the action of the pickle. A similar result is produced by heating the pickle.

When the required depth of color has been obtained, withdraw the work swiftly and wash well in warm water to remove the pickle and prevent the darkening process from going too far.

The Smoking Process. — Any of the coloring processes mentioned may be supplemented by the smoking process, which consists in the exposure of the object to the smoke and flame of a fire of pine needles, resinous shavings, or rice straw. Should the material used give insufficient smoke, add a little oil to the fire. When the color appears dark enough, polish by rubbing gently with a soft cotton cloth. This removes any excess of soot and gives a beautifully lustrous surface. The process may be

Digitized by Microsoft®

used with effect for almost any metal with the exception of gold.

The fumes of burning flowers of sulfur give a beautiful brownish patina to silver, and a purplish color to low carat gold. 9 carat, 12 carat, and 15 carat are most easily affected. Higher grades of gold remain unchanged.

The Painting Process.—This is a method by which the chemicals necessary for the production of patina and color are applied very gradually by the paint-brush.

Bronze, iron, or steel objects can be colored by the use of a solution prepared as follows:

Take small pieces of bright iron, heat them to straw color, then drop them into cold vinegar. This mixture should be left to mature for a long time. The longer it is kept the better it becomes.

Iron and steel treated with this solution become dark gray or black, according to the length of the process, the age, and the strength of the solution. Bronze is given a reddish color.

The object to be colored should be slightly heated, the solution painted on, then wiped off with a cotton rag. Repeat the operation several times until the

Digitized by Microsoft®

required color has been obtained. The color of iron or steel objects is greatly improved by heating them and rubbing them all over with an old silk rag. The metal should be just hot enough to singe the silk a light brown. The oil in the silk fiber is the active agent in the process.

A greenish patina of varying quality may be given to brass, bronze, and copper, and a pleasant warm, dark color to silver, by the use of the pickle made as follows. Take of

Sal-ammonial . . .	$\frac{1}{20}$th of an oz.
Common salt . . .	$\frac{1}{30}$th of an oz.
Water	5 fluid ozs.

Leave the mixture to dissolve until it is clear, then decant for use. Warm the article, brush on the mixture with a soft camel-hair brush—an ordinary sky brush used for water-color painting will serve the purpose. After a moment, wipe the object dry with a soft cotton cloth. Repeat the operation of warming, painting, and wiping about twenty or thirty times. Little or no result will be apparent until the sixth or seventh repetition.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring

A very beautiful deep color for bronze is also produced by the following:

Copper sulfate	1 oz.
Japanese verdigris . . .	1 oz.
Water	5 fluid ozs.
Sal-ammoniac	½ oz.

Mix the whole to a paste by grinding all the ingredients together in a mortar, adding water when the mixture has been ground quite fine.

Paint the object with the paste; let it dry and remain for a day. Repeat for three or four days, then brush the object well. Afterward wipe at intervals with a wet cotton rag. In about a month the coloring should be complete and may be fixed by wax, as before described. In Japanese workshops the process is continued on special pieces of bronze for many months, even years.

A more vivid green can be produced by using vinegar instead of water in the above recipe.

The Heating Process.—Heat the object until it is just red hot, then swiftly plunge it into boiling water. The metal must be red hot and the water must be boiling, or the resulting color will be imperfect.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Copper treated in this way, after being highly polished, becomes deep crimson. Bronze takes on a deep red patina.

The purer the copper, the more brilliant the color. The evenness of the patina depends on the even distribution of the heat over the surface of the object. For this reason it is well, where possible, to use a muffle furnace.

Other Recipes and Coloring Methods for Bronze Work.[1]—No. 1. Cover the bronze with a mixture of ground horse-radish and vinegar. Leave it on and keep it sprinkled with vinegar for some days. Then wash with water under a tap. Afterward wipe at intervals with a wet cotton rag, until the desired evenness of color has been obtained.

No. 2.

Strong vinegar	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint
Chloride of ammonium . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$ oz.
Liquid ammonia	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Common salt	$\frac{1}{4}$ oz.

Warm the metal and brush over the surface, repeating the operation after each coat has dried. This gives what is called the antique green of bronze.

[1] From Spon's "Workshop Receipts," 1904.

Digitized by Microsoft®

No. 3.

Verdigris	. . . . .	5 ozs.
Muriate of ammonia	. .	5 ozs.
Strong vinegar	. . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ fluid oz.

Mix the verdigris and ammonia by pulverizing in a mortar. To this add sufficient vinegar to make a paste. Put this in a copper vessel with a pint of water and boil for thirty minutes. When cool, set on one side until the liquid clears. Then decant the clear portion and bottle for use.

Warm the bronze, paint the mixture with a brush, wipe off with a soft brush, and repeat until the color is satisfactory.

No. 4. Mix

Powdered hæmatite	. . .	5 parts
Powdered plumbago	. . .	8 parts

to a paste with spirits of wine. Apply with a soft brush and leave it for some hours until quite dry. Brush off and polish with a fairly stiff, clean brush. The tint may be varied by altering the proportions at will.

This is not a pickle, nor, strictly speaking, a patina, but a color.

No. 5. Black bronze patina is produced by the application of sulfate of ammo-

Digitized by Microsoft®

nium and water to the warmed surface of the metal. When the first wash is dry, cleanse the surface with hot water and repeat the application and the washing of the solution until the desired result has been obtained.

No. 6. For reddish bronze coloring, take of

Plumbago	1 oz.
Vienna earth	2 ozs.
Jeweler's rouge	½ oz.

Add a few drops of hydrosulfate of ammonium and water to make a paste, and apply as in No. 4.

No. 7. A purplish color is obtained by applying to the warm metal a mixture of jeweler's rouge, crocus, and hydrosulfate of ammonia worked up into a paste. Brush off when dry, and repeat the operation until the tint is as you would wish. Leave it for a few days, then brush and polish as before described, with a hand-brush and a little wax.

No. 8. For a greenish patina, take of

Chromate of lead	2 ozs.
Prussian blue	2 ozs.
Plumbago	¼ lb.
Vienna earth	¼ lb.
Carmine lake	¼ oz.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Japanese Patinas and Metal Coloring

Add enough water to form a paste, afterward mix with a little hydrosulfate of ammonia, and apply with a brush. Leave the coat to dry, and then brush off and repeat the process until the color is as you wish.

These processes, 6, 7, and 8, combine the patina and actual coloring matter, and are, therefore, more permanent than No. 4.

CHAPTER XLVI

Japanese Metal Working

By Prof. Unno Bisei, of the Fine Art College, Tokio.

A lecture delivered to the students of the Central School of Arts and Crafts.

Japanese Metal Working

In attempting these demonstrations I feel somewhat diffident, particularly as I am to work before such advanced instructors and craftsmen, because we, as a nation, have been much influenced by European art and that of other civilized countries, particularly in the direction of metal working. However, since I have visited Europe and America, and have

Digitized by Microsoft ®

been able to inspect and compare the metal work exhibited at three universal exhibitions, the importance of European art has been brought home to me. I did not, however, in either of the exhibitions, or in my travels, see such imaginative work as ours, especially where a combination of different metals is utilized to give color effects; although I must admit that European arts are—not only in painting and sculpture, but in other departments—perfectly truthful in their realistic beauty of form.

Japanese metal work made remarkable progress during the period when bows and arrows were instruments of warfare in Japan—long before the introduction of the gun.

The sword was especially richly ornamented with precious stones, and engraven and damascened with gold—such as in the examples you may see in the museums and in the fine art palace of the Japan-British exhibition.

The work was held in such esteem, and indeed respect, that the sword was recognized as a part of the Soul of the Samurai—or Knight. The finest examples are of the middle period of Ashikaga, 1338–1573,

Digitized by Microsoft®

Japanese Metal Working

reaching the most beautiful results in the Toyotomi period, A.D. 1583–1603, and the Tokugawa period, A.D. 1603–1867.

But two hundred years after the gun and revolver were imported from Europe, the decorative art of the metal worker on armor and arms began to decay, while on the other hand the production of metal work for decorative purposes increased, and, as statistics show, to a very considerable extent.

Japanese craftsmen in metals generally select the following metals for color combinations:—Gold, silver, copper, brass, iron, Shibuichi, Shakudō.

The following are the methods of decoration in more general use in Japan.

1. KATAKIRIBORI.
   Engraving and reproducing the movement of brush-work.
2. HIRA-ZOGWAN.
   The inlaying of an object with different metals; for instance, to work a flower one uses gold for petals, copper for trunk, Shibuichi for leaves, &c. (See chapter xxxix.)
3. TAKA-ZOGWAN.
   This is somewhat the same as Hira-Zogwan, but inlaid in relief. (See chapter xl.)
4. UKIBORI.
   i.e. Chasing.

Digitized by Microsoft®

It is necessary to emphasize the importance of special alloys and the colors obtainable, more particularly as we have such a large number of alloys. For instance, there are no less than seventy different alloys for bronze, but of these about thirty are used at the present time. That number is, of course, beyond demonstration under present circumstances. Such a large number of alloys being used, you can well understand that there are also a considerable number of coloring solutions; but I am sure, with your ability and the small insight I am able to give you into our methods, you will be able to get satisfactory results such as the French are now managing, as may be seen in the work shown at the salons, and other exhibitions in Paris; the Japanese methods of alloy and coloring, as used in modern French metal work, being introduced by Monsieur Lucien Gaillet, to whom I had the pleasure of giving instruction in the work.

The alloy most generally used is that called "Shibuichi":

Copper	. . . . .					100 parts
			(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
Silver	.	30,	40,	50,	60, or	70 parts

The color of the Shibuichi more

Digitized by Microsoft®

generally used is gray of a soft and pleasing tone, but you can make it dark or light, according to the proportion of your alloys. For instance, you wish to make a tree in flower, the petals of which may be made in gold if you wish them to be yellow, or silver if you wish them to be white. The leaves are to be in Shibuichi and of different colors, so you would make up your different grades of Shibuichi according to the quantity of silver employed, 1 to 4.

To make a darker Shibuichi, that which is called "Kuro-Shibuichi" in Japanese, is composed as follows:

Shakudō	10 parts
Silver	3 or 4 parts

The methods of melting in order to produce Shibuichi is one which is simple after experience, but which requires considerable care. If the two alloys are melted at the same time you will not get the general Shibuichi color, with fine spots showing gray grain—composed of silver and copper—like a pear skin, but on the other hand, if the two metals are melted together, they will become somewhat darker and less of the nature of

Digitized by Microsoft®

Shibuichi, because the molecules of silver will have mixed too much with the copper.

Now, the first stage in the production of Shibuichi is to melt the copper as usual, and when it is quite melted put the silver in (sheet, or grain, or wire), and watch that it is not too much melted to mix. When this is done, pour into an oiled iron pot (the quantity of oil, rape-seed, about half, according to the size of the pot).

There is another way to mix the melting metals, viz., by taking a pot large enough for the quantity of metal, covering it with a common, but strong, cloth of a muslin-like nature (not too tightly stretched, so as to enable the metal to sink through), place it in hot water—just hot enough to put the fingers in—and then pour the metal, through the cloth, into the receptacle. This gives almost the same result, but it will probably bring a much softer and finer surface.

Copper	100 parts
Gold	3, 4, 5, or 6 parts

Shakudō.—The most common Shakudō color is black, as you have seen, but it can be made in different colors, which gives an effect to the alloys.[1] One which varies

[1] Used in the subsequent process of incrustation.

Digitized by Microsoft®

according to the pictures used from a color somewhat similar to violet or dark violet in tone is composed of 100 parts of copper and 10 parts of gold. If the gold is increased up to 20 parts, that is, 20 parts to 100 parts of copper, the metal becomes an exceedingly delightful color, something like a deep plumlike bloom on the violet.

Coloring.—A useful coloring solution is:

Verdigris, 1 dram (apothecaries' weight) $\frac{1}{7}$ oz.
Sulfate of copper, 1 scruple (apothecaries' weight) 1 dram (less).
Water, 1 gallon or less.

Grind the medium and boil it with water, place the work in the solution, keep it moving, and examine it by taking it out occasionally. The time occupied in the coloring depends on the size and thickness of the object, but it generally occupies from 10 to 30 minutes, the time taken being according to your idea of what you consider a satisfactory result.

A copper sieve would be the best to use in placing in or lifting work out of the pan, or the work may be, if possible, suspended on a silver wire or wires, care being taken to keep the object on the move while in the solution.

Digitized by Microsoft®

It is important that you should avoid any kind of grease or oil, and the work should be thoroughly polished. Before starting work you should wash your hands well with soap, so as to keep the work clean and as free from grease as you can. The pan or utensil you use for the process of coloring should be either of china or copper, and not used for any other kind of metal or purpose. The following is a special preparation for the coloring of violet Shakudō:—

Sulfate of copper, 1 dram or less (apothecaries' weight) $\frac{1}{7}$ oz.
Salt, $\frac{1}{3}$ scruple (apothecaries' weight) $\frac{1}{4}$ dram.
Water, $\frac{1}{3}$ ordinary glass or tumbler.

Boil the medium, then put the work into it, and take it in and out until you are satisfied with the color.

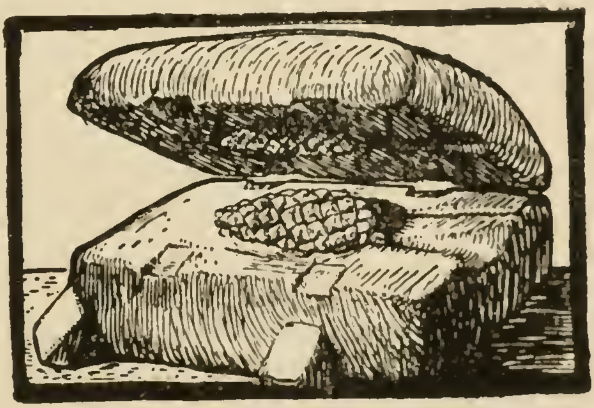


FIG. 219.
See page 363.

Digitized by Microsoft®

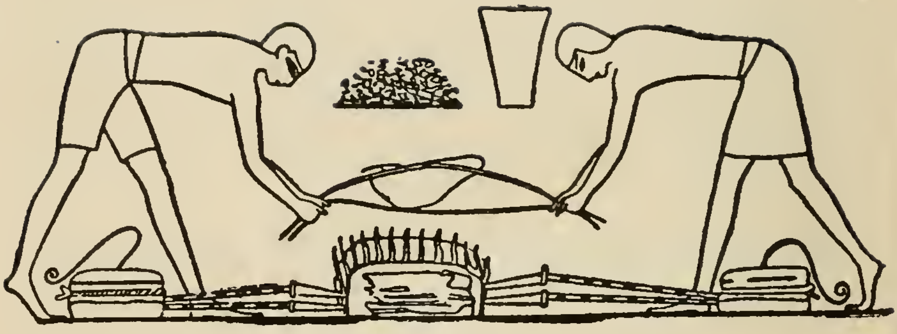


FIG. 220.

CHAPTER XLVII

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

I am indebted for most of the material in the following chapter to the researches of M. E. Vernier, whose admirable book on Egyptian jewelry and goldsmith's work is a mine of precious information. The illustrations are an inexhaustible source of inspiration, and one is everywhere conscious in the text of an acute intelligence which illumines all it touches. My sincere thanks are due to M. E. Vernier for permission to use the blocks from which many of the diagrams illustrating this chapter have been made.

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

IN all essentials the goldsmiths' craft is the same to-day as it was thousands of years ago. So-called developments and improvements will be found on examination to resolve themselves into appliances for saving labor or material; the craft itself is untouched by them, the craftsman

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

independent of them. The necessary, indispensable tools are singularly few and simple in character, and differ little wherever they are found. The stock-in-trade of the Egyptian, Hindoo, Arab, or Navajo gold- and silver-smiths might be used by each indifferently. With each workman the result is personal, the outcome of acquired and hereditary skill, a manifestation of the racial spirit, the expression of the underlying unity. This is everywhere a characteristic of supreme art.

With a little oil, some brushes, a few colored earths, a length of coarse linen, and Millet, we have the Angelus.

With a few pebbles, some gold dust washed from some torrent bed, a few crucibles of clay and a reed from the Nile, the Egyptian mind produced the rings and scarabs and ouches which enrich the tombs of the Pharaohs. His tools lay everywhere to hand. He had but to select them. A large, smooth pebble or boulder for an anvil; smaller pebbles of varying forms and sizes served for hammers. A flake of flint took the place of shears. His furnace was built of clay and pebbles. A reed, tipped with a nozzle of clay, formed his

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

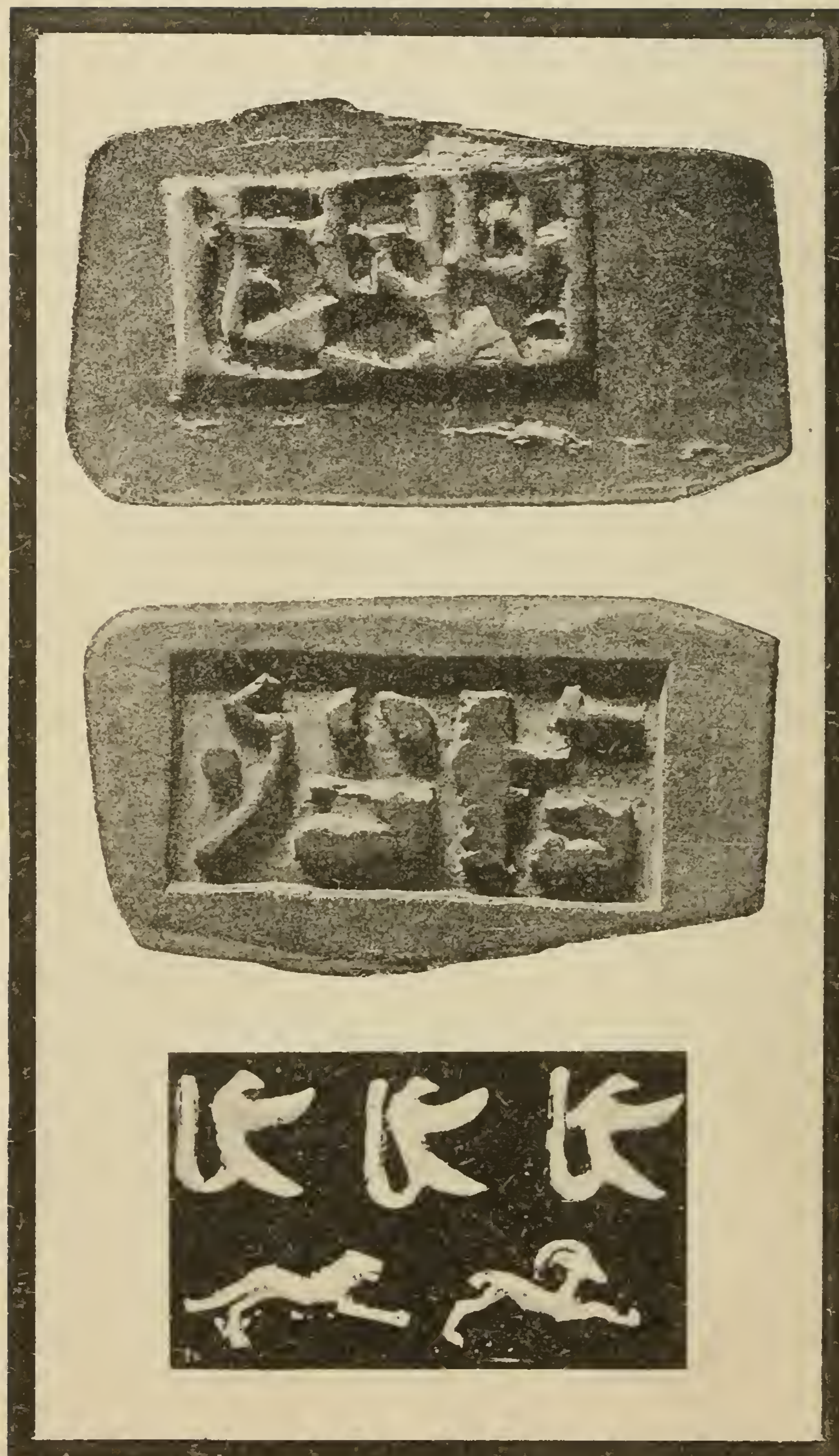
blow-pipe. From the river beds and the desert he sought sapphires and sardonyx and carnelians and jasper, shaped them on grit stones and polished them with powder, ground and crushed from the emery nodules fished from the bed of the Nile.

Refining these methods, he ground precious stones into flat plates, and with copper and bronze drills, smeared with oil and emery, pierced them with holes and shaped them into rings and bracelets, or carved them into seals and pendants and scarabs. All the arts seem to have their germ in the art of the lapidary.

There is little doubt that the draw-plate had its origin in the practice of drilling holes in stone plaques, in order to pierce out the centers of rings and bracelets, and that the first draw-plates were made from hard stone (see fig. 221). The ruby and sapphire or diamond plate of the modern jeweler repeats elaborately, but without greatly increased efficiency, the primitive invention. It may be said that of course things can be done in these ways, but that they need more time and patience than the modern artist can afford to bestow on his work. This may be so. But it may be

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®



Figs. 222 and 223.—Stone Moulds and Impressions in thin Metal.
From the Museum at Cairo.

See page 393.

(To face page 391.)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

questioned whether, after all, the time spent was so very long.

As Otis Mason in his admirable book, "The Origins of Invention,"[1] says: "A great deal that has been written about primitive industries is wide of the mark because the writer has failed to take into

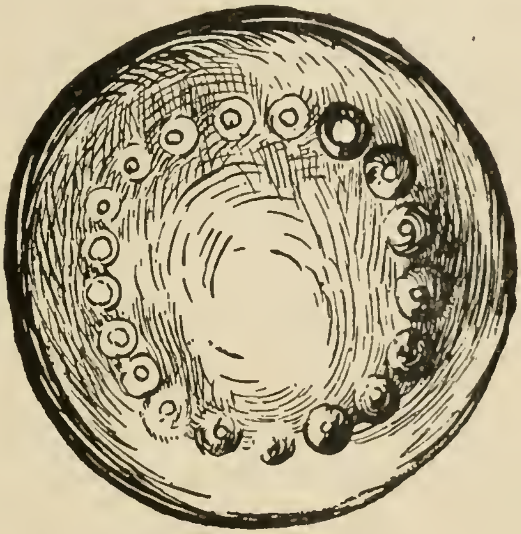


FIG. 221.

account what may be called the knack of the age, or the tribe, or the particular method.

He has described it as clumsy, and said that he could not for the life of him imagine how people could get along with such appliances. But they did. You

1 "The Origins of Invention," by Otis T. Mason. Walter Scott, Paternoster Square, London.

Digitized by Microsoft®

will see a professional ethnologist sweating for hours to get a spark of fire with two sticks. The savage will do it for him in as many seconds.

By and by the former acquires the knack, and then his trouble vanishes . . . Mr. Joseph D. Macguire fabricates an ordinary grooved avec or celt in less than fifty hours, and a grooved jade avec from an entirely rough spall in less than one hundred hours." . . . "Every one who reads this will recall examples of this deftness—and there is no doubt that this is the quality which in the higher pursuits of life we call genius."

In this, as in all work, much depends on that special prophetic gift possessed by every artist, and by every one in some degree, of knowing just how a given piece of work may be executed.

It is evident, however, that skill in lapidary work preceded that in metal work or goldsmithing, and that the experience of the workman in handling the more untractable material suggested many ways of dealing with the kindlier metals. The practice of beating out the gold ingots or nuggets into metal sheets, the readiness with which the thinning metal

Digitized by Microsoft®

adapted itself to all the irregularities of hammer and anvil, giving imprints of all the flaws, early suggested the use of the swage and the hollow mold, of stone first, of metal later.

The idea soon developed, and fig. 222 shows two sides of a stone mold in each of which many varied patterns are sunk. Fig. 223 shows the forms produced when the metal has been impressed within the mold. This method, universally practiced since, is of the greatest use when numbers of any one pattern are required, and has a further application which is perhaps less known.

In cases in which it is necessary to carry out in repoussé any complex form, or one in very high relief, the raising can be done by beating the sheet-metal into a reverse mold in bronze or iron cast from the matrix of a preliminary model, by means of wooden mallets and punches. The work then annealed and filled with pitch can be carried to any desired degree of finish with the greatest ease. The worker, moreover, knowing that the mold is always there, and that the form if lost temporarily can easily be regained, is given a freedom and confidence which

Digitized by Microsoft®

he might otherwise lack. He need not fear to try experiments with his work. There is little doubt that this method was known to the Egyptians from the earliest times. The hawk-head shown in fig. 224 was in all probability first embossed by this means, and afterward finished by

Fig. 224.

chasing, with tools in all essentials the same as those employed to-day, but made of bronze.

A reference to fig. 225 shows that the art of incrustation or inlay was also one of those practiced, if not invented, by the Egyptian craftsmen. The methods, even

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 225.—Bronze Hawk inlaid with Gold.
From the Museum at Cairo.

(To face page 394.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

in those early times, were those everywhere in use at the present time in the East, and have been fully described in the chapter on Japanese inlay.

A few interesting details of the pro-

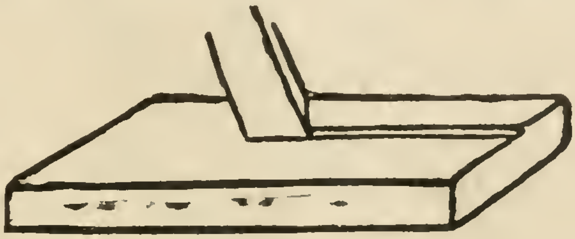


FIG. 226.

cedure adopted in the decoration of iron objects are given by M. Emile Vernier.

Objects in iron may be incrusted in the following way. Having traced the line to be followed on the metal, take a chisel with a single bevel, and holding it inclined sideways (fig. 226), cut a deep channel along this line. Repeat the operation in the

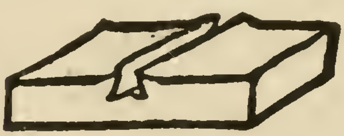


FIG. 227.

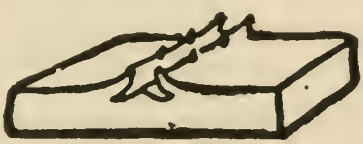


FIG. 228.

reverse way. This done, you have instead of a line a channel with a swallow-tail section (fig. 227).

The edges of the resulting burr raised on each side of the channel are then cut

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

into teeth with the same chisel held aslant (fig. 228), and the wire, carefully annealed, is laid in the channel, and beaten in with a slightly rounded punch or planisher (figs.

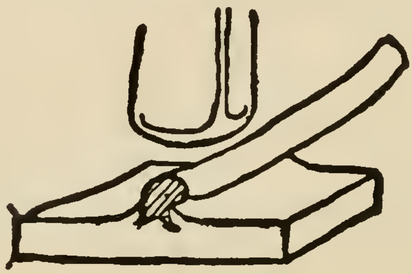


FIG. 229.

229 and 230). Grains or dots are inserted by the following method. Take a graver (whetted but not set) and make, at the point to be decorated by the dot, a quadrangular cavity by holding the graver slantwise and driving it sharply downward four times (see fig. 231), each cut making

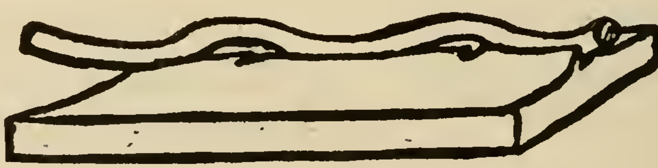


FIG. 230.

a right angle with the preceding, and the four together making a square. This, if properly done, leaves a cavity made of four juxtaposed triangular

Digitized by Microsoft®

pyramidal cavities (fig. 232), one side of each of these pyramidal cavities being bordered by a burr, raised by the flat side of the graver. A grain of the metal of suitable size is now inserted in this cavity, and driven inward by a smart tap of the hammer

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

FIG. 231.

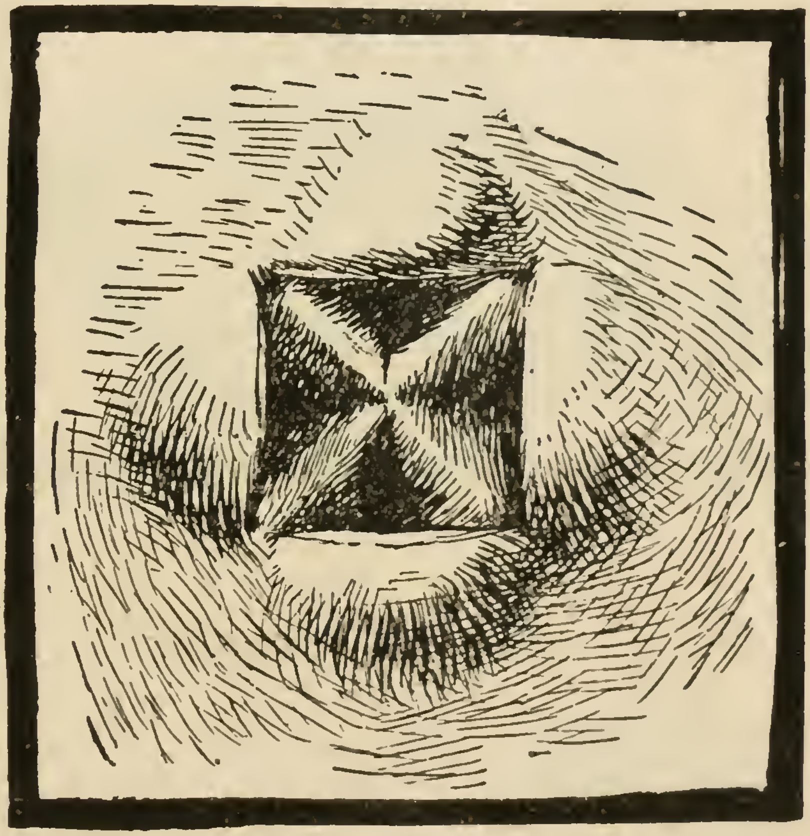


FIG. 232.

or a hollow faced punch (see fig. 233). This grain can now be driven home, the

Digitized by Microsoft®

pointed burrs enter the grain of metal,

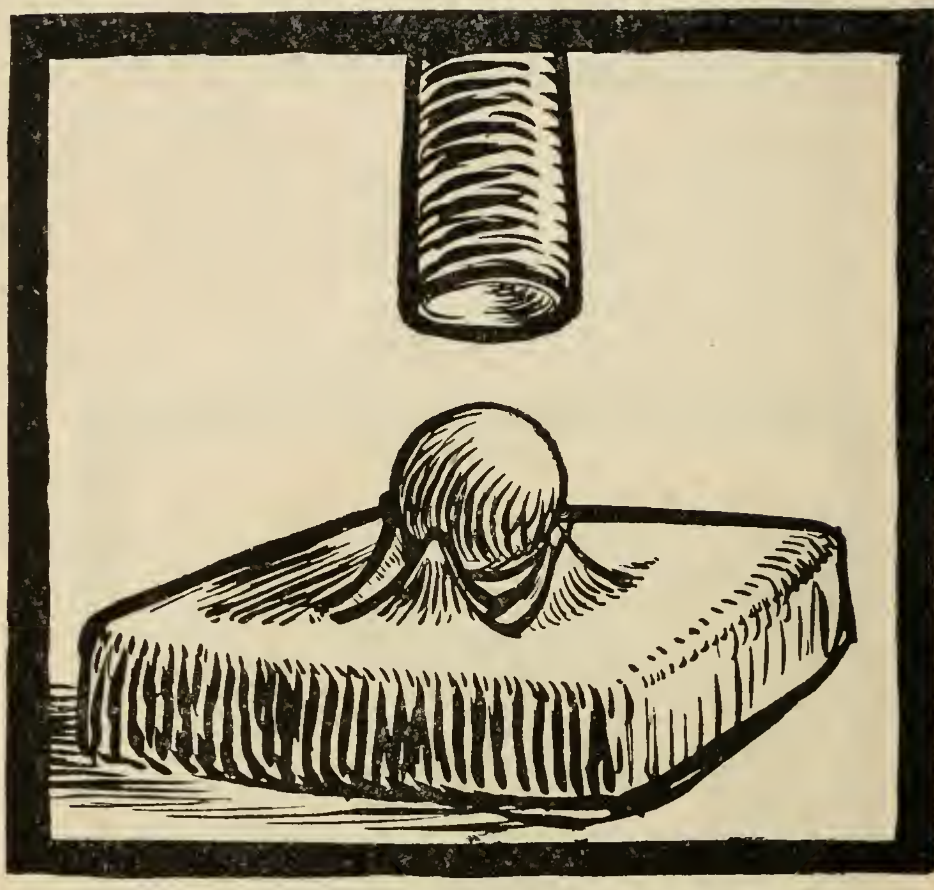


Fig. 233.

close over within its substance, and hold it securely in position (fig. 234).

Fig. 234.

The same methods are in use for brass, bronze, and silver, the only difference in the technique being that, owing to the softness of the ground

Digitized by Microsoft ®

netal, the grooves must be made deeper. Fig. 235 shows an inlaid bracelet from the ollection in the Museum at Cairo.

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

Another method of decoration, allied o both incrustation and enameling, is hat of niello work, a specimen of which

Fig. 235.

is illustrated in figs. 236 and 236 A. This decoration, although undoubtedly of niello, differs from the ordinary kind in the fact that the ornament of precious metal has been, as it were, embedded in a field of niello. M. Vernier suggests that the units

26

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

of decoration were prepared from cloison wire, laid on the surface of the niello and then pressed into it by a slab of metal sufficiently hot to melt the niello and secure its attachment to the cloisons. This may be the case, but no formula for niello with which I am acquainted is sufficiently fusible to permit of this. It is quite possible to produce the same result by laying the cloisons in the channel prepared, filling up the space with niello, and afterward heating the whole until the latter fuses. In any case, the process employed in the decoration of the dagger illustrated is capable of producing results of great beauty.

Though the skill and inventiveness of the Egyptian workman is shown in every branch of craft, yet in few are the results more remarkable than in the art of metal-casting in sand. The methods employed are those now universally in use, and differ little, if at all (see fig. 220 at the head of the chapter), from those already described in the chapter on Casting. Other methods, however, in constant use by the Egyptian worker and still used by primitive craftsmen are less employed than they deserve. When several replicas

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

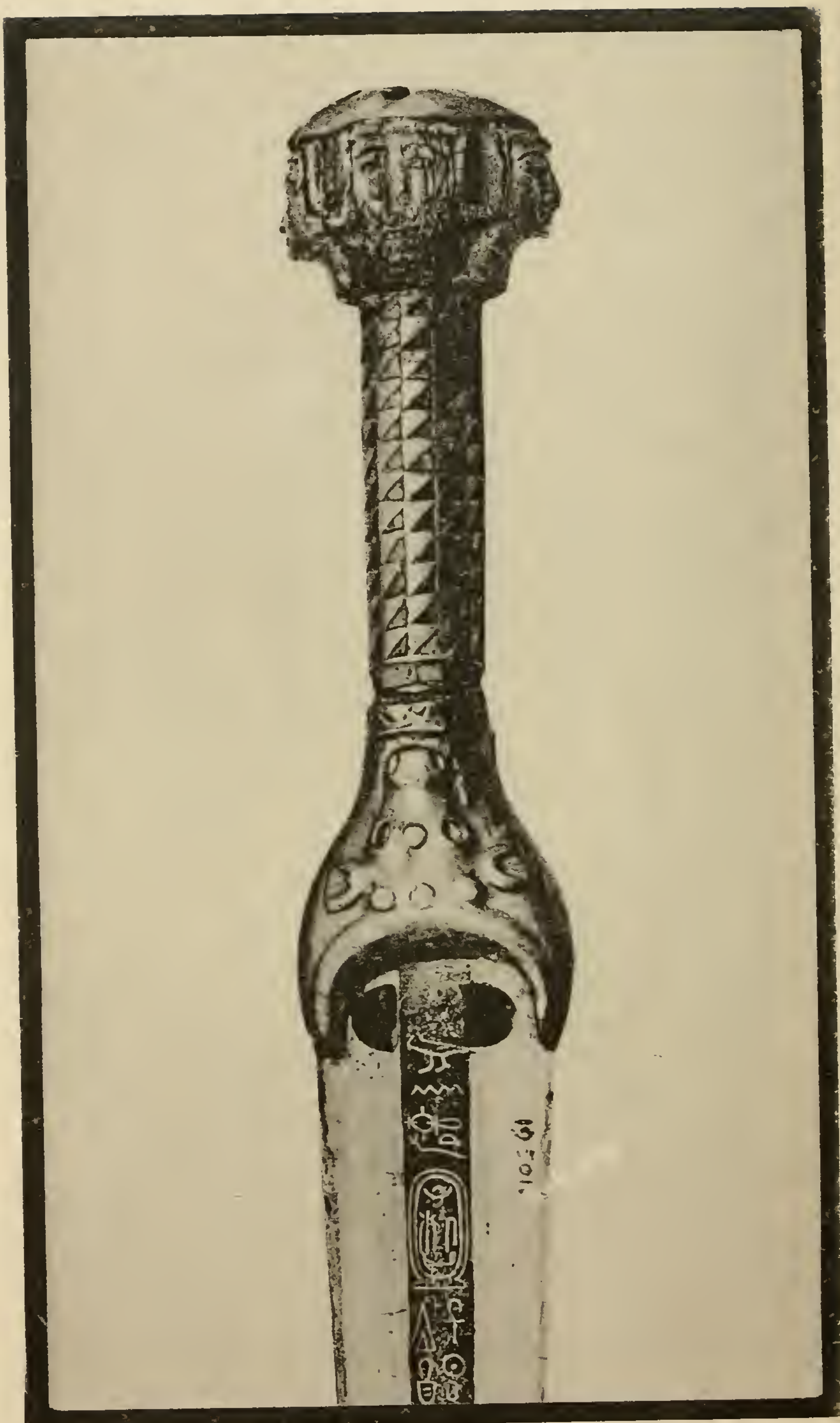


Fig. 236.—Egyptian Inlaid Dagger.
From the Museum at Cairo.

See also Fig. facing page 416.

(To face page 401.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

of a given pattern are required, the form may be excavated in reverse in slate, serpentine, or steatite. In the counter-half the channels for the metal and the necessary air-vents and registers are provided. With proper care these molds last a long time and more than pay for the trouble of making.

A piece-mold for casting rings is illustrated in fig. 237 (see plates facing page 408). Tapering hollows semicircular in section were excavated in the faces of two blocks of steatite. Register pins were formed on one half and corresponding cavities on the other. A base-block with register pins was next prepared, and on the block the sinkings and the designs for the chatons were cut in intaglio (fig. 240, see plates facing page 408). In the tapering hollows the sinkings for the ring shanks were engraved and the gates and vents and leads adjusted in the adjacent faces of these two portions of the mold. This done, a taper shaft of steatite or baked fire-clay was fitted to the taper hollow, and the mold, when tied together, was complete. Blanks for discs, pendants, or bangles were cast by a similar method. Fig. 238 shows a mold in serpentine used for this purpose, from the collection in Cairo. Fig.

Digitized by Microsoft®

239 shows the mold for a platter, also in serpentine, proving the adaptability of the method to larger work than jewelry.

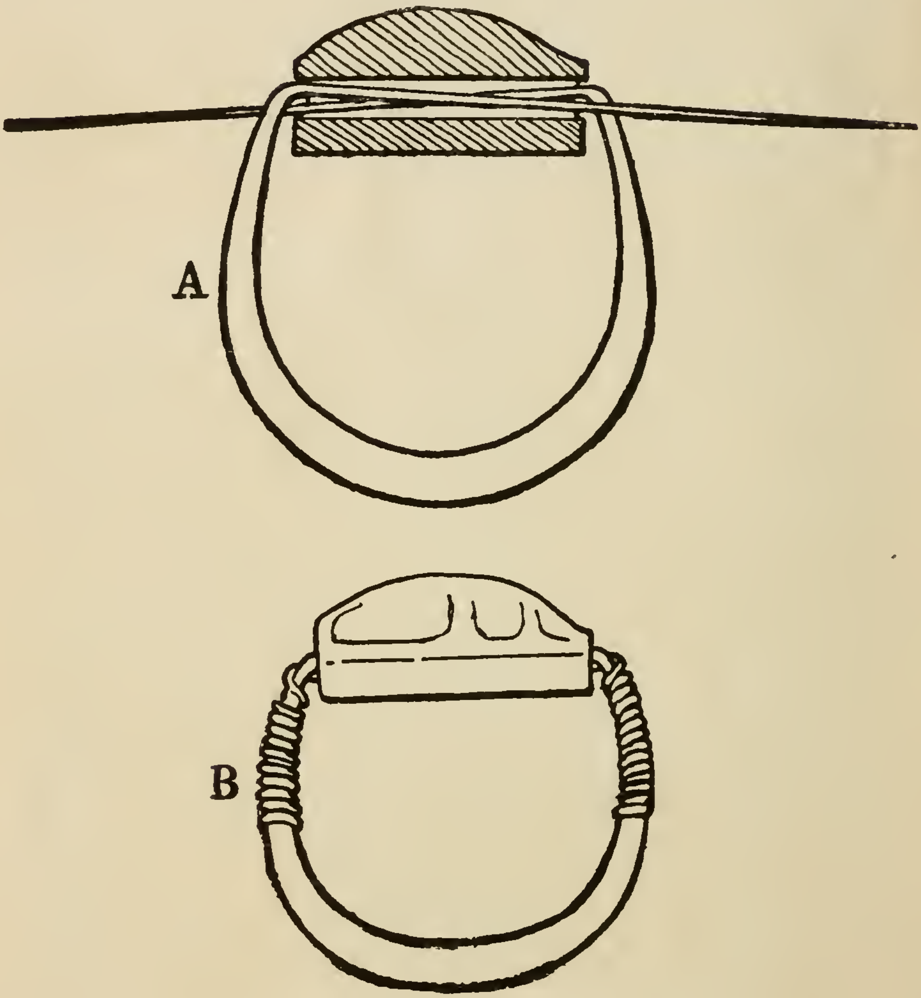


Fig. 241.

In whatever branch of art or craft we examine we seem to find that the Egyptian craftsman invented everything or knew it always. With his swages for hollow brace-

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

lets, his molds and stamps and dies for embossing, his fine cylindrical drills for hard stones and pearls, his filigree, inlaid

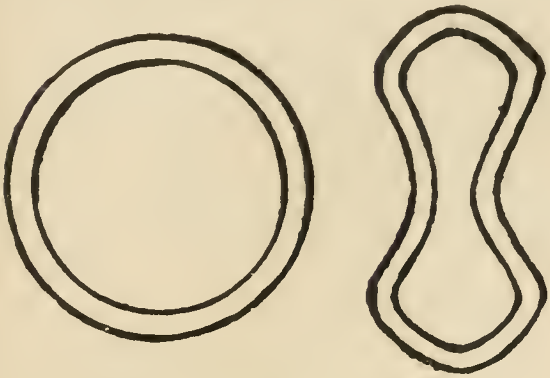


Fig. 242.

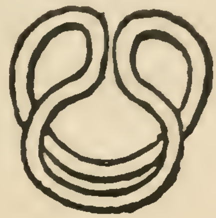


Fig. 243.

stonework and enamels, engraving, repoussé, incrustation and lapidary work, nothing seemed impossible to his firm will and sweet intelligence.

Fig. 241 shows the earliest form of

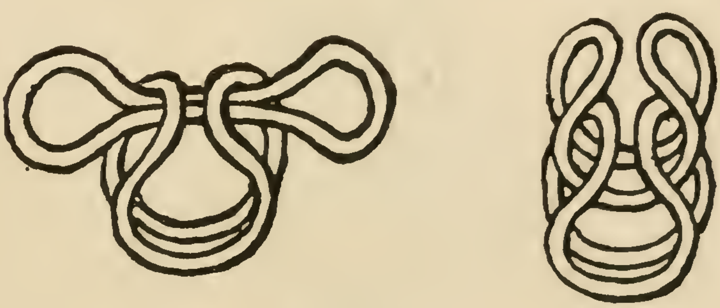


Fig. 244.

Egyptian ring, a scarab mounted as a taper gold wire. The whole fixing being simply done by passing the tapered ends

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

through to the hole in the scarab and winding them round the shank.

It seems evident from this that the

Fig. 245.

ring was invented as a simple means of carrying and using the signet.

Figs. 242 to 247 show an early method of making a cord chain, and from these the method can be followed without the necessity of any description.

In all the range of art there is no work

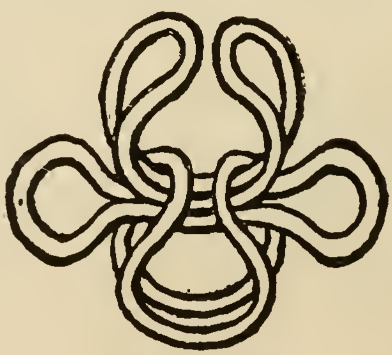


Fig. 246.

at once so happily impossible of imitation, and yet so full of precious suggestion and help for the hungry mind.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Happily for us, the methods and even the types of apparatus used in Egypt still survive throughout the East, indeed are to be found among the primitive workers all over the world. Opportunities for the study of these methods have from time to time been given by the exhibitions of native crafts organized at Earl's

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

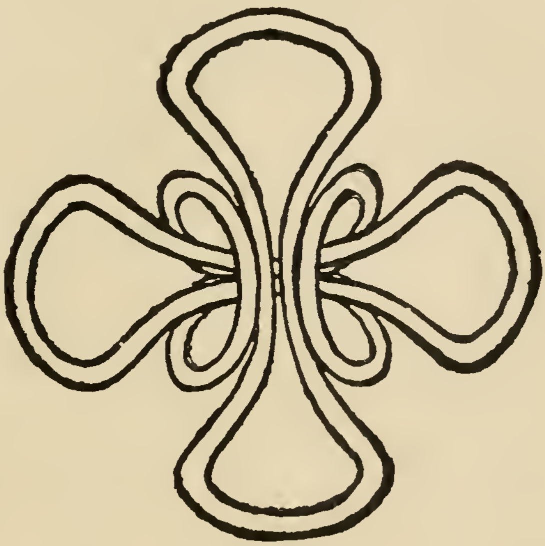


FIG. 247.

Court and Shepherd's Bush, and at the present time by a more than usually interesting assemblage of Eastern craftsmen to be found working at the Coronation Exhibition.

Few things are more inspiring than the sight of the inborn skill of the Oriental as he sits at work: unhasting, unresting, his

Digitized by Microsoft ®

attention utterly absorbed in his task; the fire of his mind burning on the point of his tool.

With almost equal wonder we regard his apparatus, and with a delicious shock of familiarity recognize things figured in missals and papyri and on the walls of tombs, or perchance described in manuscripts whose purport we have till now but incompletely grasped.

The directions of the old lapidaries and gem engravers, the instructions written in "The Book of Divers Arts," are continually illustrated as we study the simple bow-lathe of the Indian turner and the wheel of the gem-cutter, and the rudimentary apparatus of the goldsmith.

The sight of the real things gives continual testimony to the fidelity and utter singleness of purpose of that craftsman whose work was religion and who called himself Theophilus.

Fig. 248[1] will show better than many words the apparatus described often by Theophilus under the name of the "Turn." It could be erected for a few pence, and is one which every boy might well be

---

[1] See plates facing page 416.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

encouraged to make and use. It consists of two posts either driven into the ground or fixed to a bench, and a long bar of iron on which is fixed the object to be turned, and a cylinder of wood to give leverage and hold for the string of a bow or for a cord to be coiled round. Each end of the cord being pulled alternately by an assistant, the spindle is made to rotate so that the object can be turned.

Fig. 249 shows the lap used by the Indian gem-cutter for shaping, faceting, and polishing precious stones. Nothing could well be more simple nor, within its limits, more effective.

The wheel is an adaptation of the bow-drill, and consists of a disc of bronze or a composition of shellac and emery on a long pivot supported by two uprights. The length of the spindle between the supports and disc is sufficient to allow the gut to be coiled round it and to give free play to the movement of the bow. A short cylinder of hard wood about 3½ inches in diameter and 4½ to 5 inches long is fixed on the spindle and acts as the pulley.

The rotation is not continuous but alternate, and the stone fixed in the cement-stick, as described on page 241, is

Digitized by Microsoft®

held to the upper and lower halves of the wheel alternately. With this primitive apparatus both cabochon and faceted stones can be cut. The latter naturally have not the flawless regularity of the machine-made gem, but are perhaps not less attractive on that account.

The illustration in fig. 250, shows a Sinhalese chaser at work. Here again tools and methods are of the utmost simplicity. A lump of pitch, a block of wood, a hammer, a few simple punches, a pair of pliers and a length of bamboo for a blow-pipe form the whole outfit.

The pattern, though complex, has grown by a process of simple addition, and, because they have learnt from their teachers as those learned—by eye-memory—it develops upon the plate as it were by a simple act of will following the lines of some unseen original.

They produce nearly all their effects by outlining, then beating down the ground with plain or mat tools. Any further enrichment of the form, the tracing of veins, fur, feathers, and features, is done by the skillful use of variously shaped punches.

For the elaborate, realistic modeling sought by western craftsmen, an elabora-

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

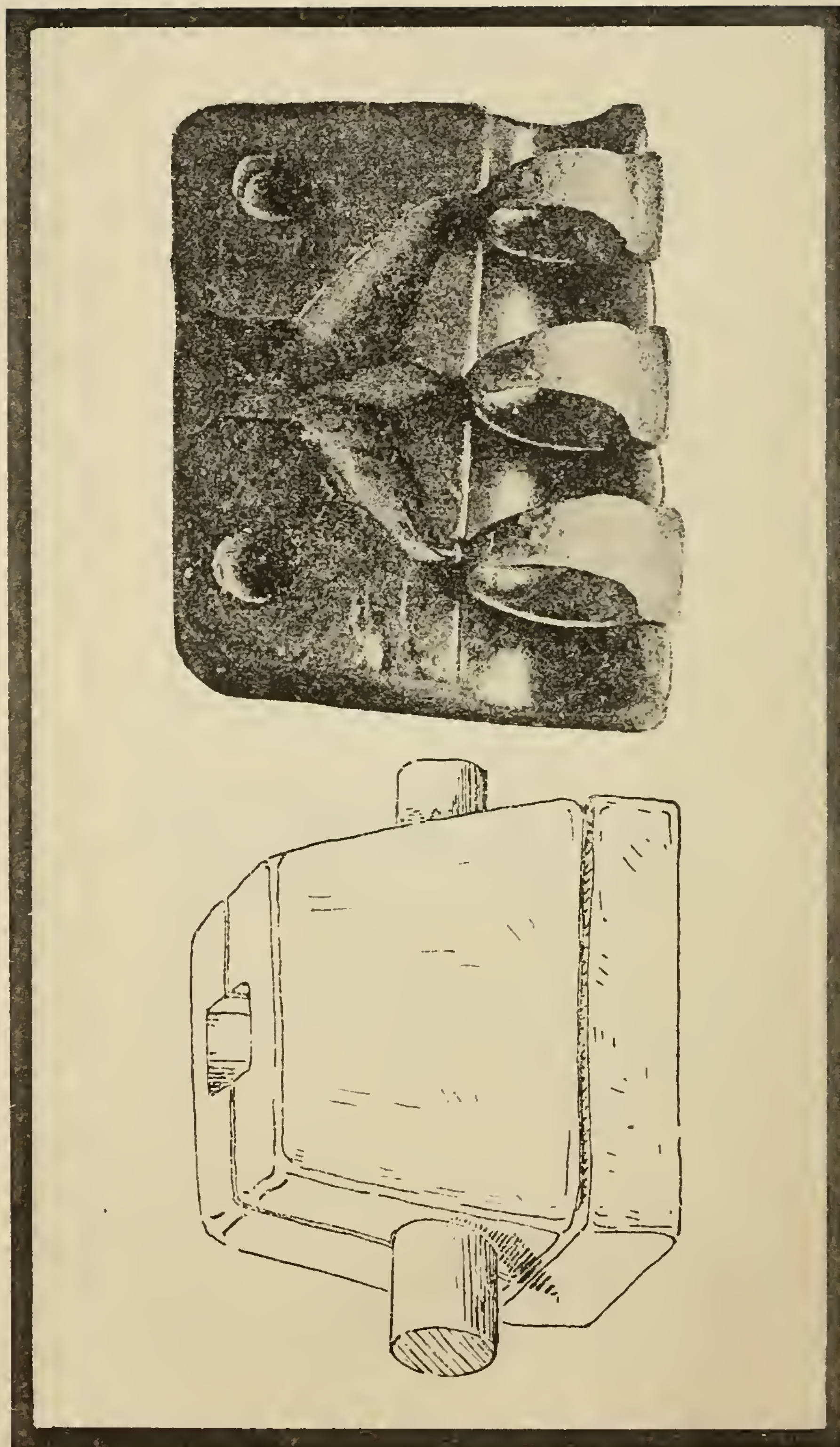


Fig. 237.—Steatite Mould for Casting Rings.
One half of mould showing casts in position.
The diagram shows how the mould is fitted together.
The projecting taper rod is of steatite or fireclay, and
forms the core for the three rings.

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW
PUBLIC LIB
ASTOR,
TILDEN

Digitized by Microsoft®

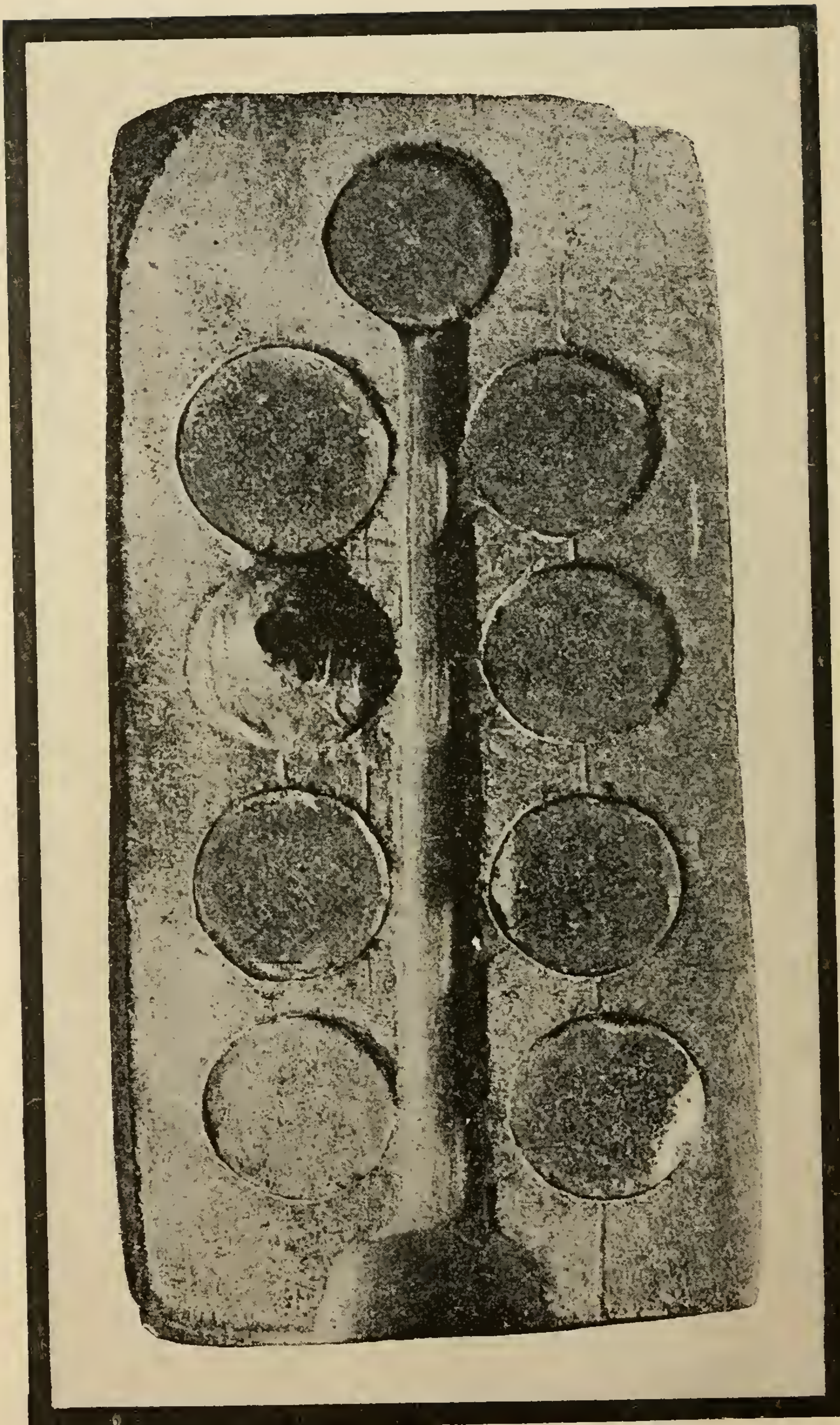


Fig. 238.—One half of Stone Mould for Coins or Medallions. From the Museum at Cairo.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

(To follow Fig. 237.)

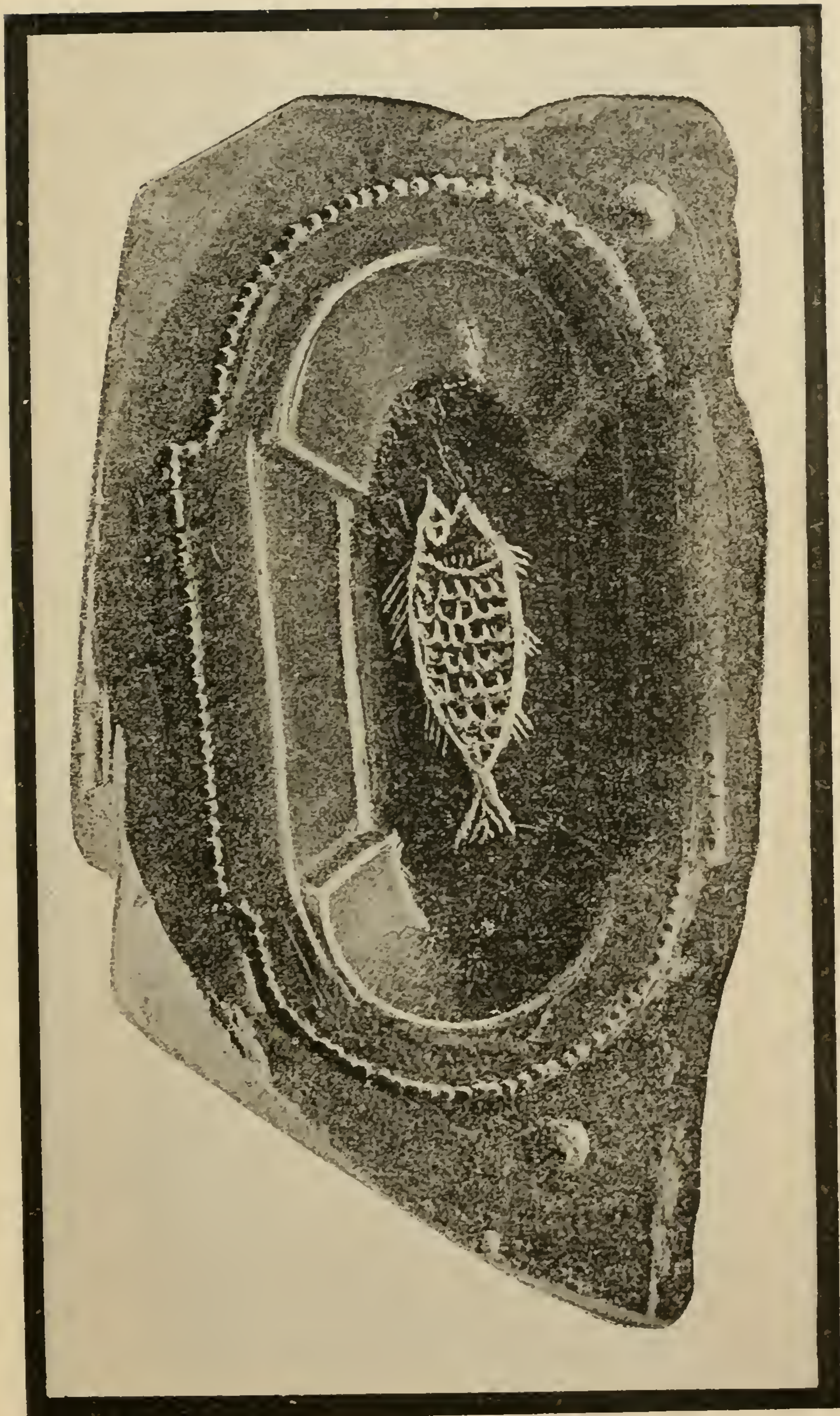


Fig. 239.—Stone Mould for Casting Dishes.
From the Museum at Cairo.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

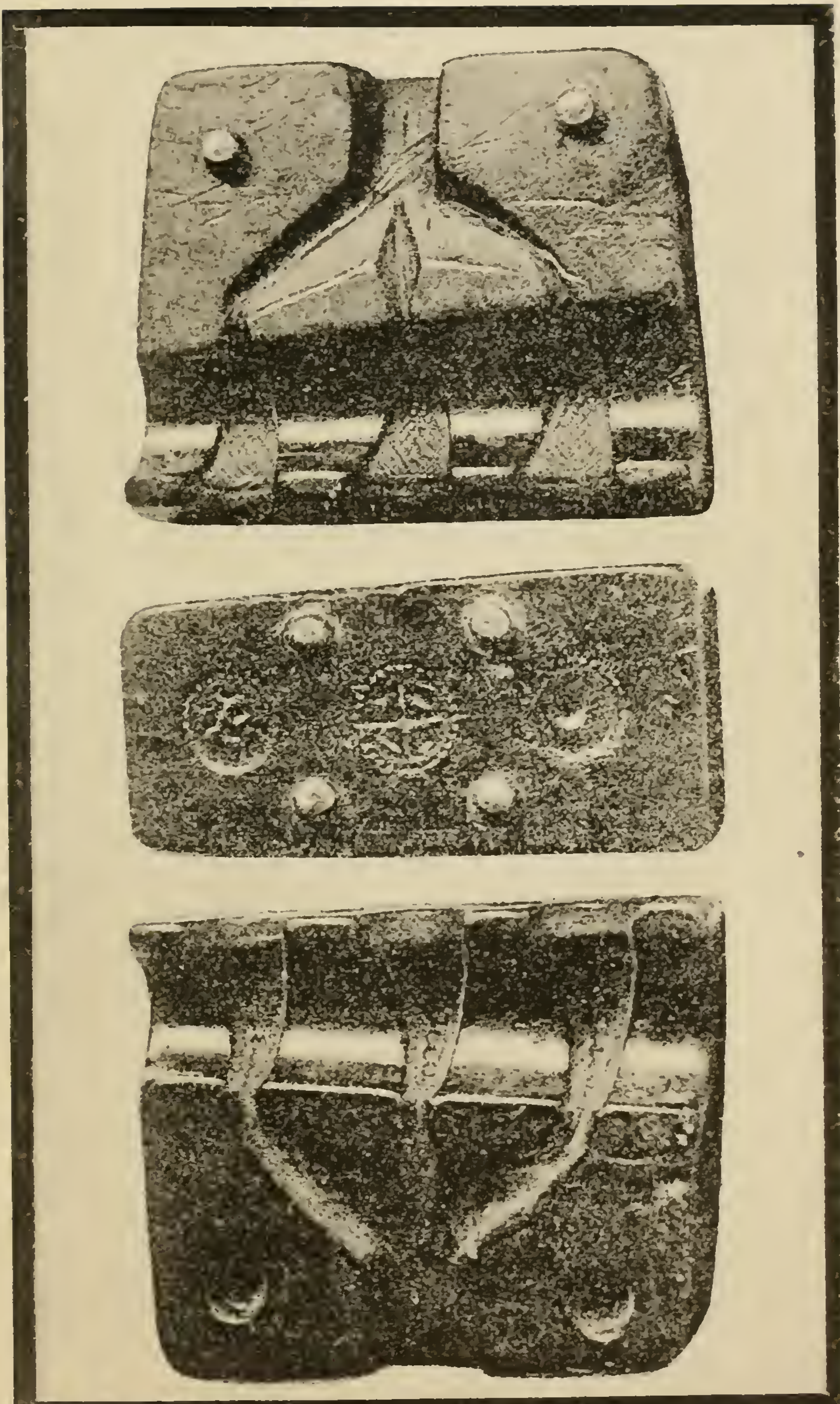


Fig. 240.—Steatite Mould for Casting Rings.
Showing the inside views of the base and the two halves.
(To follow Fig. 239.)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

tion and realism which frequently defeat their object, the Oriental cares little. Not indeed that he is incapable of it—he can, when necessary, do work of the utmost refinement of surface—but he aims at other things.

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

The next illustration, fig. 251, shows the maker of cast vessels preparing, by a method very similar to that indicated by Theophilus, the cores of the vases and bowls, a group of which is seen in the background.

The core, as Theophilus describes it, is turned in a mixture of clay, then dried, and the thickness of the vase added in wax or tallow. The Indian method differs from this slightly, in that the clay model of the vase is itself turned down in the lathe until a thickness equal to that of the future vase has been removed. The photograph and the diagrams, figs. 252 and 253, will make this point quite clear.

This difference simplifies the process very greatly. The Hindoo artist turns the actual shape of the vase in a mixture of chopped straw and clay. Then when the model is dry, molds in the same clay the outer mold upon the model itself, using powdered charcoal to separate

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

the two. When the outer mold, which is made in two halves, is dry and complete, the inner mold is reduced in size on the lathe to the exact thickness of the metal. The mold is then complete. Fig. 252

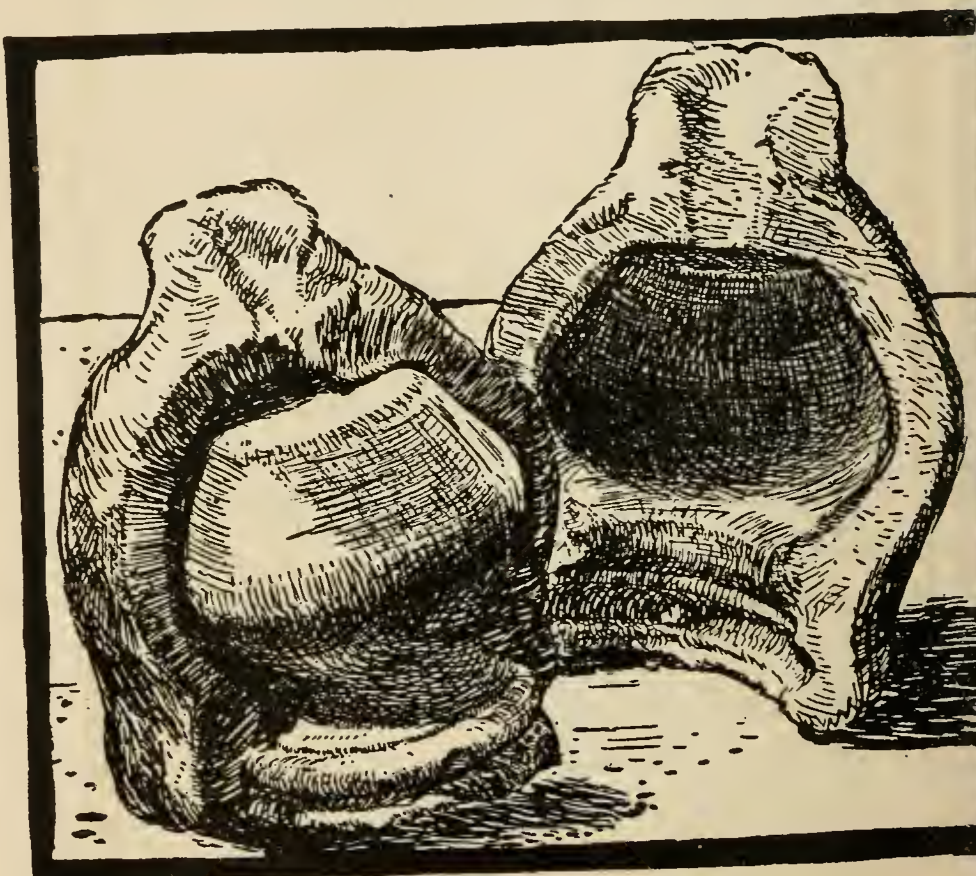


Fig. 252.

shows a mold broken in half to enable the arrangement to be seen clearly.

Fig. 254 shows the Benares brassworkers engaged on the enrichment of large beaten vessels.

Digitized by Microsoft®

The interior of the bowl is covered with a layer of pitch about $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches thick.

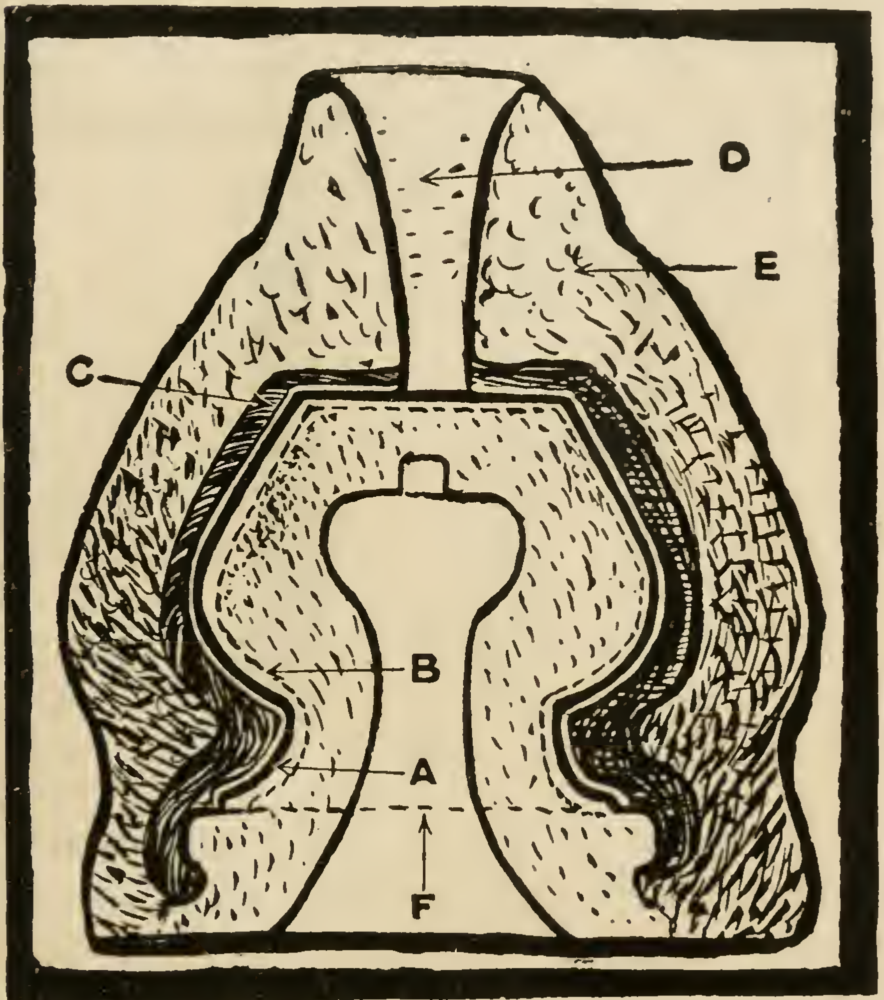


FIG. 253.—A, the original outline of the core and the true outline of the vase when cast; B, the dotted line shows the amount turned from the core after the outer mold has been made round it; C, the inner casing of fine stuff charcoal and fine clay; D is the pour; E, section through the outer mold; F, the register molding which takes the bearing of the outer portion of the mold.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

When cold the vessel is supported on a stout board or block of wood out of which a hollow fitting the curve of the vessel has been excavated. This keeps the work steady and enables the worker to turn the bowl about from time to time as may be necessary.

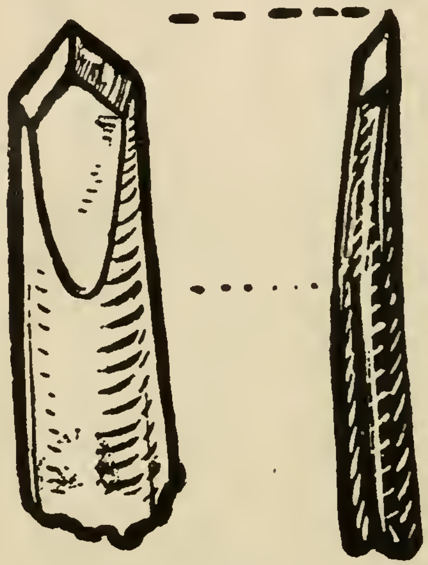


FIG. 256.

The only tools are a few chisels and punches and a hammer and pincers. As will be seen, the design is in every case most beautifully adapted to the surface to be decorated. Every curve has its own significance, and every pattern its message.

The work of the engraver shown in fig. 255 is particularly interesting because the method and the tools are very like those described in the chapters on Japanese

Digitized by Microsoft®

inlaid work. The gravers, instead of being simple lengths of steel, are mounted in long hard-wood handles, and look like small carpenters' chisels. Instead of a hammer a piece of hard, heavy wood about 12 inches long and 1¼ inches square is used as a mallet.

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

The shape of the cutting end of one of these tools is shown in fig. 256.

The work is simply supported on a low three-legged stool having one leg shorter than the other two, so that the work is inclined toward the worker. The tool is held in exactly the way described for the Japanese outlining tool, and the pattern, when complete, is filled with a composition of shellac and powdered colors melted and driven into the cuts with a piece of iron shaped like a soldering-bit.

The superfluous color is cleaned off with a rag soaked in spirits of wine or petrol.

The sight of these accomplished artists working continually for what here would be thought a derisory fee, gaining happiness and spiritual growth from their tasks; beautifying simply, easily, naturally, things required for daily use by their countrymen, fills one with a kind of hunger for a like happy activity. It makes one long for an activity rooted in and nurtured

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Egyptian and Oriental Methods

by a common need and rewarded beyond the daily fee by general interest in and love for the labor of the hand.

And the hope arises that the young workers in the West may come to realize that happiness and handiwork are inseparable companions; that craft is more desirable than riches, faculty more than honor, and that skill can only come through the breath that is divine.

CHAPTER XLVIII[1]

On Design

On Design

DESIGN and workmanship are indivisible. The thing made may reveal more of one than the other. Idea may exceed skill or fall below it. In any work worthy of the name, there must be a balance of both. Not equilibrium but balance. In all great work, the mysterious, incalculable, arresting element of idea, the underlying conception, holds, and must ever hold, first place.

Design and workmanship are inseparable,

[1] As this book is used by teachers as well as students, this chapter, the compressed result of many musings, has been added as a statement of one of the myriad ways in which the complex question of design may be considered.

Digitized by Microsoft®

because the form of the work is the more or less conscious expression of the intimate spiritual structure of the mind of the worker. The plan of his work is, in some sort, the plan of his soul. One may imagine that, just as each known element, though merging into others by imperceptible gradations, is in its typical form characterized by atoms having a definite molecular structure and inter-relation, so each mind has, as it were, an individual molecular structure, traceable in all its manifestations, separating it from and yet binding it up with universal mind. Design is, in fact, a function of vitality. It is admirable in proportion to the amount and intensity of that vitality.

When we say that a design is original, we mean that more than usual of the worker's life has escaped into the work. Originality is no rarity. Everybody is original. Everybody can design, if not supremely, at least beautifully. There are no dull pupils; only undeveloped teachers. No unskilled workers; only spirits half-awake. What we call a man's limitations, are the facets of his soul. Set him in his true place, and by their virtue he will shine and transcend them.

Digitized by Microsoft®

To produce designers it is, however, necessary that each worker should be encouraged or induced to have confidence in, and give free play to, that creative thought by which his body was made and is sustained; to realize that what he seeks without, awaits within. The shaping power, implicit, inherent in all things, comes when called and not before.

Nothing exists which is not, in some sort, the embodiment of design, because nothing exists which is not an outcome of memory. The sense of beauty is memory. Love is memory. As Butler says, "Memory is an ultimate and original power, the source and unifying bond of our whole conscious life."[1] Matter itself is a phase of memory, a whirl of thought in the world of ether; thought ceaselessly reshaping itself, seeking to enlarge upon the archetype, extend the bounds of the world-foundation, add new universes to its dominion. Design, in this aspect, is formalized memory; habit expressed in form; the thought-habit, to which each type of organized matter owes its shape. Rock and flood and star, all forms with

[1] S. Butler, "Unconscious Memory," published by A. Fifield.

Digitized by Microsoft®

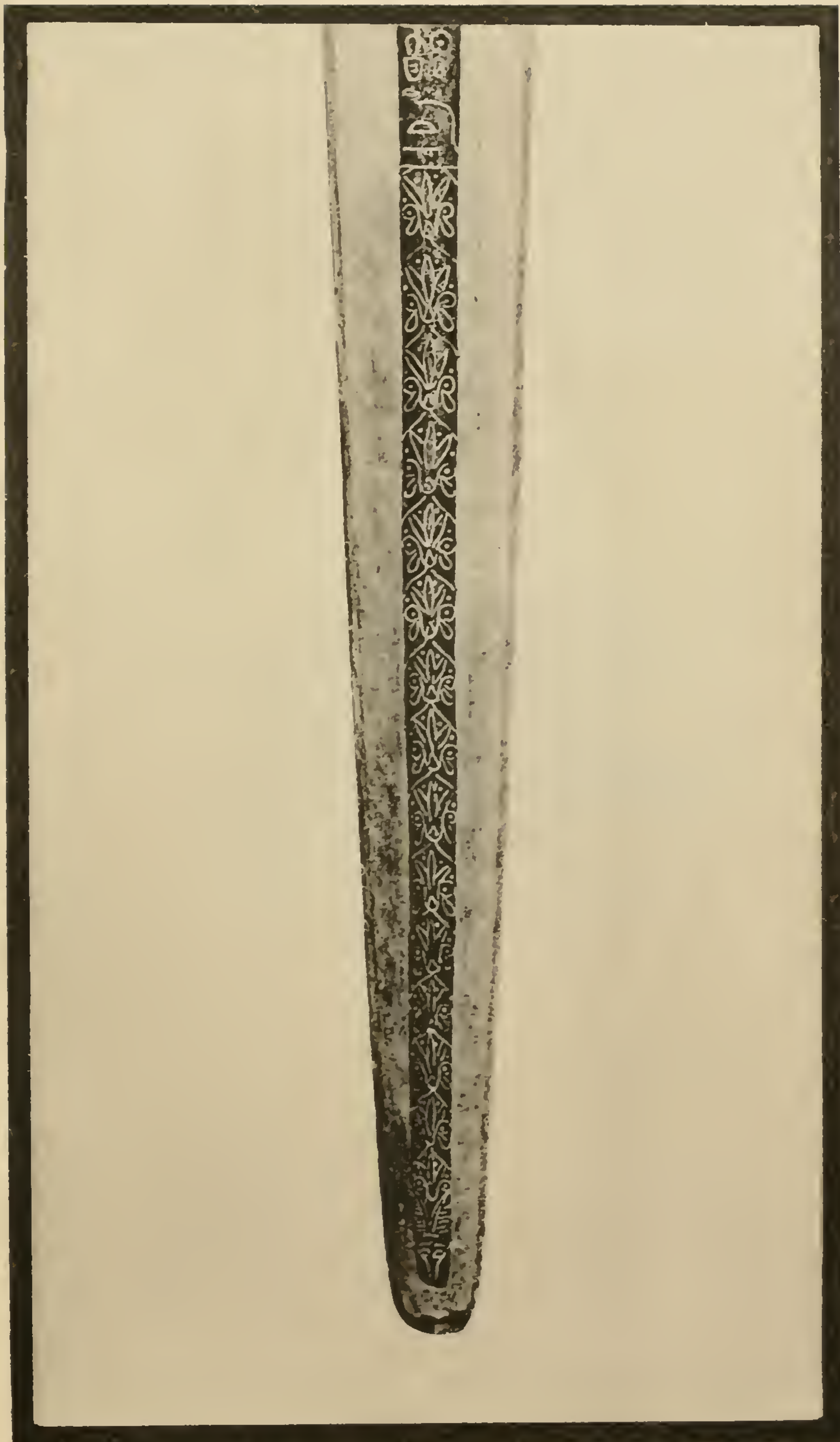


Fig. 236a.—Blade of Egyptian Inlaid Dagger.
From the Museum at Cairo.

Digitized by Microsoft®

See also page 401.

(*To face page 416.*)

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

PUBLIC LIBRARY

Digitized by Microsoft ®

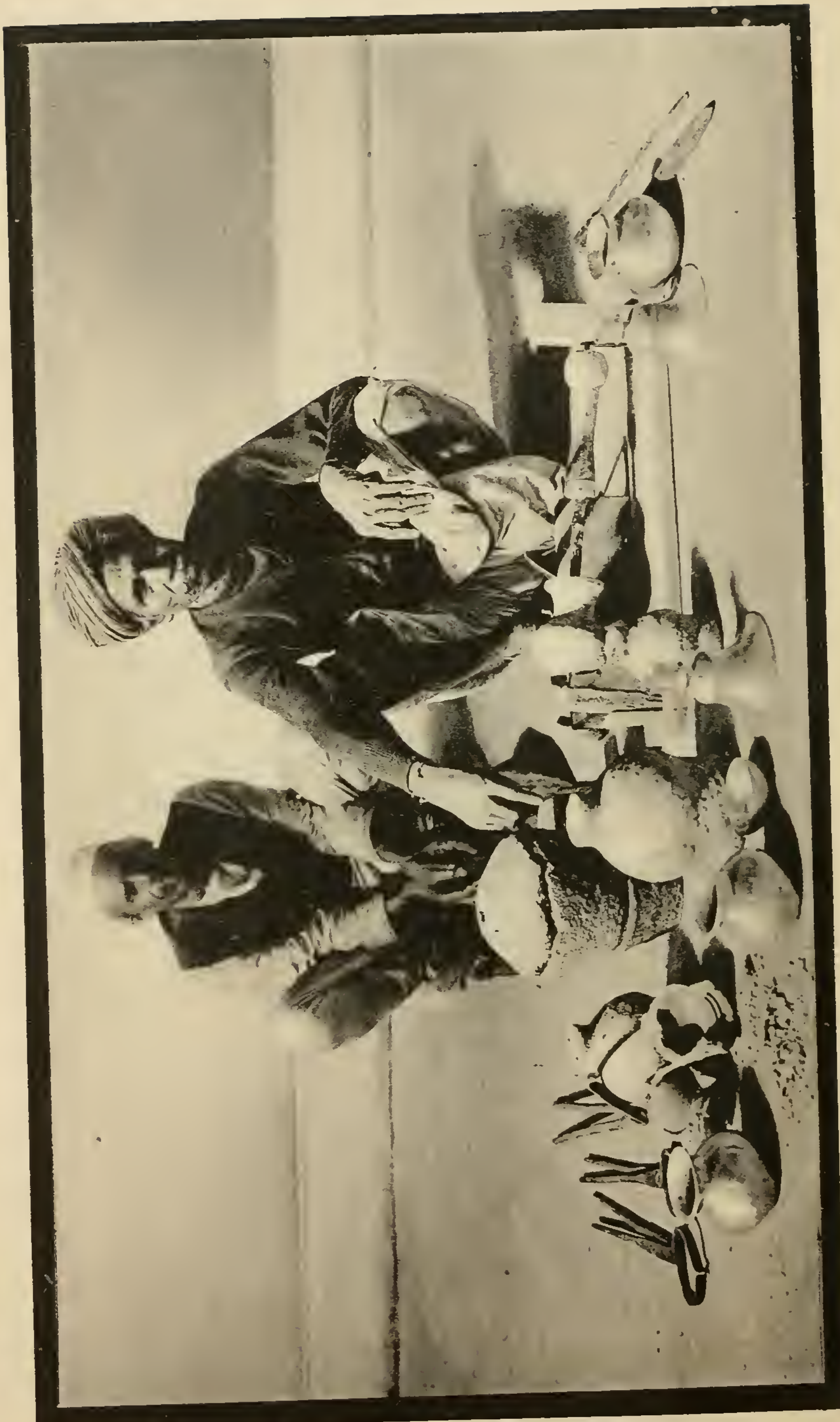


Fig. 248.—Lota Maker's Lathe, Moulds, and Turning Tools.
Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

See page 406.

(*To follow Fig. 230a.*)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®

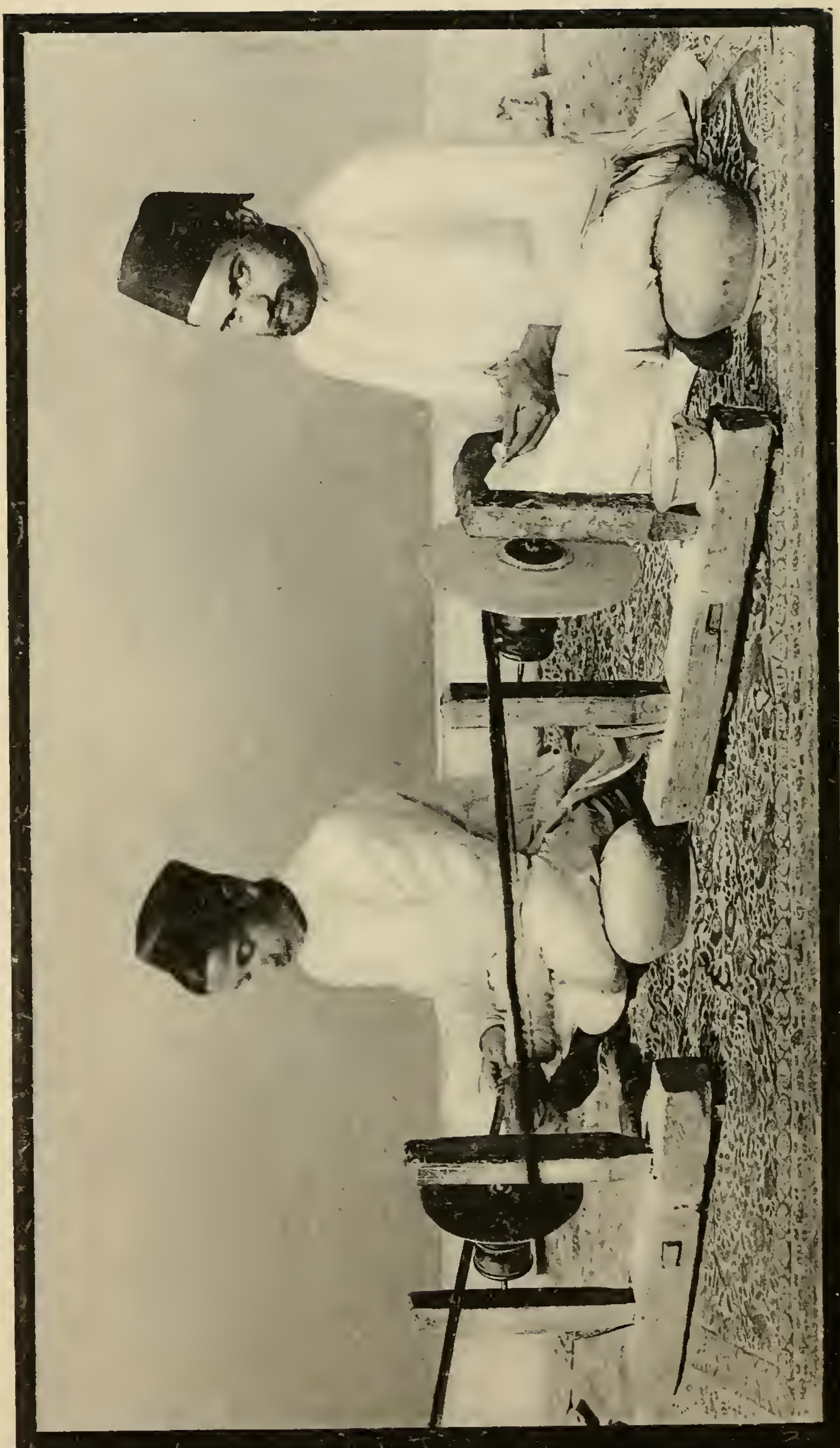


Fig. 249.—Indian Stone-Cutting and Polishing Lathes.
Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

See page 407.

Digitized by Microsoft®

(To follow Fig. 248.)

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

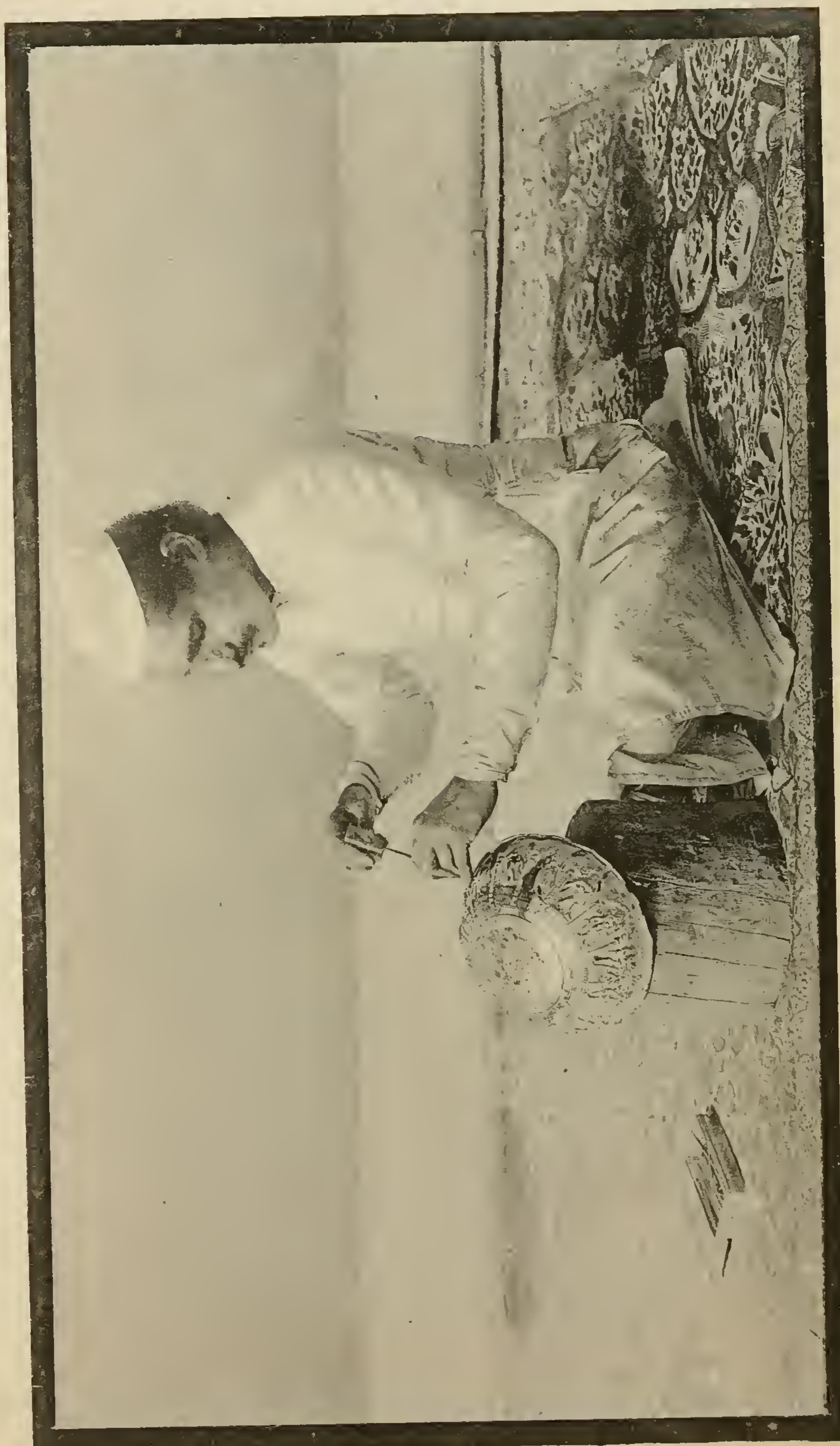


Fig. 250.—Sinhalese Repoussé Worker.

Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

See page 408.

(*To follow Fig. 249.*)

Fig. 251.—Indian Turning Lathe with Kit of Tools and Bow.
Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

See page 409.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 254.—Benares Brass Chasers at Work.
Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

See page 410.

(To follow Fig. 251.)

NEW YORK
LIBRARY
LENOX
FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

Fig. 255.—Indian Engraver at Work.
Photograph, by courtesy of the Management of the Coronation Exhibition.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

See page 412.

(To follow Fig. 254.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

which we are familiar, are made by its agency. Child and flower, field and fruit, the peak with its cloud, what are they but the effects of successive recollections, resurgings of being; transient images of long world-cycles.

Looked at more inwardly, the thought suggests itself that form is produced by the impact of our own and other consciousness. Form changes with perceptive power. To super-consciousness the reflorescence of a starry cluster may be what the birth of the primrose is to us. It may be that to infra-consciousness the same flower is built of starry skies and countless universes whose eternity is our brief spring. Universes endlessly reborn in forms which resemble each other because they are the outcome of the same living memory. "The flower we see to-day is the last link of an inconceivably long series of an organism, which comes down in a direct line of descent."[1] The perfection of it is so appealing because we are dimly conscious of the vast efforts required to produce such loveliness. We see it rooted, not in inches of loam, but in æons of toil.

[1] Prof. Hering, "Unconscious Memory," translated by Samuel Butler.

Digitized by Microsoft®

In its beauty there is something of all the springs of all time. Not one flower presents itself to us, but an eternity of them. Heaven bursting through the skin of earth. At each birth a little lovelier, more captivating than before. In such wise is it with art. It is not of one generation only. Its gestation is secular. Living work, vital design, is recapitulation, the expression of an oft-recurrent memory; the resounding of an oft-repeated phrase in the cosmic symphony. This last word suggests an illustrative parallel.

Who, seeing for the first time some famous singer, has not said: "Can that be she, that wayward-looking, almost inconspicuous being?" Yet, when she sang, we understood. Her face changed. The whole being seemed extended as by some pythonic influx; transfigured and made radiant through the divine afflatus. The streams of melody flowed out from everywhere at once, throbbing above, beneath, around us. Not the singer but the very principal of song was singing. Not our ears but our throats and hearts heard. Every plexus of nerves was thrilled.

Digitized by Microsoft®

She was, at the same time, voice and song; at once the creative and created emotion, the bond that knit to-day, the song-worlds of centuries and spheral harmonies together. In the lullaby, the soul of motherhood found its voice; in the lament all wifehood. When she sang of love, we heard Psyche herself sobbing softly in the darkness as she pressed through the brake and bramble in the search for Eros. The voice seemed the gate of a world, a gate to which crowded all the memories, passions, and experiences of unnumbered lives, re-awakened by the impulse of song; all now athirst for a moment of new life and new expression.

The child- and the mother- and the lover-notes found each their resurrection, and our life was extended by millenniums.

The singer was not a person only, but the ghost of an ancestral age. That note of passion was not of this birth; it echoed and revivified the far-off ecstacy of a life long since forgotten. It came of a passion not dead, but sleeping beneath the dust of centuries, ready to flame at the lightest breath of spirit. That cry of anguish was not learnt in this life; it sounds again a note of primal pain. The bursts of

Digitized by Microsoft®

wild entreaty that so moved us was born deep down in time upon the margin of a tropic sea, where in the green forest darkness, love, and fierce desire fought the battle of the spirit together.

The mood, the measure, and the music were woven of strands stretching back to the source of life, and the moment of utterance was a cross-section of being. In the gradations of a tone, the soul ran through the memories of ages. The muted murmurings of young emotion and the full chords of passion found completion and roundness in the spiritual and material structure they helped to build. For the body was built by pain and love, twin strands of memory.

The song was an epitome of life; the life that enters with a cry, and with a sigh departs. The singer was a charged imprint of world-memory. Her activities, though seeming individual, were collective; her voice, though crystal clear, the cry of clustered millions. A being in appearance, separate and detached, yet in truth forming one vast organism with all its ancestry; an organism of which none can tell the past, divine the plan, or forecast the future, for it changes as it grows, and with each acqui-

Digitized by Microsoft®

sition opens out new spiritual territory and evolves new powers. Close-knit with every other organism, its existence implicit in theirs as they in it, each is not a part merely but is the universe. As with individuals, so with races. Civilizations flower and fruit and fade, each growing from the débris of those which went before, each expressing in some sort the activities of a life so vast as to be scarce conceivable; a group-life of whose form nothing yet is known, though each civilization is bound up with all its predecessors, for their features grow fainter as they recede into "the dark backward and abysm" of thought, and shape and plan escape us.

Knowledge is the store of cosmic experience, and to be wise is to have access to that store and to add to it by use. Art is the creative manifestation of Knowledge.

What is true of song, is true of other arts. The worker is a gate of memory, a reservoir of cosmic energy; world-life, seeking new births in new yet familiar forms. The strand of life-hunger, on which his myriad existences are strung, stretches out into the infinite like a vine tendril blindly

Digitized by Microsoft®

feeling after new supports for the coming oft-repeated harvest.

The work is the précis and sum of past and the promise and symbol of future experience. Most original when most nearly derived, most expressive when most reticent; the more intimately human, the more obviously divine. Yet, withal, the highest conceivable perfection of work is a scarce perceptible step toward that which will be.

The only limits of power are the bounds of belief. Whom the past impels and the future calls, will travel far and swiftly. None need be discouraged. If the worker seek the craft only, perfect himself in that, supple body, subdue mind, and harness spirit to the daily task, he cannot fail of enlightenment. "Live the life, and you shall know the doctrine," said the wise one.

Chuang Tzu conveys the age-old lesson in another way.

"Ch'ing, the chief carpenter, was carving wood into a stand for hanging musical instruments. When finished, the work appeared to those who saw it as though of supernatural execution.

"And the Prince of Lu asked him, say-

Digitized by Microsoft®

ing, 'What mystery is there in your art?'

" 'No mystery, your Highness,' replied Ch'ing, 'and yet there is something. When I am about to make such a stand I guard against any diminution of my vital power. I first reduce my mind to absolute quiescence. Three days in this condition, and I become oblivious of any reward to be gained. Five days and I become oblivious of any fame to be acquired. Seven days and I become unconscious of my four limbs and my physical frame.

" 'Then, with no thought of the Court present to my mind, my skill becomes concentrated, and all disturbing elements from without are gone. I enter some mountain forest. I search for a suitable tree. It contains the form required; which is afterward elaborated. I see the stand in my mind's eye, and then set to work. Otherwise there is nothing. I bring my own natural capacity into relation with that of the wood. What was suspected to be of supernatural execution in my work was due solely to this.' "[1]

These words, written three or four

---

[1] From Chuang Tzu, translated by H. Giles. Published by Quaritch

Digitized by Microsoft®

centuries before our era, are still alive with vital truth. No work has such survival power as that done under like conditions. For myself this little tale enshrines not only a religion and a philosophy but also the root and flower and fruit of Design.

Digitized by Microsoft®

COLLOTYPE PLATES

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

NOTES ON THE COLLOTYPE PLATES

Notes on Collotype Plates

PLATE I.—Shows a Group of Personal Jewelry from South Kensington Museum. The first three specimens on the plate are earrings of Roman workmanship, but obviously made under the influence of Greek or Etruscan traditions. The first shows the use of filigree and twisted wire and simple methods of using rough-cut precious stones. The second shows a pierced setting for a pearl attached to a rough piece of emerald. The third a similar pierced setting applied to a bit of emerald crystal roughly polished. The gold is fine gold, and the workmanship of the whole exceedingly simple, yet exceedingly effective. The fourth Object is a piece of late Spanish work, but it shows a beautiful way of using seed pearls, and as a piece of craftsmanship is very near akin to the first three.

Digitized by Microsoft®

The vine leaves are scorpered out of thick sheet silver, and gilt and enameled. The hand is also enameled.

PLATE II.—*Anglo-Saxon Brooches from the British Museum.* No. 1. *Gold Brooch found at Abingdon;* 2 and 3. *Silver Brooches found at Faversham.* These brooches are magnificent examples of the value of repetition and rhythm in design. The attention of the student is particularly directed in the case of the Abingdon plate to the rich color of the original, to the sumptuousness of the design which is yet almost rudimentary in its simplicity, and to the extreme ingenuity of the craftsmanship by which the thin coils of compound wire are twisted into almost realistic presentments of serpents.

The Ring of Ethelwulf is a good example of the common-sense design. The craftsman has taken all the space he could on the top of the finger, but where a broad ring would prevent the finger from bending he has narrowed it down to a simple band.

PLATE III.—No. 1. *Gold Belt Buckle found at Taplow.* A very fine example of the use of corded wire as a contrast to cloison inlay.

Digitized by Microsoft®

No. 2. *A Gold Brooch found at Dover*, showing the richness produced by concentric rings of tiny scrolls enclosed by plain and twisted wires. This surface affords an ideal foil for the red garnet inlay.

Plate IV.—The Necklace is of Anglo-Saxon workmanship, found at Desborough, Northamptonshire. It is given as an example of the use of uncut stones, and the fine effect produced by simple coiled wire. The small brooches are fourteenth-century inscribed brooches of English workmanship given to show the beauty of severe and simple forms.

Plate V.—*The Shrine of the Bell of Conall Cael.* This shrine of bronze and silver and precious stones gives an admirable illustration of several of the methods described by Theophilus in his book of "Divers Arts." The beautiful little panels of scrollwork were impressed in stamps carved out of iron or bronze, and the figures are in cast bronze. It would be difficult to find a more romantic or more suggestive design. The crystal sphere on which the crucifix rests makes the whole work look quite magical.

Plate VI.—*The Gold Cup of the Kings of France and England.* Perhaps the most

Digitized by Microsoft®

Notes on Collotype Plates

beautiful piece of gold work in the world. The photograph, good as it is, can, however, convey no suggestion of the wonderful color and splendor of the original. It is given to show that all work to be decorated by enamel should be simple in form.

PLATE VII.—No. 1. *An English Gold Brooch, fourteenth century*, set with pearls, cabochon sapphires, and emeralds. An example showing shaped settings for pearls, claw settings for the stones, and carved and pierced dragon bosses as a contrast to the stones. A model of built-up design.

No. 2. *A Roman Ring of Gold*, coiled up out of thin wire and soldered into a solid band. An example of the beauty of absolutely simple craftsmanship.

No. 3. *A Russian Pendant*, illustrating the value of filigree surfaces as a contrast to the watery sheen of precious stones.

No. 4. *A Gold Ring, Roman*, an example of pierced and carved work.

No. 5. *A Gold Ring*, built up of strands of thin metal united by a repoussé boss as ornament.

PLATE VIII.—*French Brooches of the 13th and 14th centuries.* The first built up out of thin sheet metal, the second carved out of the solid. The first is an example

Digitized by Microsoft®

of the use of leaves made as described in the chapter on Rings. The settings are simple cones of thin sheet metal wrapped round the stones. At the back of the brooch is a beautiful border in niello. Every student should see this brooch and study it for himself.

PLATE IX.—*A Processional Cross, fifteenth century, German workmanship.* This cross is, as it were, a résumé of the whole goldsmith's art. There is hardly a process which has not been used in its manufacture. Twisted wire of every degree of complexity, stamped work, carved work, beaten work, cast work, and enameling—all unite to make a most beautiful whole. As a study of compression in design it could hardly be surpassed.

PLATE X.—*A French thirteenth-century Chalice.* This illustrates the decoration of chalices by impressed work described by Theophilus.

PLATE XI.—*Ciborium in copper gilt,* set with jewels and panels of enamel. A splendid example of the value of clearly defined spaces, and the beauty which may result from the arrangement of rigid shapes within such spaces. Italian, fourteenth century.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Plate XII.—*Pastoral Staff in copper gilt, set with enamel.* Given as an example of the right use of enamel. Italian, fourteenth century.

Plate XIII.—*Norwegian Bridal Crown in silver gilt.* This shows the possibilities of work in thin sheet metal.

Plate XIV.—*The Elfred Jewel.* An example of the decorative value of inscriptions, of the use of coiled and beaded wire, and the right use of enamels.

Plate XV.—*Pendants, Brooches, and a Ring by the author.* In gold and jewels and enamels.

Plate XVI.—No. 1. *A Necklace in opals, emeralds, and pearls by the author.* Most of the stones in the necklace were cut and polished by the method described in Chapter XXX.

No. 2. *A Shrine Ring*, enclosing an image of the Holy Mother and Child.

Digitized by Microsoft®

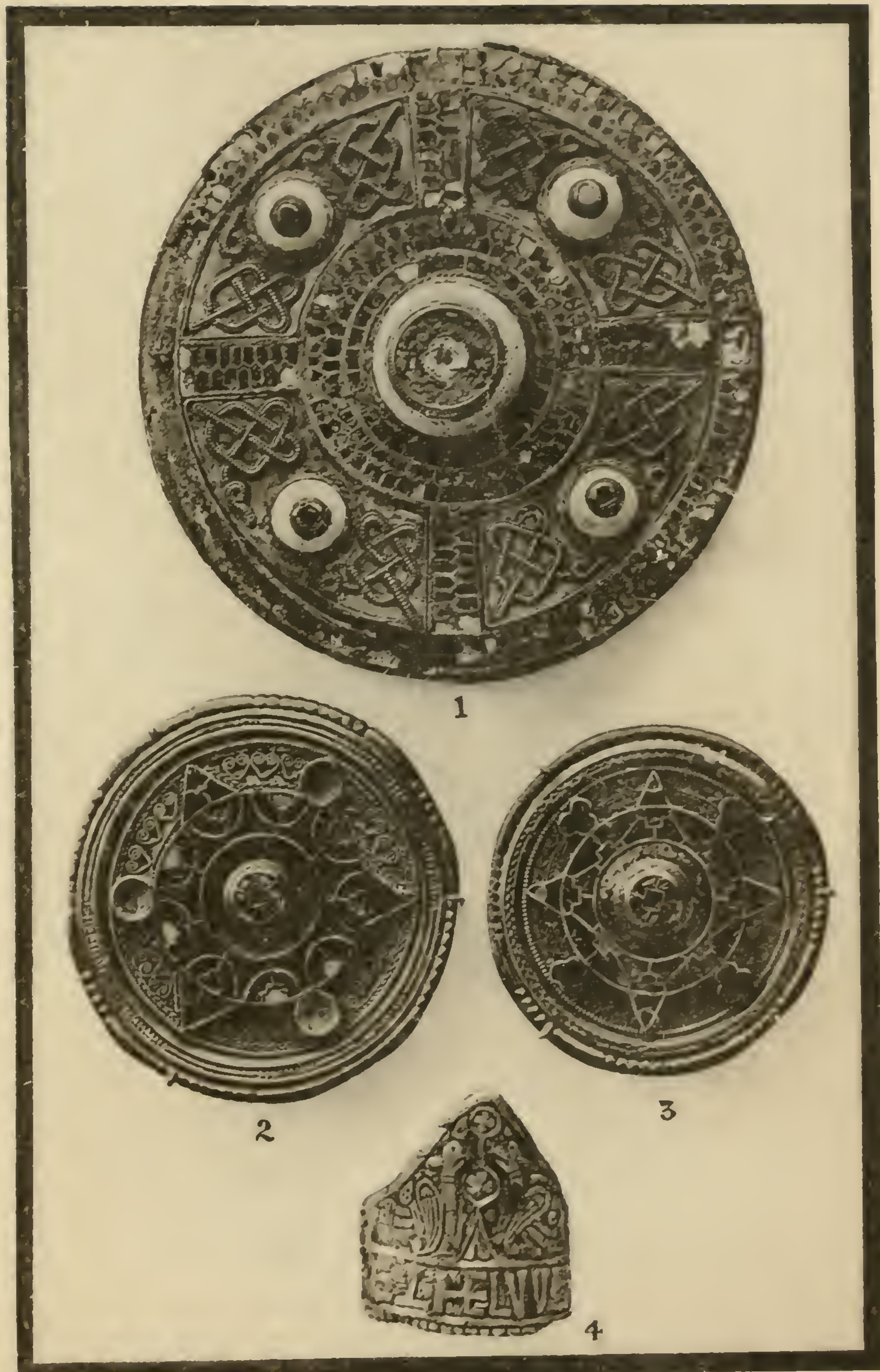
I.—1, 2, 3, Roman Earrings. 4, 16th Century Spanish Pendant, in Silver Gilt, Enamel, and Pearls. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

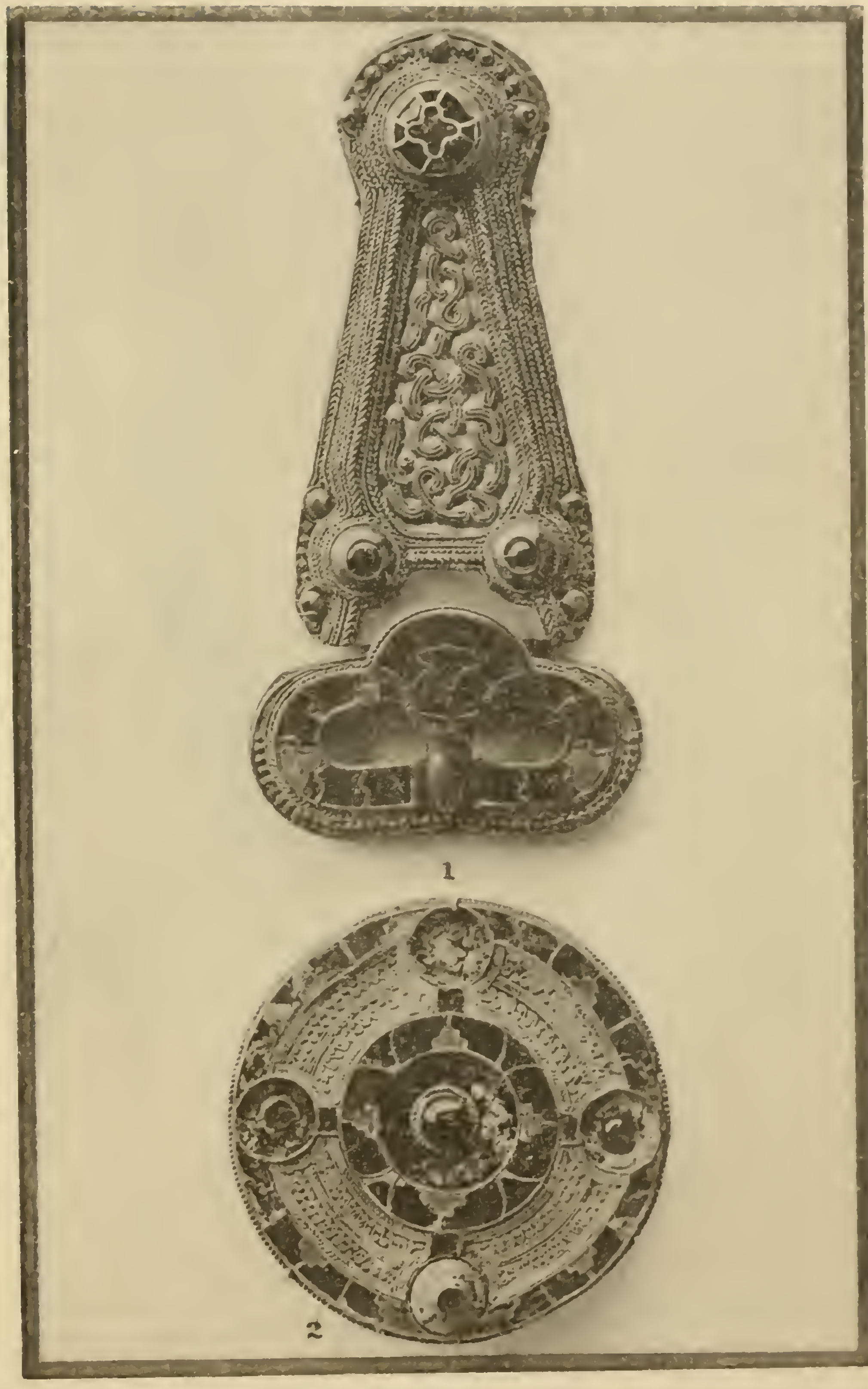


II.—1, Anglo-Saxon Brooch, found near Abingdon. 2, 3, Anglo-Saxon Brooches, found near Faversham. 4, Anglo-Saxon Ring, found at Laverstock. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®



III.—1, Anglo-Saxon Belt Buckle, found at Taplow. 2, Anglo-Saxon Brooch, found at Dover. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

IV.—Anglo-Saxon Necklace and 14th Century English Inscribed Brooches. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

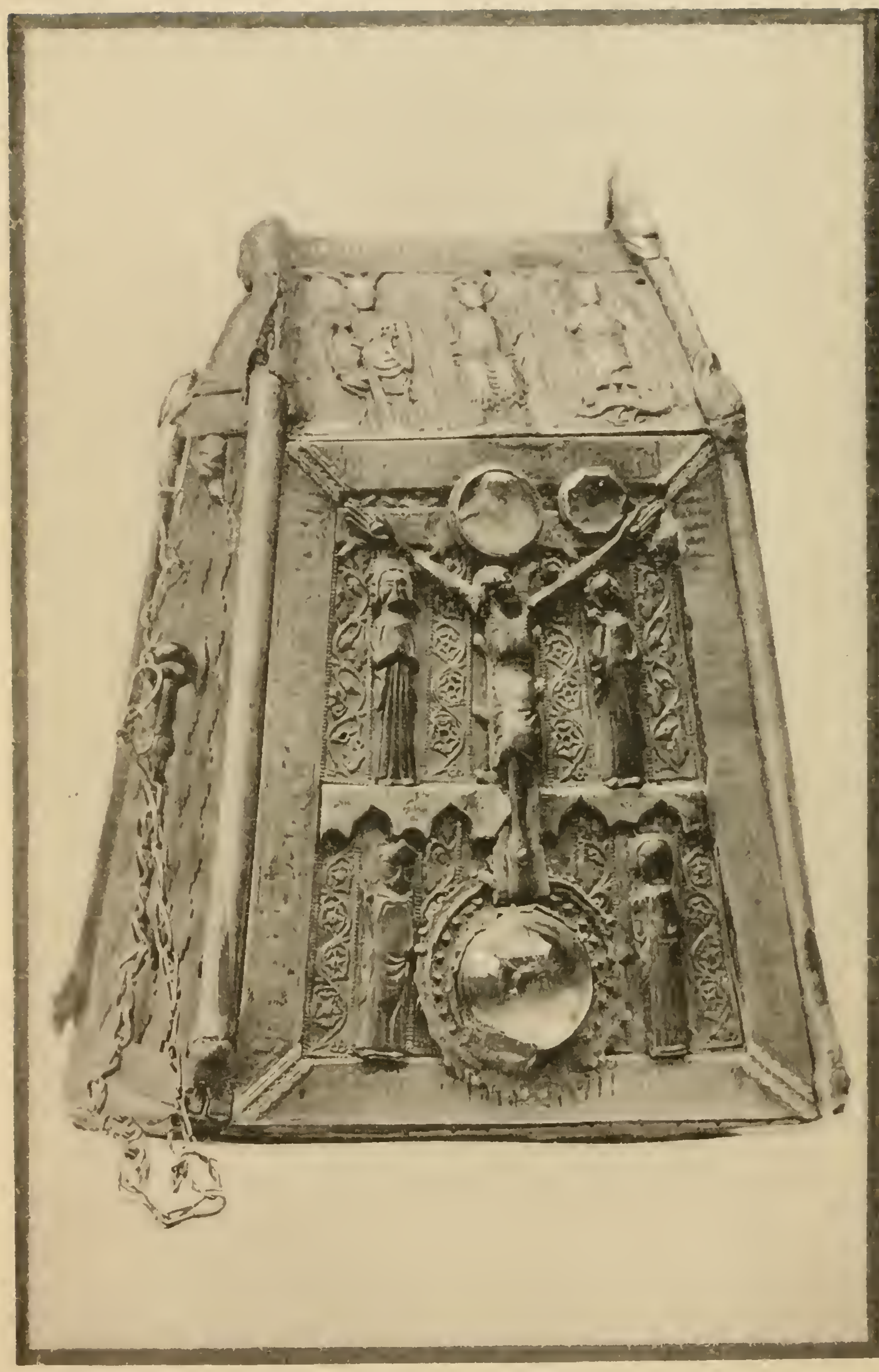
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW
PUBLIC LIBRARY

Digitized by Microsoft®



V.—Shrine of the Bell of Conall Cael. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

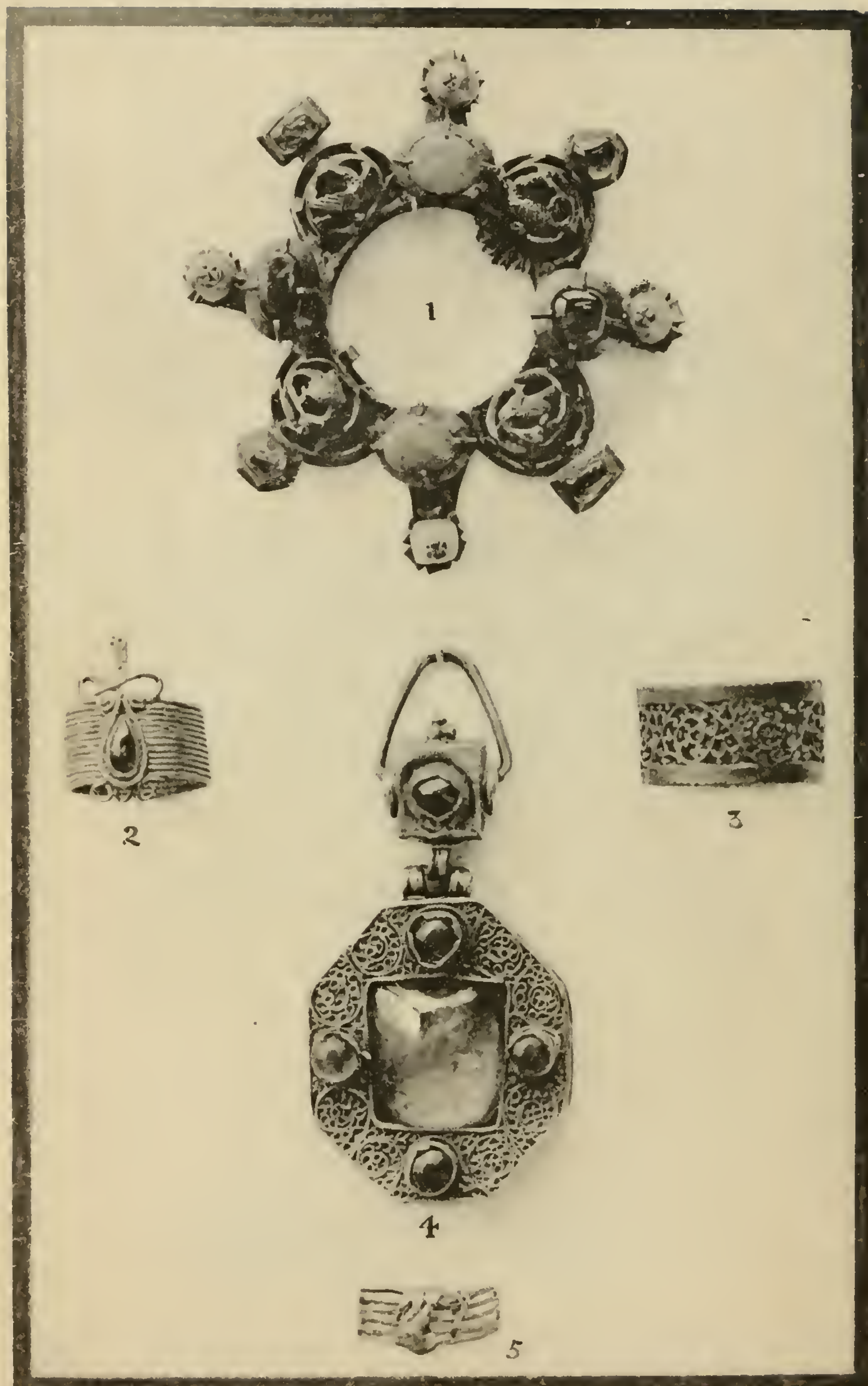
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

VI.—Gold Cup of the Kings of France and England. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

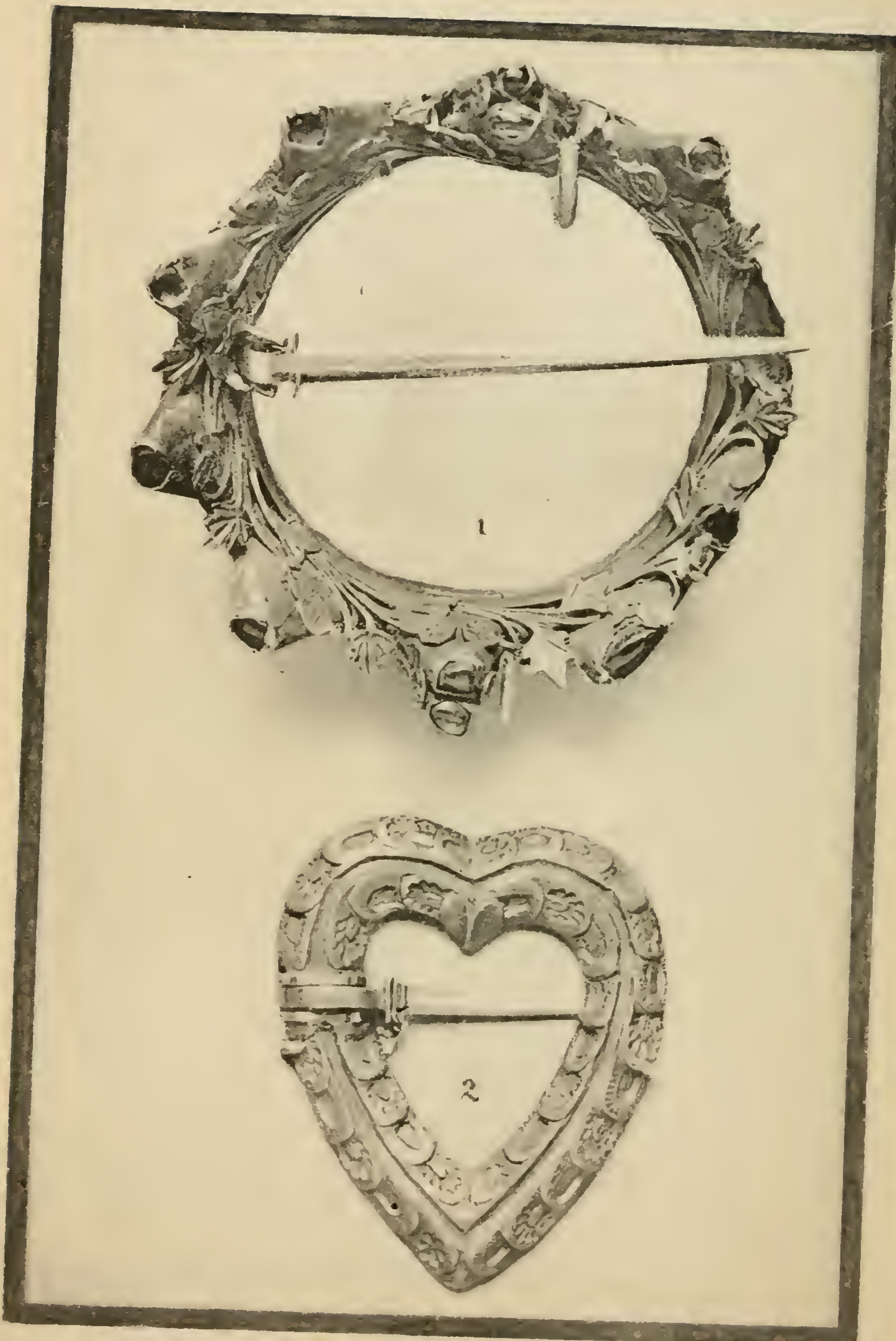


VII.—1, English Gold Brooch, 14th Century. 2, 3, 5, Roman Gold Rings. 4, Russian Pendant. (British Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

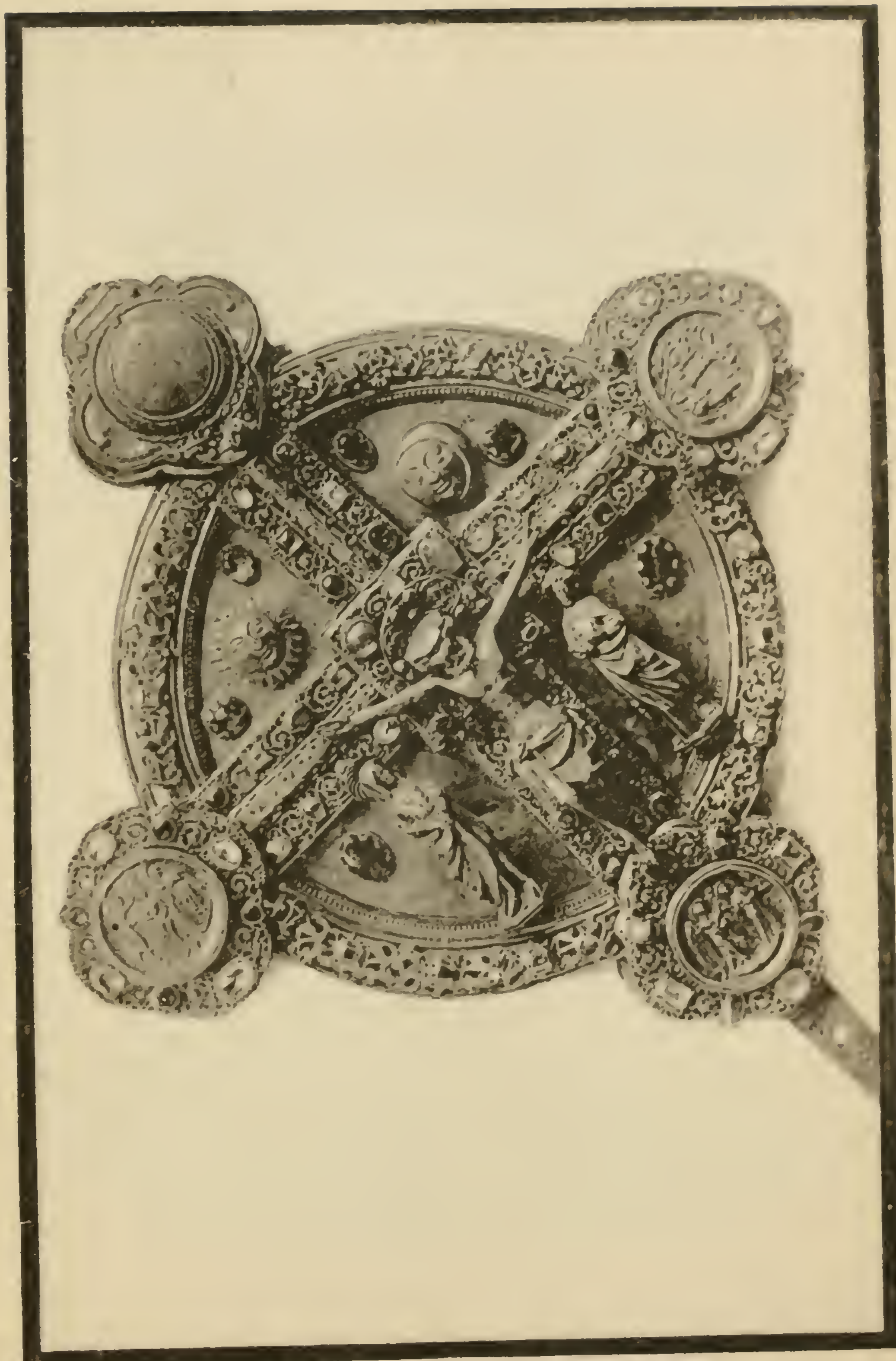
PUB LIBRARY
ASTOR, L
TILDEN FOUN

Digitized by Microsoft®



VIII.—1, French Gold Brooch, 13th Century. 2, French Gold Brooch, 14th Century. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft ®



IX.—Processional Cross. (Villingen.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

X.—French Chalice, 13th Century. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

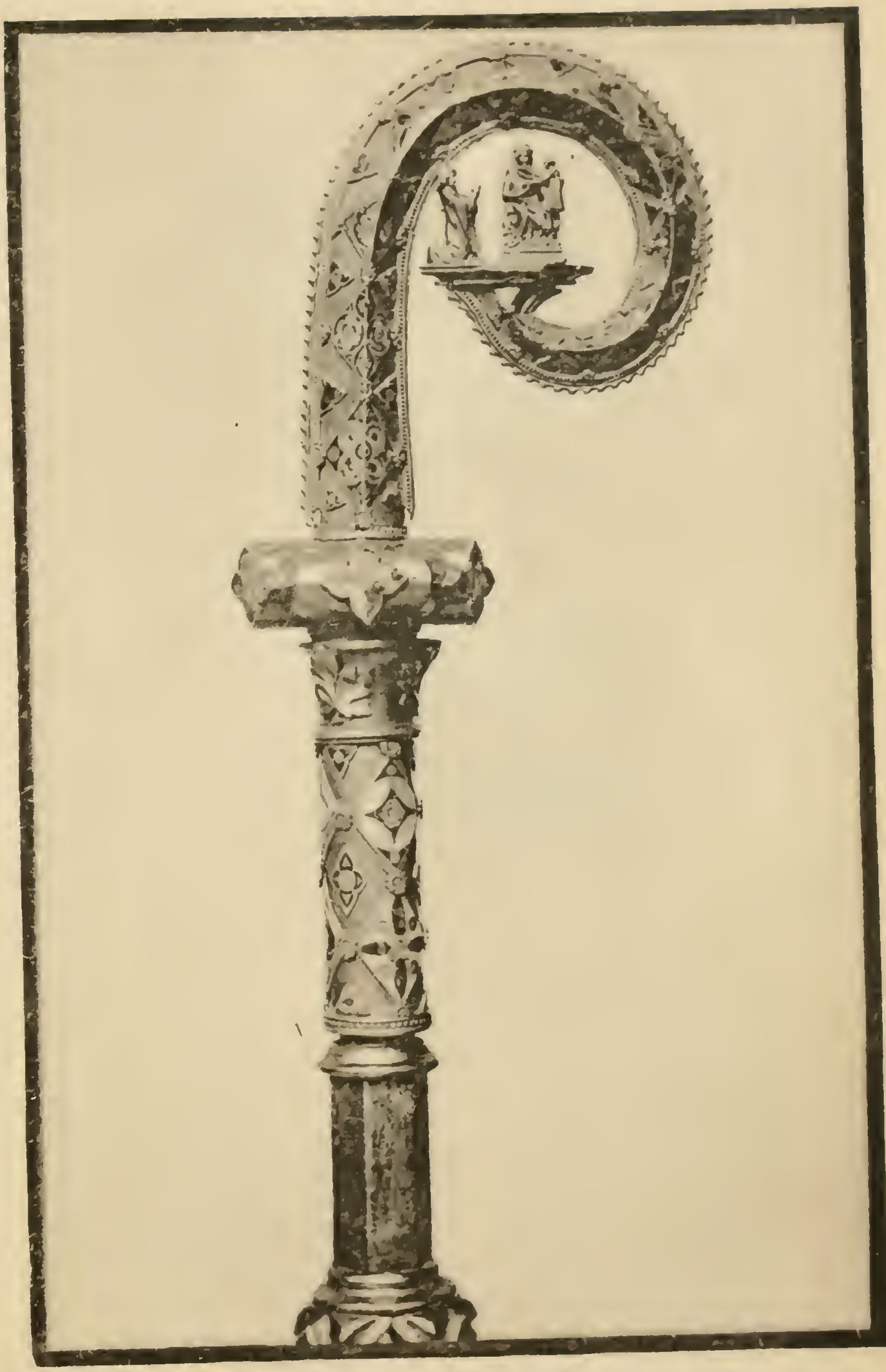
Digitized by Microsoft®

XI.—Ciborium, in Copper-Gilt. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

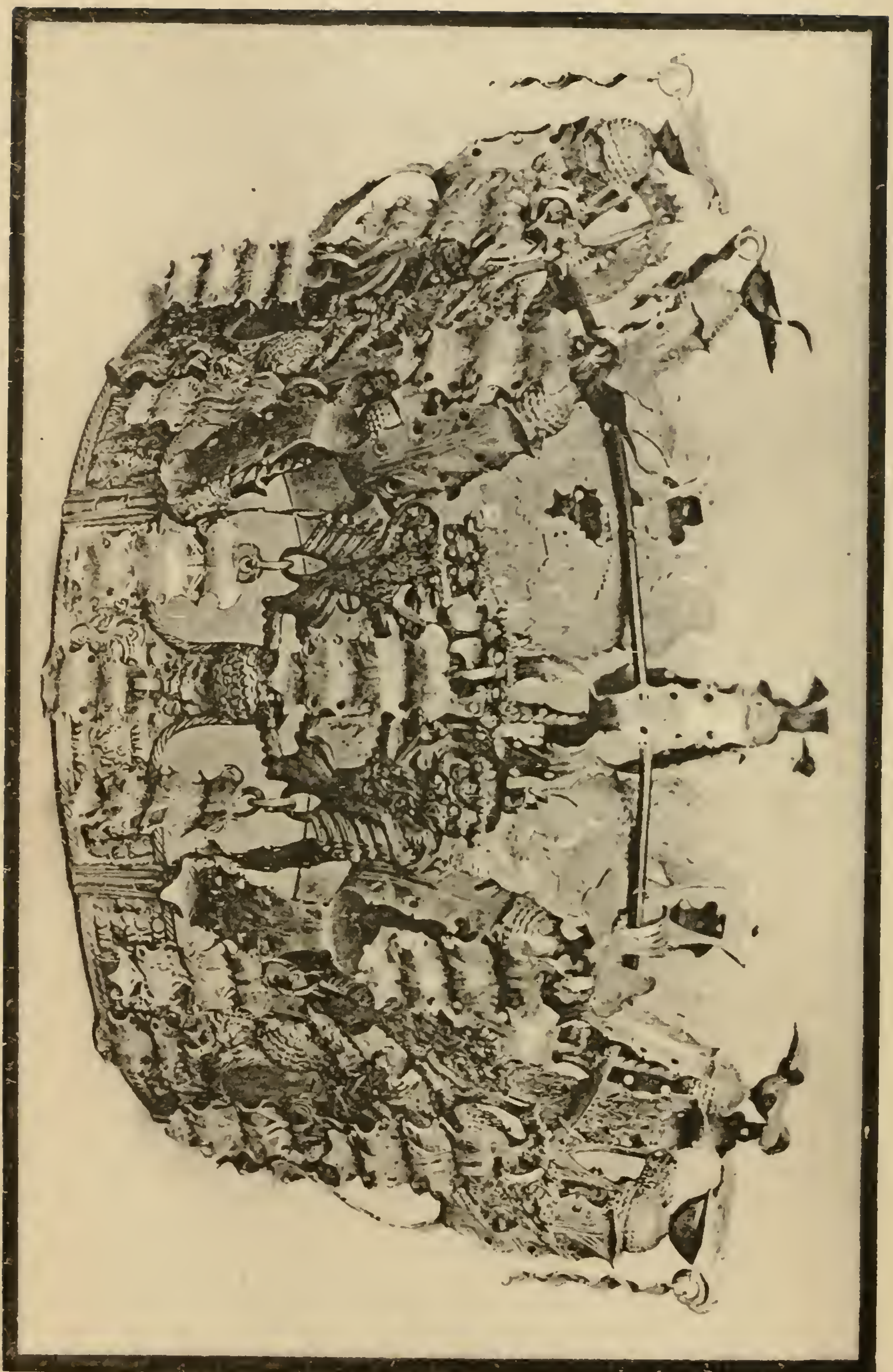


XII.—Pastoral Staff, Italian. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

PUB
TILDEN
Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®



XIII.—Norwegian Bridal Crown. (South Kensington Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
Digitized by Microsoft®

XIV.—Front View of Alfred Jewel. (Ashmolean Museum.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Microsoft®

XV.—1, Belt Buckle, in Pale Gold, with Enamel, Rubies, Sapphires, and Pearls. 2, Pendant, in Pale Gold, with Beryl and Sapphire. 3, Gold Ring, set with Rubies, Emeralds, and Pearls. (By the Author.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

PUBLIC

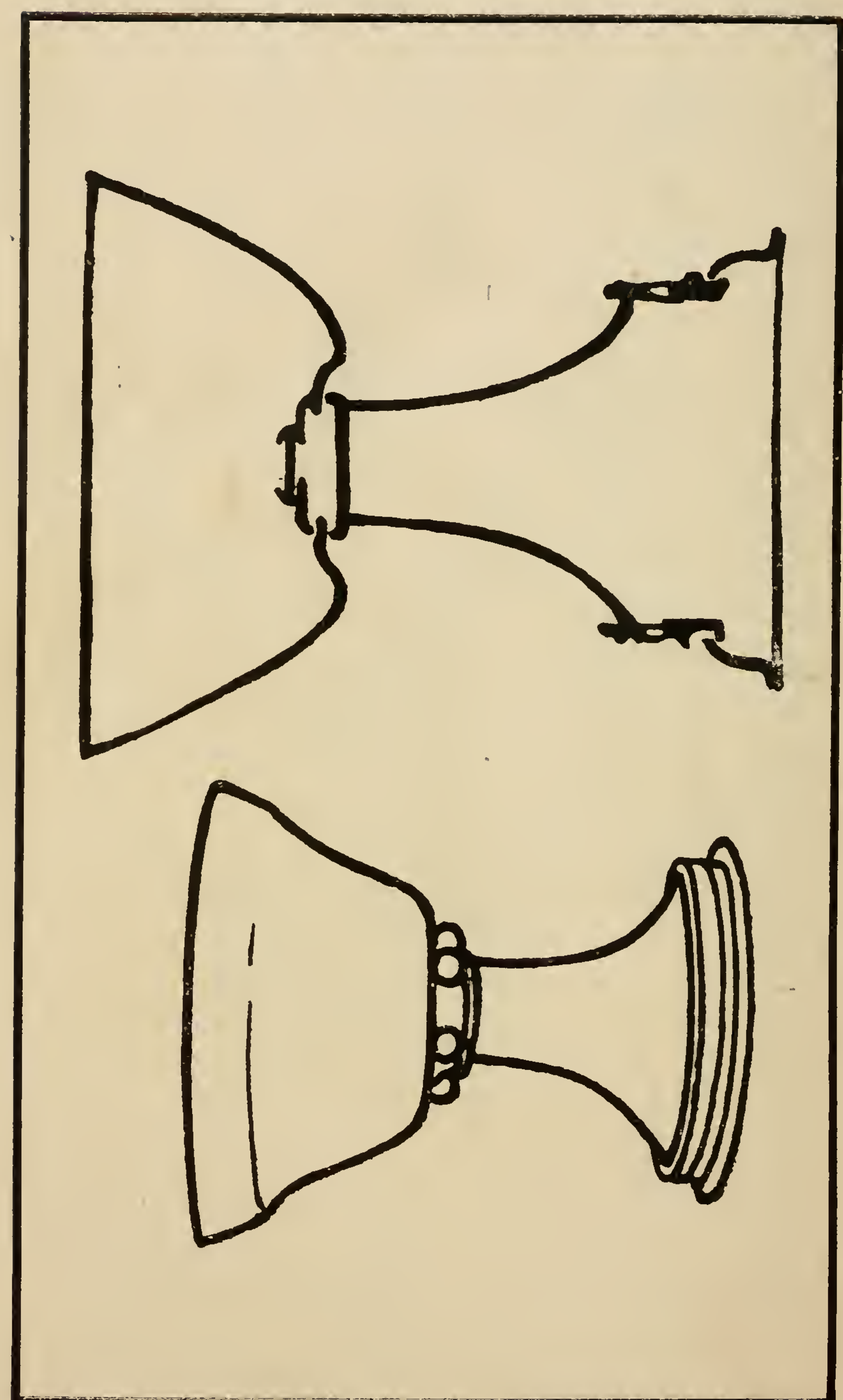
Digitized by Microsoft®

XVI.—1, Necklace, in Gold, set with Emeralds, Opals, Sapphires, and Pearls. 2, Front View of the Lid of a Shrine Ring. The Lid is hinged and forms a Cover to an Enamelled Panel of the Holy Mother and Child. (By the Author.)

Digitized by Microsoft®

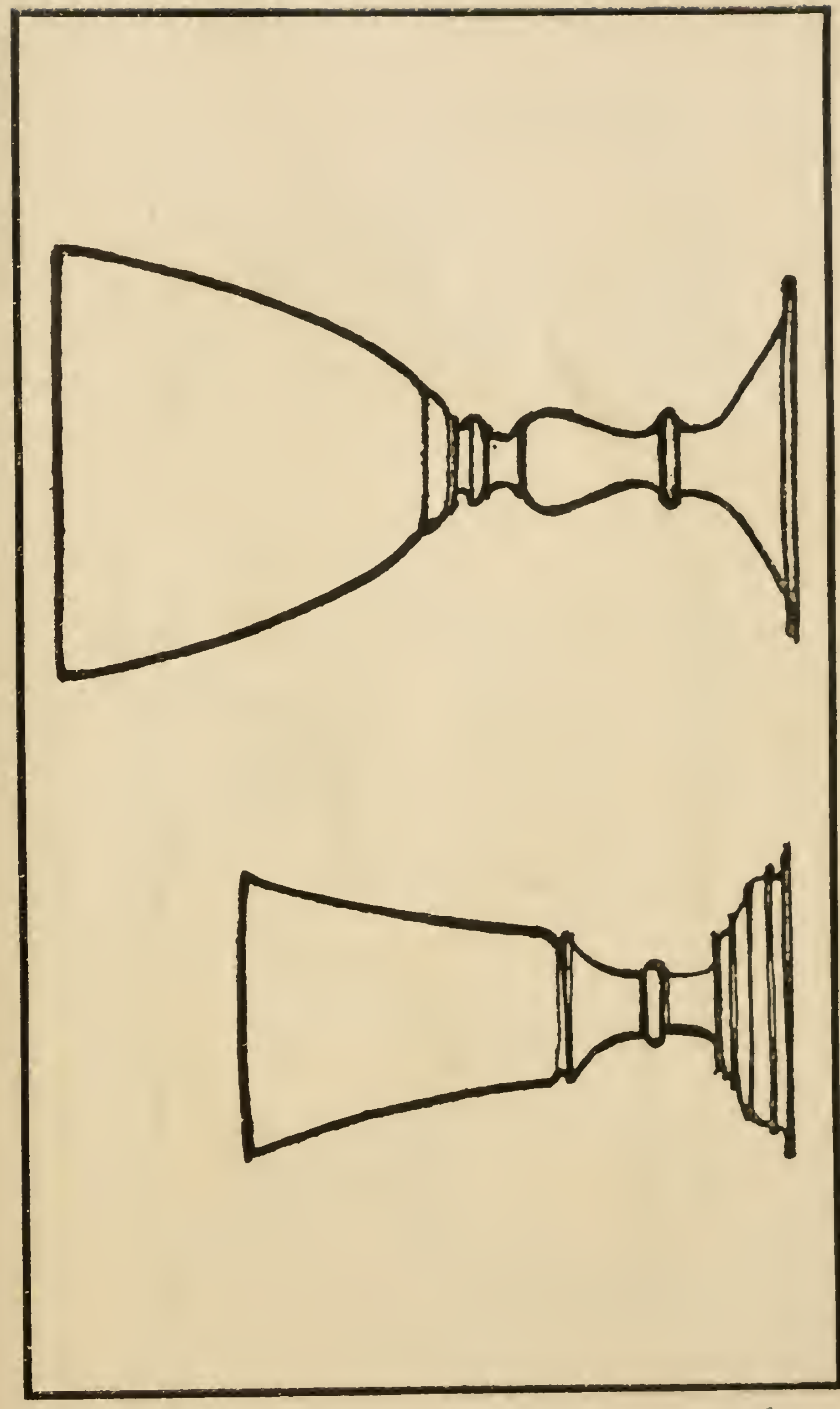
The following sections of medieval cups and chalices, taken from Nightingale's "Church Plate of Wiltshire" (published by Messrs. Bennet Brothers, Salisbury), are given as suggestions of form. The section to the right of Plate I is that of the Foundress' cup given in the Frontispiece. The student is referred to "Old Cambridge Plate" (published by the Cambridge Antiquarian Society) for further beautiful examples of silverwork.

Digitized by Microsoft ®



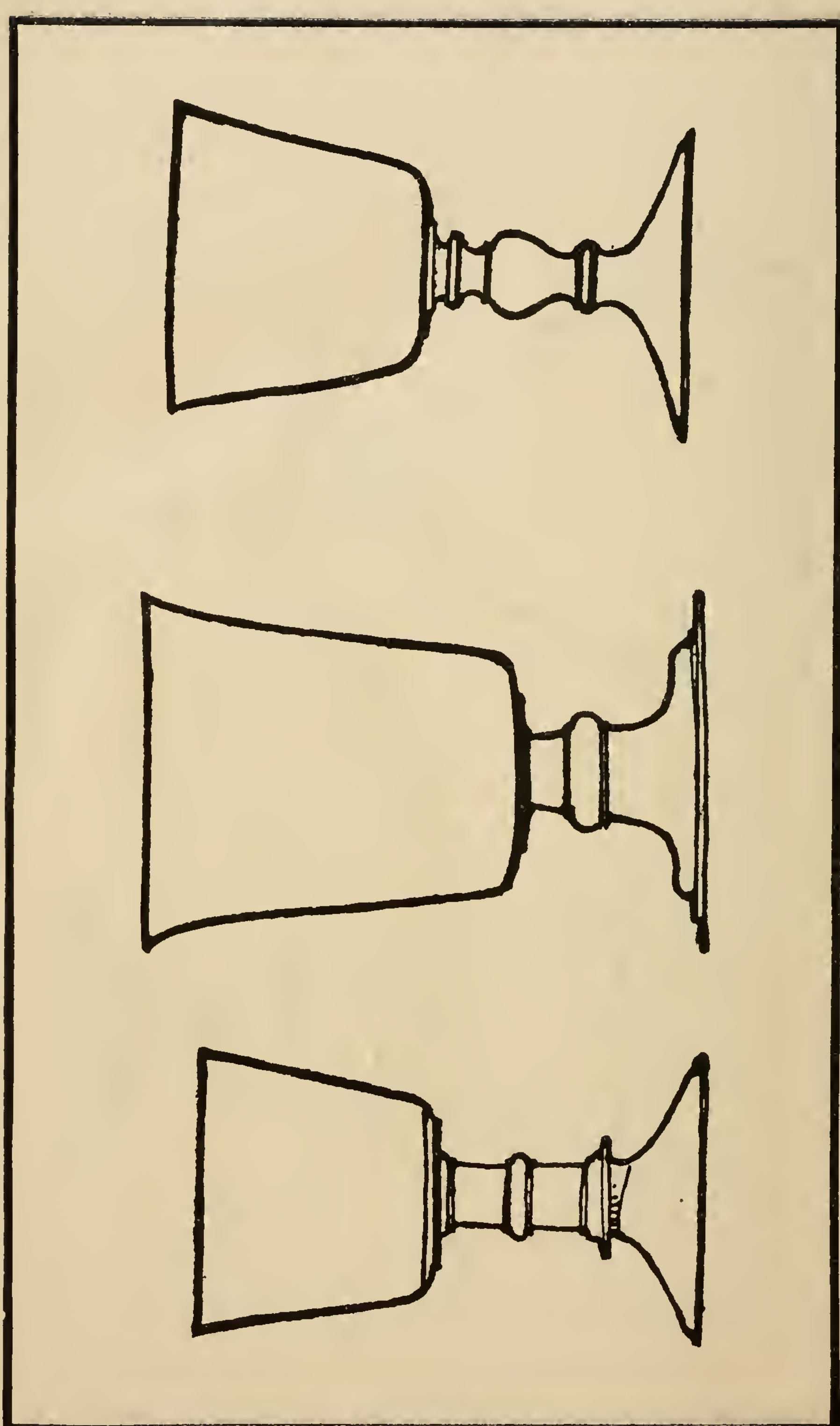
I.

Digitized by Microsoft®



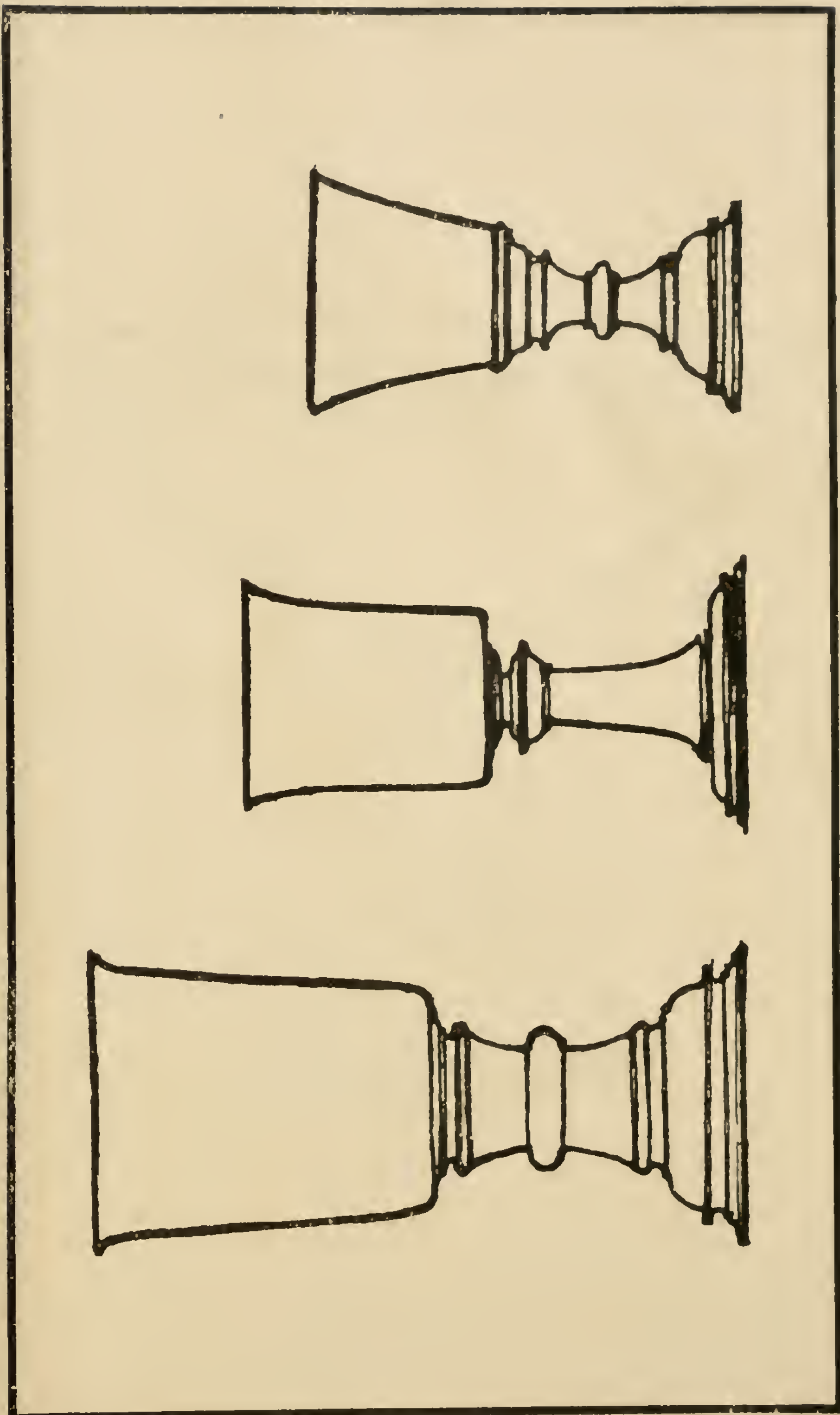
II.

Digitized by Microsoft®



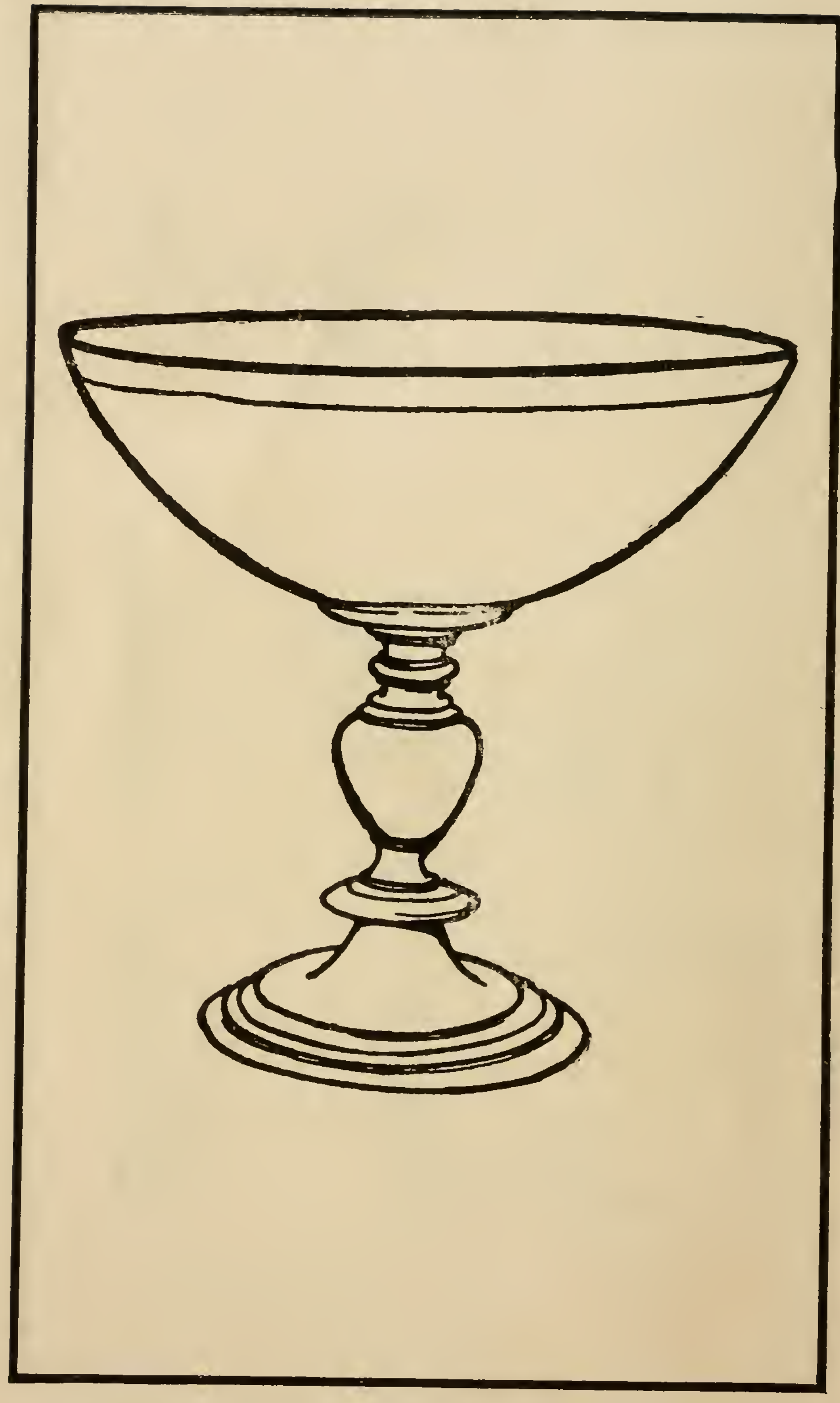
III.

Digitized by Microsoft ®



IV.

Digitized by Microsoft®



V.

Digitized by Microsoft®

PRACTICAL RECIPES

Contact Gilding.—Take of yellow prussiate of potash, 2 oz.; carbonate of potash, 1 oz.; common salt, 1½ oz.; water, 1 quart. Boil the water in an enamel saucepan. When boiling add the salts one by one. Stir well with a glass rod, and continue boiling for two or three minutes, after which add slowly a solution of 2 dwts. of chloride of gold dissolved in a little water, stirring the mixture the while. Allow it to cool and preserve it in a stoppered bottle. When required for gilding take a little of the liquid and heat it nearly to boiling-point, then place the article, thoroughly cleansed, on a piece of bright, clean zinc, and immerse it in the solution, when it will, after a few moments, be covered with a film of gold. (From "The Jeweler's Assistant in Working in Gold," G. Gee.)

Greek Gilding for Copper, Gilding Metal or Bronze.—Dissolve equal parts of sal-ammoniac and corrosive sublimate in strong nitric acid. With the mixture make a solution of fine gold and concentrate the solution by evaporation. When you think it sufficiently concentrated dip the object to be gilded after

Digitized by Microsoft®

it has been pickled clean, or paint it on with a brush. The solution will blacken it instantly if it be strong enough. This done, heat the object to redness, when the gold will appear.

Grecian Gilding, another way.—Take equal parts bichloride of mercury and chloride of ammonia, dissolve in nitric acid, add small portion of gold chloride, and dilute with water. To gild silver articles, brush the composition over them, and expose them to just enough heat to volatilize the mercury. This done, the work can be burnished. (From "The Jeweler's Assistant in Working in Gold," by G. Gee.)

Fire-Gilding for Steel, Iron, or Copper.—Scrape the copper or iron with the scraper and burnisher, warm the object, if it be steel or iron, until it takes a bluish tinge; if it be copper, to a corresponding heat. You will now apply the first layer of gold leaf and burnish it on lightly. The work must next be exposed to a gentle heat and another layer applied. If you wish to make the coating of gold extra strong, use two leaves of gold at each operation. The work must not be finally burnished bright until the last leaf of gold has been laid on and the work is cold.

Cement for Engravers.—Melt best pitch in an iron vessel, and when completely liquid stir in yellow ocher or red ocher in fine powder in a sufficient quantity to color the mixture. Pour it out on a smooth oiled stone or marble slab.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

To Polish Enamel.—After rubbing it down with the corundum file take a small rod of tin or pewter, and after anointing it with fine tripoli or rottenstone, grind the surface of the enamel evenly with this. Next take a stick of limewood and use that with rottenstone in the same way, and finish with putty powder and a buff stick.

Good Solder for Gold.—Fine silver, 1 part; fine copper, 1 part; fine gold, 2 parts. Melt the copper and silver together, and when well mixed add the gold.

To Unsolder a Piece of Work.—Paint those joints which are not to be unsoldered with a mixture of loam and water to which a little common salt has been added. This will protect them. When dry scrape the portions next to the part to be unsoldered and paint it all well with borax. Then give just enough heat to melt the solder, and remove the part with the pincers. Or if this be impossible owing to the nature of the work, before unsoldering fix a stout iron wire to the part to be removed and lift it off in that way.

(For the Japanese, Persian, Indian, and Egyptian recipes see pages 283 onward.)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

GLOSSARY

Alloy, base metal added to silver or gold to give hardness or color. Also, any combination of different metals by fusion.

Alloy bronze. See *Bronze alloy.*

Annealing, softening metal by making it red-hot and cooling slowly.

Backing, the coating of enamel on the back surface of enameled plaques. Also, the washings and wastings of ground enamel used to coat the backs of enamel plaques.

Back-saw, a saw made of a thin ribbon of steel, such as a clock-spring, fixed in a brass back, used for dividing metal.

Basse taille, low cut carving in metal beneath the level of the surface, used in enameling. The drawing or modeling of the subject is given by the different depths of cutting. The enamel naturally appears darker over the deeper cuttings and *vice versa.*

Beck-iron, a T-shaped anvil or stake used in hammer work. The arms of the T are long —one is round, slender, and tapering; the other has a flat upper surface.

Bezel, the thin slip of metal inside the shutting edge of a box or casket.

Board sweep, the filings of precious metal swept from the work-board, and kept for refining.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Bossing up, beating out sheet metal from the back into rough approximations of the form required.

Broche, a tapering prism of steel with sharp edges, used for enlarging holes and the insides of tubes.

Bronze alloy (Japanese)

Copper	75% to 80	8 lbs.
Lead	25% to 28	
Shirome . . .	3 oz.	

Burnishers, handled tools with points, knobs, or flattened surfaces of hardened steel, agate, bloodstone, or hæmatite, highly polished, used for polishing the surface of metal by compression.

Burr, the raised and roughened edge of a cutting or incision made in a sheet of metal by a chisel or cutting tool.

Cabochon, a method of cutting precious stones without facets. The surface of the rough stone is ground away until it is evenly rounded and smooth to the touch. The back is then ground flat, or, in the case of carbuncles, concave. Stones cut in this way are also called "tallow drop" stones. There is also the double cabochon which is naturally like two simple cabochons put back to back.

Casting-sand, a natural or artificial mixture of fine loam and sand, used to make molds for casting.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Cement stick, a short taper handle of wood, the upper end notched and covered with cement, made of pitch or resin and powdered brick-dust, used to hold small objects while being engraved.

Champlevé, a process of enameling on metal in which the ground of the pattern is cut away with scorpers into a series of shallow troughs into which the enamel is melted, the surface being afterward ground smooth and polished.

Chasing, surface modeling of metal with hammer and punches.

Chaton, the central ornament of a ring.

Chenier, metal tubes used in making hinges.

Chuck, a movable vice with three or more adjustable jaws meeting in the center used as a turning lathe.

Cire perdue, the waste-wax process of casting direct from the original wax model. The model having been enclosed in sand rammed closely round it, is melted away and its place taken by molten metal.

Cloison, an enclosing ribbon of wire, which, being soldered edgewise on a metal ground, makes a trough into which enamel is melted.

Collar, a ring made of several layers of stout leather, sewn or riveted together, used to support the pitch bowl.

Core, the heart of a mold for casting hollow objects.

Corn tongs, small tweezers, used for picking up stones, bits of solder, etc., and adjusting them.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Cramps, bits of thick iron wire bent to various shapes, used to hold work together while being soldered.

Crown setting, an open setting with rebated points to hold the stone.

Crucible, a vessel of fireclay or other refractory material, used for melting metal, so called because they were formerly stamped with the sign of the Cross.

Cupel, a block of compressed bone ash with a cup-shaped depression, used in a muffle for purifying gold and silver. The precious metal is wrapped up in seven or eight times its weight of lead, and when melted the lead runs away into the bone ash, carrying the impurities with it.

Damascene, the art of incrusting metals with other usually more precious metals, once practiced mainly in Damascus.

Doming-block, a cube of metal with hemispherical depressions of various sizes in the sides, used with doming punches for making hollow balls out of sheet metal.

Doming punches, punches with globular heads, made in sets to fit the hollows of the doming-block. They may be in steel, brass, or boxwood.

Draw-bench, a low bench with a winch at one end, which, acting on a board strap attached by a strong iron loop to a pair of pincers called draw-tongs, is used to draw wire through the drawplate held against stops fixed at the other end of the bench

Digitized by Microsoft®

Draw-plate, a flat plate of steel pierced with a row or rows of graduated holes, and used for drawing wire.

Face-plate, a square of thick steel plate with the surface ground perfectly level, used when filing to test the truth of the work.

Facing, the operation of giving a smooth surface to a casting mold by dusting on a finer material. The facings most generally used are powdered charcoal, flour and charcoal, French chalk, soot, and pea-flour.

False core, the removable section of a casting mold arranged to draw out clearly from a piece of undercut work.

Flask, an iron frame used to contain the sand while being rammed round an object to be cast.

Flatting stone, a flat stone used for rubbing down the edges of boxes and cups to a level.

Flaunching, filing a chamfer on the edge or side of any object.

Flinking, the process of stabbing with a sharp-pointed graver the surface of metal which is to be enameled. Its object is to give a key to the film of glass, and prevent it from flaking away from the metal.

Flux, any material used to protect the surface of metal from oxidation when exposed to heat, or to aid in the liquefaction or purification of metals when necessary to melt them. These are powdered charcoal, borax-glass, borax, saltpeter, carbonate of soda, sal-ammoniac, powdered glass, common salt, and sulfur.

Gallery, a setting with perforated sides for a stone or a panel of enamel.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Gate or *get*, the hole or channel arranged in a casting mold for the access of the metal.

Girdle, that edge of a precious stone which is fixed in the setting.

Graining tool, a hollow-headed punch with a wooden handle, used for rounding the heads of pins used in fixing parts of work together.

Graver, a kind of scorper or small chisel for cutting lines on the surface of metal.

Hare's foot, the dried foot of a hare, used as a brush to dust away gold and silver filings from the board.

Heshi Tagane, a name of a Japanese matting-tool.

Hira-Zogwan, inlaying of an object with different metals.

Ingot, a block of metal, generally rectangular, cast into a convenient shape for rolling, or wire-drawing, or remelting.

Joint file, a flat strip of steel with rounded edges on which are file cuts. It is used for making grooves for hinges.

Joint tool, a flat plate of steel fixed in a handle and pierced with a triangular hole. The point of the triangle is toward the handle, and in the base in the thickness of the metal is a thumbscrew. The ends of a tube when secured at the apex of the triangle by the screw can be filed quite true.

Justifier, a scorper with two cutting edges at right angles, used in cutting bearings for the stones.

Kami tsuchi, paper clay made of fine casting sand, Japanese paper, and ordinary potters' clay.

Katakiribori, engraving and reproducing the movement of brushwork.

Digitized by Microsoft®

Kiri tagane, a small, sharp cutting chisel used in Japanese inlaid work.

Knop, any bulbous projection on a shaft or pillar of a cup or candlestick, etc.

Knurling tool, a small steel wheel with a concave edge pitted with tiny hollows. When fitted in a slotted steel handle and run backward and forward along a wire soldered on a plate it produces a row of beads.

Lemel (French "Limaille," filings), the filings and scrap of precious metal collected in the skin of the work bench. It is carefully preserved and, when enough has been collected, is melted and the metal refined for subsequent use.

Loam, a fatty, ocherous earth used in casting.

Luting, the application of a mixture of loam and water, fire-clay and water, whitening or tripoli, or rouge and water to protect parts of metal while other parts are soldered.

Mandrel, a rod of metal or any section, used either for tube-drawing or for coiling wire in the making of chains. Also, the tapered rod of steel used in making rings.

Matrix, the mother-form or mold for cast work.

Matt tool, a repoussé punch with a flat, granulated end, used for making a grained surface on metal.

Mop, a tangled boss of fine binding-wire fixed on a wire handle and used to support small articles while being soldered with the mouth blow-pipe. Also, a contrivance for polishing made of a number of discs of calico fixed to a wooden spindle. When put on the polishing lathe, it becomes rigid by rapid

Digitized by Microsoft®

revolution. The edges are then smeared with rouge and the object to be polished pressed against it.

Namekuri tagane, an outlining chisel with a rounded bevel used in Japanese inlaid work.

Narashi tagane, the name of a Japanese matting tool used in inlaid work.

Niello from *nigello*, a black, very fusible alloy of sulfur, lead, silver and copper used in decorating engraved work on silver or gold.

Odd side, the temporary half of a casting mold arranged to support the model while the false cores are being made over it.

Paillon, a snippet of solder.

Paltia, an artificially produced oxide for the decoration of bronzes and other metal work.

Panel, a snippet of solder.

Parting sand, powdered brick-dust or bathbrick, used to sprinkle on the face of a mold.

Pearl-tool, a punch and a circular concavity on the top used in chasing.

Perloir, a chasing punch with a concave tip, used for making convex beads on the surface of metal.

Pickle, solutions of various acids in water, used for removing the films of oxide and sulfides from the surface of metal. The acids used are nitric acid, hydrochloric acid, and sulfuric acid, and a very ordinary mixture is half acid and half water. This solution is as strong as necessary for general use.

Piece-mold, a mold for casting undercut work, made in removable sections, called false cores, so

Digitized by Microsoft ®

arranged that, when the mold is complete, it can be taken to pieces, the model removed, and the mold reformed for casting.

Pin, the wedge of hard wood, generally beech, fixed in the bow of the jeweler's bench, used to hold work up against the file.

Pitch-block, a block of wood covered with pitch, used as a support for metal in repoussé work or chasing.

Planishing, giving a plane or level surface to a sheet of metal by the use of a broad, smooth-faced hammer and an anvil. Also, giving a smooth face to a beater's cup or other object in sheet metal by the same means.

Plaque, a plate of metal slightly domed and prepared for enameling. Also, the same plate when coated with enamel.

Plique à jour, transparent enamel which, being without metal backing, gets its strength from variously folded ribbons of metal within the thickness of the enamel, in the same way that a stained glass window is strengthened.

Pour, the gate or inlet for the metal to run into a mold for casting.

Punches doming. See *Doming punches.*

Repoussé, the method of beating out sheet metal from the back with hammers and punches.

Revolving trammel. See *Trammel, revolving.*

Riffles, files with curved and variously shaped ends, used for filing up the surfaces of castings and for cleaning up any surface for which an ordinary file cannot be used.

Riser, a channel scraped out of one surface of a piece-mold to allow the escape of air.

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Also, in a waste-wax mold the slender rod of wax arranged to make a similar air channel when melted out of the mold.

Router, a graver or small triangular file bent at right angles and ground to a sharp edge, used for cutting the groves in metal for the joints of boxes, etc.

Runners, in piece-mold, channels for the entry of metal into various parts of the mold. In waste-wax molds the rod of wax arranged to provide a similar channel when melted out of the mold.

Sand-bag, a flat circular bag of leather filled with sand, used for bossing up metal upon.

Scorpers, small hand chisels of various shapes, used to engrave metal.

Scraper, a tool made from an old file by sharpening the point on a stone to a three-sided pyramid. Used for scraping clean edges and surfaces to be soldered and for cleaning up work generally.

Shakudo. An alloy of copper and gold.

Shiage Tsuchi, finishing clay. A mixture of casting sand made pasty with clay alone.

Shibuichi, an alloy of copper and silver.

Shigata Tsuchi (core clay), made with clay, sand, and chopped straw.

Shirome, a natural alloy, chiefly composed of antimony.

Smooth, a fine cut file for finishings.

Snap, a spring-catch for a bracelet or necklace.

Snarling-irons, long Z-shaped levers fixed in a vice and used for bossing out the surface of vessels from the inside. They act by re-

Digitized by Microsoft®

bounding from the blow of the hammer near the fixed end.

Stake, a small anvil. They are of many forms, from the bench stake, a square block of iron faced with steel, to the variously curved bars with rounded, bulbous, or spoon-shaped ends, used when fixed in a vice or beating up cups, etc. A poker fixed upright in the floor makes an excellent stake.

Stones cabochon. See *Cabochon.*

Stones, flatting. See *Flatting stones.*

Stone Washita. See *Washita stone.*

Swage-block, a modified draw-plate, made in removable sections held in a frame by a crew. Used for drawing wire or moldings. The holes are arranged in the contiguous surfaces of two blocks, and the size of the wire or molding can be regulated by the screw.

Sweep, the refuse from the floor of the jeweler's workshop which is collected, burnt, and the metallic residue melted and refined for use in the same way as lemel.

Taka-Zogwan, similar to Hira-Zogwan, but inlaid in relief.

Tama Tsuchi, a grade coarser clay than Kami Tsuchi for casting, made of chopped tow, sand, and wet clay.

Tang, that end of a graver or file which is prepared for insertion into a handle.

Tracer, a chisel-shaped punch used in outlining for repoussé work.

Trammel revolving, a templete fixed to a horizontal arm of wood and capable of being revolved round a fixed center, used to make

Digitized by Microsoft®

circular molded bases and cores in casting.

Treblet, a taper mandrel or steel on which rings are made.

Tsuta Tsuchi, chopped straw clay, coarsest grade of casting clay, made of straw, wet clay, and casting sand.

Ukibovi, Japanese term for chasing.

Washita stone, a fine grained American whetstone.

Woodgrain metal, Japanese method of taminating metal akin to that used in producing damascened steel.

Zogwan, Hira. See *Hira-Zogwan.*

Digitized by Microsoft®

INDEX

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

(2)

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft ®

Digitized by Microsoft®